

# The History of al-Tabarī

VOLUME IX

The Last Years  
of the  
Prophet



---

TRANSLATED AND ANNOTATED BY ISMAIL K. POONAWALA

The Last Years of the Prophet  
Volume IX

Translated and Annotated by Ismail K. Poonawala

This volume deals with the last two and a half years of the Prophet's life. In addition to the three major expeditions to Hunayn, Ta'if, and Tabuk, it describes in detail the circumstances surrounding the illness from which he died and the subsequent crisis of leadership faced by the nascent Muslim community. The author depicts with admirable fairness all the various opinions and divisions that existed within the community. He also presents a vivid picture of the Prophet's physical appearance, his personal life, and his marriages. Among other topics discussed in this volume are all the deputations that came to Medina; a summary of all the expeditions and raiding parties; and his scribes, freedmen, horses, camels, goats, swords, coats of mail, and so on. It also covers the apostasy of Musaylimah, Aswad, and Tulyahah and the Prophet's attempts to deal with them.

The translation not only preserves the original lively flavor of al-Tabarī but also, in its annotations, draws extensively on both parallel Arabic sources and the intensive research of recent years. Readers who seek a deeper understanding of the Prophet's personality and of the reasons for antagonisms engendered among various factions will find this volume most informative.

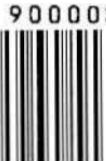
SUNY Series in Near Eastern Studies  
Said Amir Arjomand, Editor

**The State University of New York Press**  
Visit our website at <http://www.sunypress.edu>

ISBN 0-88706-692-5

90000>

NEW



9 780887 066924

**THE HISTORY OF AL-ṬABARĪ**  
AN ANNOTATED TRANSLATION

---

**VOLUME IX**

*The Last Years of the Prophet*  
**THE FORMATION OF THE STATE**  
**A.D. 630-632 / A.H. 8-11**



The History of al-Tabarī

*Editorial Board*

Ihsan Abbas, University of Jordan, Amman

C. E. Bosworth, The University of Manchester

Jacob Lassner, Wayne State University, Detroit

Franz Rosenthal, Yale University

Ehsan Yar-Shater, Columbia University (*General Editor*)

---

SUNY

SERIES IN NEAR EASTERN STUDIES

Said Amir Arjomand, Editor



*The preparation of this volume was made possible in part  
by a grant from the National Endowment for the  
Humanities, an independent federal agency.*



**Bibliotheca Persica**  
Edited by Ehsan Yar-Shater

---

---

**The History of al-Tabārī**  
*(Ta'rikh al-rusul wa'l-mulūk)*

**VOLUME IX**

**The Last Years of the Prophet**

translated and annotated  
by

***Ismail K. Poonawala***

University of California, Los Angeles

State University of New York Press

---

Published by

State University of New York Press, Albany

© 1990 State University of New York

All rights reserved

Printed in the United States of America

No part of this book may be used or reproduced  
in any manner whatsoever without written permission  
except in the case of brief quotations embodied in  
critical articles and reviews.

For information, contact State University of New York Press, Albany, NY  
[www.sunypress.edu](http://www.sunypress.edu)

**Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data**

Ṭabarī, 838?–923.

The last years of the Prophet.

(The history of al-Ṭabarī = Ta'rikh al-rusul wa'l-mulūk, v. 9) (SUNY series in Near Eastern studies)

(Bibliotheca Persica)

Translation of extracts from: Ta'rikh al-rusul wa-al-mulūk.

Bibliography: p.

Includes index.

1. Muhammad, Prophet, d. 632. 2. Muslims—Saudi Arabia—Biography. 3. Islam—History. 4. Arabian Peninsula—History. I. Husayn, Ismā'il Qurbān.

II. Title. III. Series: Ṭabarī, 838?–23. Ta'rikh al-rusul wa-al-mulūk. English; v. 9 IV. Series: SUNY series in Near Eastern studies. V. Series:

Bibliotheca Persica (Albany, N.Y.)

DS38.2.T313 1985 vol. 9 909'.1 s 87-7129

[BP75] [953'.02'0924] [B]

ISBN 0-88706-691-7

ISBN 0-88706-692-5 (pbk.)

10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

## Preface

---

THE HISTORY OF PROPHETS AND KINGS (*Ta'rikh al-rusul wa'l-mulük*) by Abū Ja'far Muḥammad b. Jarīr al-Ṭabarī (839–923), here rendered as the *History of al-Ṭabarī*, is by common consent the most important universal history produced in the world of Islam. It has been translated here in its entirety for the first time for the benefit of non-Arabists, with historical and philological notes for those interested in the particulars of the text.

Al-Ṭabarī's monumental work explores the history of the ancient nations, with special emphasis on biblical peoples and prophets, the legendary and factual history of ancient Iran, and, in great detail, the rise of Islam, the life of the Prophet Muḥammad, and the history of the Islamic world down to the year 915. The first volume of this translation will contain a biography of al-Ṭabarī and a discussion of the method, scope, and value of his work. It will also provide information on some of the technical considerations that have guided the work of the translators.

The *History* has been divided into 38 volumes, each of which covers about two hundred pages of the original Arabic text in the Leiden edition. An attempt has been made to draw the dividing lines between the individual volumes in such a way that each is to some degree independent and can be read as such. The page numbers of the original in the Leiden edition appear on the margins of the translated volumes.

Al-Ṭabarī very often quotes his sources verbatim and traces the chain of transmission (*isnād*) to an original source. The chains of

transmitters are, for the sake of brevity, rendered by only a dash (—) between the individual links in the chain. Thus, according to Ibn Ḥumayd—Salamah—Ibn Ishāq means that al-Ṭabarī received the report from Ibn Ḥumayd who said that he was told by Ibn Ishāq, and so on. The numerous subtle and important differences in the original Arabic wording have been disregarded.

The table of contents at the beginning of each volume gives a brief survey of the topics dealt with in that particular volume. It also includes the headings and subheadings as they appear in al-Ṭabarī's text, as well as those occasionally introduced by the translator.

Well-known place names, such as, for instance, Mecca, Bagh-dad, Jerusalem, Damascus, and the Yemen, are given in their English spellings. Less common place names, which are the vast majority, are transliterated. Biblical figures appear in the accepted English spelling. Iranian names are usually transcribed according to their Arabic forms, and the presumed Iranian forms are often discussed in the footnotes.

Technical terms have been translated wherever possible, but some, such as dirham and imām, have been retained in Arabic forms. Others which cannot be translated with sufficient precision have been retained and italicized as well as footnoted.

The annotation aims chiefly at clarifying difficult passages, identifying individuals and place names, and discussing textual difficulties. Much leeway has been left to the translators to include in the footnotes whatever they consider necessary and helpful.

The bibliographies list all the sources mentioned in the annotation.

The index in each volume contains all the names of persons and places referred to in the text, as well as those mentioned in the notes as far as they refer to the medieval period. It does not include the names of modern scholars. A general index, it is hoped, will appear after all the volumes have been published.

For further details concerning the series and acknowledgments, see Preface to Volume I.

## Contents

Preface / v

Translator's Foreword / xi

*The Events of the Year 8 (cont'd) (629/630) / 1*

An Account of the Messenger of God's Expedition against the Hawāzin and the Battle of Ḥunayn / 1

[The Siege of al-Ṭā'if] / 20

[The Division of the Booty Captured at Ḥunayn and Gifts of Conciliation] / 26

*The Events of the Year 9 (630/631) / 40*

An Account of the Military Expedition to Tabūk / 47

[An Account of the People Who Accepted Islam] / 62

*The Events of the Year 10 (631/632) / 82*

The Deputation of the Banū 'Āmir b. Ṣa'ṣa'ah / 103

Disagreement about the Number of the Armies and the Raiding Parties (*Sarāya*) Sent by the Messenger of God / 118

Report about the Messenger of God's Pilgrimages / 125

Report about the Messenger of God's Wives, Those Who Survived Him, Those Who Left Him, the Reason for Which They Left, and Those Who Died before Him / 126

<b>The Reason Why the Messenger of God Asked for the Hands of Both 'A'ishah and Sawdah in Marriage and the Received Reports as to with Whom He First Contracted the Marriage / 129</b>
<b>An Account of Those Women to Whom the Prophet Proposed But Did Not Marry / 140</b>
<b>An Account of the Messenger of God's Slave Concubines / 141</b>
 <b><i>The Events of the Year 10 (cont'd) (631/632) / 142</i></b>
<b>An Account of the Messenger of God's Freedmen / 142</b>
<b>An Account of the Messenger of God's Scribes / 147</b>
<b>The Names of the Messenger of God's Horses / 148</b>
<b>The Names of the Messenger of God's Mules / 150</b>
<b>The Names of the Messenger of God's Camels / 150</b>
<b>The Names of the Messenger of God's Milch Camels / 151</b>
<b>The Names of the Messenger of God's Milch Sheep (<i>Manā'ilī</i>) / 153</b>
<b>The Names of the Messenger of God's Swords / 153</b>
<b>The Names of the Messenger of God's Bows and Lances / 154</b>
<b>The Names of the Messenger of God's Coats of Mail / 154</b>
<b>The Names of the Messenger of God's Shields / 155</b>
<b>The Messenger of God's Names / 155</b>
<b>The Messenger of God's Characteristics / 157</b>
<b>The Seal of Prophethood Which He Had / 158</b>
<b>His Bravery and Generosity / 159</b>
<b>The Description of His Hair and Whether He Used to Dye It or Not / 160</b>
<b>Report about the Beginning of the Messenger of God's Illness in Which He Died, and What He Did Just Prior to It When He Was Bewailed [for His Approaching Death] / 162</b>
 <b><i>The Events of the Year 11 (632/633) / 163</i></b>
<b>An Account of the Day on Which the Messenger of God Died and His Age / 183</b>
<b>An Account of the <i>Saqifah</i> / 189</b>
<b>The Disagreements about His Age When He Died / 206</b>
<b>The Day and the Month in Which the Messenger of God died / 208</b>

**Bibliography of Cited Works / 211**

**Index / 219**

**Index of Qur'ānic Verses / 249**



## Translator's Foreword

---



This volume covers approximately the last two and a half years of the Prophet's life. Al-Tabarī's account is full of graphic details and vivid descriptions which makes it delightful to read. In many instances, the narrative seems as though it must have been experienced directly. The animated dialogues, turns of phrases in reported speech, moments of humor—all these seem redolent of his literary talent. An effort has been made in the translation to preserve the original flavor without sacrificing the English idiom.

Al-Tabarī's account of this period is derived mainly from Ibn Ishāq's (d. ca. 150/767) *Sīrah*, one of the main sources for the subject. The original version of the *Sīrah*, which was transmitted through several *riwāyahs*, did not survive.\* What we have is an abbreviated, annotated version edited by Ibn Hishām (d. ca. 218/833) based on the *riwāyah* of Ziyād al-Bakkā'ī (d. 183/799), who lived in al-Kūfah. The *Sīrah* version used by al-Tabarī, on the other hand, is based on the *riwāyah* of Salamah b. Faḍl al-Abrash al-Anṣārī (d. 191/806), who lived in al-Rayy. This explains the variants, as al-Tabarī's text is carefully collated with Ibn Hishām's *Sīrah*. Despite a number of variants and some minor additions and omissions, it is worth noting that, on the whole, there is remarkable agreement between the two *riwāyahs*. The stories of

---

\*Segments of this original work found in the Qarawiyin library of Fez (transmitted through the *riwāyah* of Yūnus b. Bukayrī), and the Zāhiriyah library of Damascus (transmitted through the *riwāyah* of Muḥammad b. Salamah al-Harrānī), edited by Muḥammad Ḥamidullāh, have been consulted and collated.

Abū Dharr al-Ghifārī and 'Adī b. Ḥātim al-Tayyi', the account of the Tamīm deputation, and the Prophet's letter to the kings of Ḥimyar, are just a few cases in point.

Al-Wāqidi (d. 207/823) is another authority very frequently quoted by al-Ṭabārī. All these references are collated with his *Kitāb al-Maghāzī*. The latter provides more details, especially about the expeditions. The story of 'Urwah b. Mas'ūd al-Thaqafī, who came to the Prophet and accepted Islam after the siege of al-Ṭā'if, is also more graphically depicted. It is from al-Wāqidi that we learn that the people were not happy when the Prophet decided to end the siege of al-Ṭā'if and depart without the victory. He further states that they had to be persuaded by Abū Bakr and 'Umar that the Prophet in so doing was merely acting under divine instructions. All the verses revealed about the expedition of Tabūk are likewise listed separately.

In addition to Ibn Ishāq's *Sīrah* and al-Wāqidi's *Kitāb al-Maghāzī*, the translation is collated with Ibn Sa'd's (d. 230/845) *al-Ṭabaqāt*, especially the biography of the Prophet in the first two volumes, and with the first volume of al-Balādhuri's (d. ca. 279/892) *Ansāb al-ashrāf*, dealing with the Prophet's life. A number of other sources, such as Ibn Shabbah's (d. 262/875) *Ta'-rīkh al-Madīnah al-munawwarah*, al-Yā'qūbī's (d. 284/897) *Ta'-rīkh*, al-Mas'ūdī's (d. 345/956) *Murūj al-dhahab* and *al-Tanbīh wa'l-iṣhrāf*, Ibn al-Aṭhīr's (d. 630/1233) *al-Kāmil*, and Ibn Kathīr's (d. 774/1373) *al-Sīrah* have been consulted. All the major variants as well as additions in the above sources have been noted in the footnotes. Minor variants of verbal forms, prepositions, and differences of words of nearly the same meaning, which do not radically affect the translation, have been ignored. Full references to Ibn Ishāq, al-Wāqidi, Ibn Sa'd, and al-Balādhuri are given at the first citation in each context. Although I have benefitted greatly by A. Guillaume's translation of the *Sīrah*, it is not referred to in the footnotes simply to save space, except where the comments are made expressly by him.

Most of the authorities listed in the *isnāds* are identified from the standard biographical dictionaries, such as Ibn Sa'd's *al-Ṭabaqāt*; Dhahabī's (d. 748/1347) *al-'Ibar*, *Mīzān*, and *Tadhkirah*; and Ibn Ḥajar's (d. 852/1449) *al-Isābah*, *Tahdhīb*, and *Lisān*. All the geographical areas and place names have likewise been identified

from the works of al-Hamdānī (d. 334/945), al-Bakrī (d. 487/1094), and Yāqūt (d. 626/1229). Genealogies of the tribes and clans have been verified from the works of Hishām al-Kalbī (d. ca. 204/819) and Ibn Ḥazm (d. 456/1064). For historical geography and topography, recent works of A. Musil, H. Sr. J. B. Philby, H. al-Jāsir, and A. al-Wohaibi have been consulted. For the life of the Prophet, the biographies of F. Buhl, T. Andrae, W. M. Watt, M. Gaudefroy-Demombynes, and M. Rodinson have been referred to. On disputed questions, every effort has been made to cite the latest opinion or interpretation.

Finally, I would like to thank Vincent Cornell for reading a major part of the translation, and for giving his thoughtful suggestions, amendations, and criticisms. I also wish to thank Hasanuddin Hashmi for elucidating some difficult and obscure passages. For any inadequacies, I alone am responsible.

I would like to thank Ahmed Nassef and Mohammad Atho Mudzhar for their help in proofreading.

February 20, 1987  
Los Angeles, California

Ismail K. Poonawala





The  
Events of the Year

8 (cont'd)

(MAY 1, 629–APRIL 19, 630)

*An Account of the Messenger of God's Expedition  
against the Hawāzin<sup>1</sup> and the Battle of Hunayn<sup>2</sup>*

[1654]

Concerning the affairs of the Messenger of God, the Muslims, and the [clans of] Hawāzin, we have received an account on the authority of both 'Ali b. Naṣr b. 'Ali al-Jahdāmī<sup>3</sup> and 'Abd al-Wārith b. 'Abd al-Šamad b. 'Abd al-Wārith<sup>4</sup>—'Abd al-Šamad [b. 'Abd al-

---

1. A large North Arabian tribe or a group of tribes. They were bitterly hostile to Quraysh because of the trade rivalry between Mecca and al-Tā'if, since they were either the inhabitants of the latter city or in close alliance with its people. *EP*<sup>2</sup>, s.v. Hawāzin; Kalbi, *Jamharah*, 115. See below n. 11.

2. A deep and irregular valley where the great battle took place. It is situated at a day's journey from Mecca on the road to al-Tā'if. *EP*<sup>2</sup>, s.v. Hunayn; Ḥamidullāh, *Battlefields*, 42–43. Watt's remarks in his *Muhammad at Medina*, 70–72, give proper perspective to this expedition, as both Hawāzin and Thaqif were old enemies of Quraysh due to the trade rivalry. Lings, *Muhammad*, 304–6, gives a vivid description of the battle.

3. 'Ali b. Naṣr b. 'Ali b. Šahbān b. Abī al-Jahdāmī al-Baṣrī died in 187/802–3. Ibn Hajar, *Tahdhīb*, VII, 390.

4. Died in 252/866–67. *Ibid.*, VI, 443–44.

Wārīth<sup>5</sup>—Abān al-‘Aṭṭār<sup>6</sup>—Hishām b. ‘Urwah<sup>7</sup>—‘Urwah:<sup>8</sup> The Prophet had been staying in Mecca<sup>9</sup> during the year of its conquest for only a fortnight<sup>10</sup> when [he received the news that the clans of] Hawāzin and Thaqif<sup>11</sup> [were marching against Mecca and] had already encamped at Ḥunayn intending to fight him. Ḥunayn is a valley next to Dhū al-Majāz.<sup>12</sup> Both the aforementioned tribes had assembled before [their march] after hearing about the Messenger of God's departure from Medina,<sup>13</sup> thinking that he was intending [to invade] them. When they learned that he had occupied Mecca, Hawāzin marched against him [to Mecca] with their women, children, and possessions. Their leader was Mālik b. ‘Awf<sup>14</sup> from the Banū Naṣr.<sup>15</sup> [The clans of] Thaqif joined forces with them and encamped at Hunayn intending to fight the Prophet. When the Prophet, still in Mecca, was informed about them he decided to march against them.<sup>16</sup> He met them at Ḥunayn, and God, the Great and Mighty, inflicted defeat on

5. ‘Abd al-Ṣamad b. ‘Abd al-Wārīth b. Sa‘īd al-‘Anbarī al-Baṣrī died ca. 206/821–

22. Ibid., VI, 327–28; Dhahabi, *Tadhkirah*, I, 344.

6. Abān b. Yazid al-‘Aṭṭār al-Baṣrī. Ibn Hajar, *Tahdhīb*, I, 101–2.

7. Hishām b. ‘Urwah b. al-Zubayr died ca. 164/780–81. Ibn Sa‘d, *Ṭabaqāt*, V, 133; Ibn Hajar, *Tahdhīb*, XI, 48–51; Dhahabi, *Tadhkirah*, I, 144–45 (died in 146/763); Sezgin, *GAS*, I, 88; Duri, *Rise*, 46, 78, 143, 147.

8. ‘Urwah b. al-Zubayr, whose mother was Asmā’ bt. Abi Bakr, died in 94/712–

13. Ibn Sa‘d, *Ṭabaqāt*, V, 31–35; Dhahabi, *Tadhkirah*, I, 62–63; Sezgin, *GAS*, I, 278–79; Duri, *Rise*, *passim*.

9. See *EI*<sup>2</sup>, s.v. Makkah; Fahd, *Panthéon*, 203 ff.

10. Balādhurī (*Ansāb*, I, 364): Twelve days.

11. A tribe settled in the district of al-Ṭā’if which was their urban center. Most of the Thaqif consider themselves descendants of Hawāzin, probably due to their common interests and geographical proximity. *EI*<sup>1</sup>, s.v. Thakif, Kalbi, *Jamharah*, 118.

12. A marketplace of Hudhayl about 6 km from ‘Arafah. Hamdānī, *Ṣifat*, I, 180; Bakrī, *Mu’jam*, IV, 1185; Yāqūt, *Mu’jam*, V, 55.

13. See *EI*<sup>2</sup>, s.v. al-Madina; Philby, *Pilgrim*, 50–92, gives a good description of its surroundings.

According to Wāqidi, Ibn Sa‘d, and Ibn al-Athīr, Hawāzin and Thaqif decided to march against Mecca because they feared that after the conquest of Mecca, the Prophet might confront them. Cf. Balādhurī, *Ansāb*, I, 364.

14. A Bedouin chief of the powerful Qaysi tribes of Hawāzin who owed his fame to the battle of Ḥunayn. He was thirty years old when he commanded the forces of Hawāzin and Thaqif. Wāqidi, *Maghāzī*, III, 885; *EI*<sup>2</sup>, s.v. Mālik b. ‘Awf; Sezgin, *GAS*, II, 268.

15. A Group of Hawāzin tribes. Kalbi, *Jamharah*, 115.

16. The Prophet left Mecca on Saturday, the seventh of Shawwāl and reached Ḥunayn on Tuesday evening, the tenth of Shawwāl. Ibn Sa‘d, *Ṭabaqāt*, II/1, 108.

them. God has mentioned this battle in the Qur'an.<sup>17</sup> Since they had marched with their women, children, and flocks, God granted them as booty to His Messenger, who divided the spoils among those Quraysh who had [recently] embraced Islam.

[1655]

Ibn Ḥumayd<sup>18</sup>—Salamah<sup>19</sup>—Ibn Ishāq.<sup>20</sup> When Hawāzin heard about the Messenger of God and that God had given him victory over Mecca, Mālik b. ‘Awf al-Naṣrī gathered [his people] together. With Hawāzin, all of Thaqif joined him, followed by all Naṣr and Jusham,<sup>21</sup> Sa’d b. Bakr,<sup>22</sup> and a few people from the Banū Hilāl.<sup>23</sup> These [clans] were the only ones from Qays ‘Aylān<sup>24</sup> who participated [in Hunayn]. Neither Ka'b<sup>25</sup> nor Kilāb<sup>26</sup> from Hawāzin participated, and no one of any importance from [these tribes] took part in the battle. Among Jusham was Durayd b. al-Ṣimmaḥ,<sup>27</sup> a very old chieftain whose only use [for the others] was to derive blessing from his counsel and his knowledge of war because he was an experienced old chieftain. Thaqif had two leaders: Qārib b. al-Aswad b. Maṣ‘ūd [b. Mu‘attib]<sup>28</sup> over the Ahlāf

17. Because of their great number, the Muslims were elated, and one of the companions remarked, "Today we will not be overpowered on account of small numbers." Wāqidi, *Maghāzi*, III, 889; Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, II/1, 108 (it was Abū Bakr who made the above remark); Balādhuri, *Ansāb*, I, 365 (it was either Abū Bakr or someone else); Ibn al-Athir, *al-Kāmil*, II, 263 (it was the Prophet himself who made the above remark).

After the initial setback, the Muslims rallied around the Prophet and won the battle. Qur'an 9:25–26, stating that the Muslims were elated with joy at their great numbers, was revealed after the victory. Nöldeke-Schwally, *Geschichte*, I, 224.

18. Muḥammad b. Ḥumayd b. Ḥayyān al-Rāzī al-Tamimī died in al-Rayy in 248/862. Ibn Hajar, *Tahdhīb*, IX, 127–31; Khaṭīb, *Ta'rikh*, II, 259–64.

19. Salamah b. al-Faḍl al-Anṣārī died in 191/806. Ibn Hajar, *Tahdhīb*, IV, 153–54.

20. Muḥammad b. Ishāq b. Yasār, one of the main authorities on the life of the Prophet, died in Baghdād ca. 150/767. *EP*, s.v. Ibn Ishāq; Sezgin, *GAS*, I, 288–90; Duri, *Rise*, passim.

21. A group of Hawāzin tribes. Kalbi, *Jamharah*, 116; Ibn Hazm, *Jamharah*, 270.

22. A group of Hawāzin tribes. Ibn Hazm, *Jamharah*, 265.

23. A group of Hawāzin tribes. *Ibid.*, 273.

24. One of the two subdivisions of Muḍar reckoned as constituting the sons of ‘Adnān, the so-called Northern Arabs. Kalbi, *Jamharah*, 92; *EP*, s.v. Kays ‘Aylān.

25. A clan of Hawāzin. Ibn Hazm, *Jamharah*, 288–92.

26. A clan of Hawāzin. *Ibid.*, 282–88.

27. A leader of the Banū Jusham, and one of the most powerful Bedouin opponents of Muhammad, was considered as the greatest *fāris* poet. *EP*, s.v. Durayd b. al-Ṣimma; Sezgin, *GAS*, II, 267–68.

28. Addition from Ibn Ishāq.

(confederates),<sup>29</sup> and Dhū al-Khimār Subay' b. al-Hārith [b. Mālik]<sup>30</sup> called al-Āhmar b. al-Hārith, over the Banū Mālik.<sup>31</sup> The general command was in the hands of Mālik b. 'Awf al-Naṣrī.

When Mālik [b. 'Awf] decided to march against the Messenger of God, he took with his men their possessions, wives, and children. After making camp at Awṭās,<sup>32</sup> the men gathered around him. Among them was Durayd b. al-Ṣimmaḥ, who was carried in [1656] a howdah (*shijār*).<sup>33</sup> As soon as he had encamped he inquired what valley they were in. When he was told that it was Awṭās, he said: "What a wonderful place for cavalry! Neither a rugged hill, nor a soft lowland full of dust. But why do I hear the groaning of camels, the braying of asses, the bleating of sheep, and the crying of children?" They told him that Mālik b. 'Awf had brought his men's children, wives, and possessions. He inquired where Mālik was and summoned him.<sup>34</sup> Then he said, "O Mālik, you have become the leader of your people. Indeed, this is a battle which will have great consequences. Yet why do I hear the groaning of camels, the braying of asses, the bleating of sheep, and the crying of children?" When Mālik replied that he had brought them with the men, Durayd inquired the reason. Mālik explained [that his purpose in bringing them] was to put every man's family and possessions behind him, so that he would fight [to the death] in their defense. Durayd made a sound<sup>35</sup> [indicating his dismay] and said, "By God, [you are] a sheep-tender. [Do you think] that anything will turn back a fleeing man? If everything goes in your favor, nothing will help you except a man with his sword and lance; if it goes against you, then you will be disgraced with your family and possessions." [Then Durayd inquired]<sup>36</sup> what had hap-

29. Thaqīf is subdivided into two branches: al-Āhlāf and Banū Mālik. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, V, 374; Ibn Manzūr, *Lisān*, s.v. ھـلـفـ.

30. Addition from Ibn Ishāq.

31. Corrected from Wāqidi. Text: Dhū al-Khimār Subay' b. al-Hārith over the Banū Mālik, and his brother al-Āhmar b. al-Hārith over the Banū Hilāl.

32. A valley in the Hawāzin territory where the battle of Hunayn took place. Bakri, *Mu'jam*, I, 212; Yāqūt, *Mu'jam*, I, 281.

33. It signifies the wooden frame of the howdah which when covered becomes a howdah. Lane, *Lexicon*, s.v. sh-j-r.

34. As in S. Text: He was summoned.

35. Wāqidi: Durayd clasped his hands. I prefer this reading.

36. Addition from Ibn Ishāq.

pened to Ka'b and Kilāb. When he was told that not a single person from those two clans were present, he said, "Bravery and ardor are missing. Were it a day of noble and lofty deeds, Ka'b and Kilāb would not have stayed away. I wish that you had done what they have done!" Then he asked what clans were with them. When told [that they were] 'Amr b. 'Āmir and 'Awf b. 'Āmir, he replied, "Those two clans are recently formed branches of the Banū 'Āmir<sup>37</sup> and can neither be useful nor harmful. O Mālik, you have done no good by sending forward the best troops of Hawāzin [to meet] the main body of the cavalry. Dispatch them to the high and inaccessible parts of their land and meet the apostates (*al-subbā'*)<sup>38</sup> on horseback. If the battle goes in your favor, those in the rear can join you, and if it goes against you, you will have saved your families and possessions."<sup>39</sup> Mālik replied, "By God, I won't do [it].<sup>40</sup> You are an old, senile man, and your senility has affected your judgment. O people of Hawāzin, you will either obey me, or I will lean on this sword until it comes out of my back." He detested giving Durayd any say or credit in the matter. [The people responded by saying that they would obey him].<sup>41</sup>

[1657]

37. A clan of Hawāzin. Ibn Hazm, *Jamharah*, 272, 281.

38. *Al-Ṣābi'ūn*, pl. of *al-Ṣābi'*, is used in the Qur'ān 2:62; 5:69, 22:17, but not the pl. *al-Ṣubbā'*. Various explanations have been given as to who they were. The Sabaeans mentioned in the Qur'ān, and placed along with the Jews and Christians, are apparently the Mandaeans, a Judaeo-Christian sect practicing the rite of baptism in Mesopotamia. They were also called Christians of John the Baptist. The pagan Sabaeans of Harrān may have adopted this name to secure toleration accorded by the Qur'ān. EI<sup>1</sup>, s.v. *al-Ṣābi'a*; Andrae, *Mohammed*, 108–9; Rodinson, *Mahomet*, 146; Blachère, *Coran* (the above verses). For *al-Ṣābi'ah* today see *al-Majallah: The International News Magazine of the Arabs*, no. 354, Nov. 19–25, 1986, 49–53.

The lexicographers and some commentators of the Qur'ān, on the other hand, explain that the term means one who departs from his religion to another. They further state that this appellation was first given to Muhammad because he departed from the religion of Quraysh, and that it was applied later to those who embraced Islam. Tabārī, *Tafsīr*, II, 145–47; Tabarsī, *Majma'*, I, 126; Firuzabādi, *Qāmūs*, s.v. *ṣ-b-*; Lane, *Lexicon*, s.v. *ṣ-b-*; Shahrastāni, *Milal*, II, 61–63 (gives slightly different explanation).

39. Wāqidi (*Maghāzī*, III, 886–89) states that Durayd was very old and had almost lost his eyesight. Despite his warning, the Hawāzin stayed with Mālik because they feared that if they disobeyed him, Mālik, being a young man, might kill himself, and then they would be left with an old man, Durayd, who might not fight.

40. Addition from Ibn Ishāq.

41. Addition from Ibn Ishāq.

Durayd, therefore, retorted by saying that the [coming] battle was one he would not witness [as a warrior] and would not miss, [and recited]:

Would that I were young!  
I would ride gently and advance  
Leading long and bushy-haired steeds  
As if they were young ewes.

Durayd was the chief of the Banū Jusham, their leader and the noblest of them, but old age had overtaken him to the point that he had become feeble. His full lineage was Durayd b. al-Ṣimmah b. Bakr b. 'Alqamah b. Judā'ah b. Ghaziyyah b. Jusham b. Mu'āwiyah b. Bakr b. Hawāzin. Then Mālik told his men that when they saw the foe they should break their scabbards and charge them as one man.

Ibn Ḥumayd—Salamah—Ibn Ishāq—Umayyah b. 'Abdallāh b. 'Amr b. 'Uthmān b. 'Affān: [I was told] that Mālik b. 'Awf sent out spies to keep watch and to obtain intelligence of the enemy, but that they came back with their joints dislocated. When Mālik, expressing his distress, asked what had happened to them, they said, "We saw white men on black and white horses, and, by God, before we could resist we were struck as you see."<sup>42</sup> [This news], however, did not deter Mālik from pursuing the course he intended.

Ibn Ishāq states: When the Messenger of God heard about Hawāzin and Thaqīf, he sent 'Abdallāh b. Abī Ḥadrād al-Aslāmī<sup>43</sup> to them and ordered him to mingle with the crowds and to stay there until he could gather information about them and bring back news of them. Ibn Abī Ḥadrād, therefore, went and mingled with them and stayed with them until he learned that they had decided to fight the Messenger of God. He also learned about the dispositions of Mālik and Hawāzin and what they had decided. He then returned and informed the Messenger of God. The Mes-

42. They were three men. Mālik detained them on their return, fearing that his men might be scared at the news. He then sent another person to gather intelligence and he too met with the same fate. Wāqīdī, *Maghāzi*, III, 892; Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, II/1, 108.

43. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, II/1, 108.

senger of God called for 'Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb<sup>44</sup> and informed him about what Ibn Abī Ḥadrād had told him. Thereupon 'Umar said that he was lying. Ibn Abī Ḥadrād replied, "O 'Umar, you may accuse me of lying, but you denied the truth for a long time."<sup>45</sup> 'Umar said, "O Messenger of God, do you not hear<sup>46</sup> what Ibn Abī Ḥadrād says?" The Messenger of God answered, "You were in error and God guided you, O 'Umar."

Ibn Ḥumayd—Salamah—Muḥammad b. Ishāq—Abū Ja'far Muḥammad b. 'Ali b. Ḥusayn:<sup>47</sup> When the Messenger of God decided to march against Hawāzin, he was told that Ṣafwān b. Umayyah<sup>48</sup> had armor and weapons. Therefore, he sent to him, although he was at that time a polytheist, saying, "Lend us these weapons of yours so that we may fight our enemy tomorrow." Ṣafwān said to the messenger, "[Are you demanding them] by force, O Muḥammad?" The Messenger of God replied, "[No,] just [lend them] to us as a loan and a trust until such time as we return them to you." Ṣafwān said that in that case he did not have any objection and gave one hundred coats of mail with an adequate supply of arms. They allege that the Messenger of God asked him to provide for its transport and that he complied with the request.

Abū Ja'far Muḥammad b. 'Ali states: Thus it became a *sunnah*<sup>49</sup> that a loan with a guarantee [of its return] must be returned [or paid back].<sup>50</sup>

44. He was the second caliph and is considered the second founder of Islam. He was assassinated in 23/644. See *EI*<sup>1</sup>, s.v. 'Omar b. al-Khaṭṭāb.

45. Ibn Ishāq: O 'Umar, if you accuse me of lying, then many a time you have denied the truth. You have accused the one who is better than me [i.e., the Prophet] of lying. Wāqidi: You accuse me of lying, then many a time you have denied the truth.

46. Wāqidi: Do you hear?

47. The fifth Shi'i imām, and a recognized authority on tradition, was the grandson of al-Ḥusayn b. 'Ali b. Abī Ṭalib. On account of his learning he was given the honorific title *al-Bāqir* (one who goes deep into things). See *EI*<sup>1</sup>, s.v. Muḥammad b. 'Ali.

48. He fought the Muslim army entering Mecca, then surrendered. He died during 'Uthmān's caliphate (23–35/644–56). Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, II/1, 25–110 *pas-*sim, III/1, 167; III/2, 79, 95; IV/1, 15, 146, 147; V, 16, 338.

49. Usually, it means exemplary behavior, custom, or practice. Generally, it is used as *sunnah* of the Prophet, meaning his deeds, utterances, and unspoken approval of something. These actions and sayings of the Prophet were later established as legally binding precedents. See *EI*<sup>1</sup>, s.v. Sunna.

50. Tabrīzī, *Mishkāt*, II, 122; *Mishkat* (trans. Robson), I, 632.

Ibn Humayd—Salamah—Ibn Ishāq—‘Abdallāh b. Abī Bakr:<sup>51</sup> The Messenger of God marched with two thousand Meccans and ten thousand of his companions [who had marched with him and]<sup>52</sup> with whose support God had facilitated the conquest of Mecca. Thus they were twelve thousand in all. The Messenger of God placed ‘Attāb b. Asīd b. Abī al-‘Iṣ b. Umayyah b. ‘Abd Shams<sup>53</sup> in charge of Mecca [to look after] the men who stayed behind while he proceeded to confront Hawāzin.

Ibn Humayd—Salamah—Ibn Ishāq—‘Āsim b. ‘Umar b. Qatādah<sup>54</sup>—‘Abd al-Rahmān b. Jābir<sup>55</sup>—his father [Jābir b. ‘Abdallāh]:<sup>56</sup> When we approached the valley of Hunayn, we descended through a valley of the Tihāmah<sup>57</sup> [which was] wide and sloping. We descended gradually in the twilight of daybreak after the enemy had preceded [us].<sup>58</sup> We were waylaid by them in its bypaths, sidetracks, and narrow passes. They had collected [themselves] and were fully prepared. By God, were we frightened! As we were descending, the squadrons made their assault upon us like one man. [Our] people were routed and fled, no one turning around to look back at the other. The Messenger of God withdrew to the right [of the valley] and cried, “Where are you, O men? Come to me! I am the Messenger of God! I am Muḥammad the son of ‘Abdallāh!” [It was of] no avail. The camels bumped

51. ‘Abdallāh b. Abī Bakr b. Muḥammad b. ‘Amr b. Hazm al-Anṣārī died in 130/747–48, or 135/752–53. Ibn Hajar, *Tahdhīb*, V, 164–65; Sezgin, *GAS*, I, 284; Duri, *Rise*, 27, 34.

52. Addition from Ibn Ishāq.

53. He was a young man from the clan of Umayyah and had accepted Islam after the Meccans surrendered. He kept his position until his death in 13/634 (according to Wāqidi), or in 22/642–43 (according to Tabārī). Ibn Sa’d, *Tabaqāt*, II/1, 105; V, 330; Ibn Hajar, *Tahdhīb*, V, 89–90.

54. ‘Āsim b. ‘Umar b. Qatādah al-Anṣārī, who transmitted the traditions from Jābir b. ‘Abdallāh and Anas b. Mālik, was one of the early scholars of the *sīrah* and died ca. 120/738. Ibn Sa’d, *Tabaqāt*, III/2, 26; V, 257; Ibn Hajar, *Tahdhīb*, V, 53–54; Sezgin, *GAS*, I, 279–80; Duri, *Rise*, 27, 34.

55. Ibn Hajar, *Tahdhīb*, VI, 153.

56. A companion of the Prophet, and one of the main transmitters of traditions, who swore allegiance to the Prophet at the first ‘Aqabah meeting. Ibn Sa’d, *Tabaqāt*, III/2, 114, states that he did not leave behind any progeny; Ibn Hajar, *Isābah*, I, 433–34.

57. The narrow strip of lowland along the southwestern coast of Arabia is called the Tihāmah, and its greatest breadth is in the hinterland of Jiddah. *EI*, s.v. Tihāma.

58. Addition from Hisch. and Ibn Ishāq.

[1660]

into one another and the men ran away except a few from among the *Muhājirūn*,<sup>59</sup> the *Anṣār*,<sup>60</sup> and [the Prophet's] own family, who remained with the Messenger of God. Among the *Muhājirūn* who stood firm with him were Abū Bakr<sup>61</sup> and 'Umar; from his family were 'Alī b. Abī Tālib,<sup>62</sup> al-'Abbās b. 'Abd al-Muṭṭalib<sup>63</sup> and his son al-Fadl,<sup>64</sup> Abū Sufyān b. al-Ḥārith,<sup>65</sup> Rabi'ah b. al-Ḥārith,<sup>66</sup> Ayman b. 'Ubayd (who is Ayman b. Umm Ayman),<sup>67</sup> and Usāmah b. Zayd b. Ḥārithah.<sup>68</sup>

A man of Hawāzin on a red camel [who was carrying] in his hand a black banner mounted on the head of a long lance was leading his men. When he overtook someone, he pushed him

59. The Emigrants, an appellation applied in the Qur'ān to those followers of Muhammad who had migrated from Mecca to Medina with him. *EI*<sup>1</sup>, s.v. *Muhādjirūn*.

60. The Helpers, the designation of those who supported Muhammad in Medina. *EI*<sup>2</sup>, s.v. *Ansār*.

61. He was the first caliph and died in 13/634. See *EI*<sup>2</sup>, s.v. *Abū Bakr*.

62. Cousin and son-in-law of Muhammad, first Shi'i imām and fourth caliph, was assassinated in al-Kūfah in 40/661. See *EI*<sup>2</sup>, s.v. 'Alī b. Abī Tālib; *EIr*, s.v. 'Alī b. Abī Tālib.

63. An uncle of the Prophet who had participated in warfare against the Muslims at Badr. He joined Muhammad as he was marching on Mecca and died ca. 31/653. *EI*<sup>2</sup>, s.v. al-'Abbās b. 'Abd al-Muṭṭalib.

64. He took part in washing of the Prophet (see Tabarī below, I, 1830). The authorities differ as to when he died; some state that he died during the caliphate of Abū Bakr, while others state that he died during the caliphate of 'Umar. Ibn Hajar, *İṣābah*, V, 375–76; Ibn Hajar, *Tahdhīb*, VIII, 280.

65. He was the Prophet's cousin. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, II/1, 109, 112; IV/1, 11; VIII, 32, 34. Ibn Ishāq adds the name of his son [Ja'far] to the above list, but Ibn Hishām comments that according to some authorities it was Qutham, the son of al-'Abbās. Ibn Hishām, *Sīrah*, IV, 85–86.

66. He was the Prophet's cousin and died at the beginning of 'Umar's caliphate. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, II/1, 109; IV/1, 10, 31, 32–33; VIII, 31; Ibn Hajar, *Tahdhīb*, III, 253–54.

Balādhuri, *Ansāb*, I, 365, adds the following names to this list: 'Aqil b. Abī Tālib, al-Zubayr, and 'Abdallāh b. al-Zubayr.

67. He is Ayman b. 'Ubayd b. Zayd al-Khaṣraji (from Balhārī of Khazraj), hence Wāqīdī lists him with the *Anṣār*. His mother Umm Ayman used to look after Muhammad as a child. She had accompanied Āminah, Muhammad's mother, to Medina when she visited her family. She died shortly after the Prophet's death. Wāqīdī, *Maghāzi*, III, 922; Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, I/1, 73; II/1, 109; Dhahabī, *'Ibar*, I, 13.

68. The son of Zayd b. al-Ḥārithah, the Prophet's freedman, was born in the fourth year of the mission. Just before his death, the Prophet put him in command of an expedition to avenge his fallen father at Mu'tah [see Tabarī below, I, 1794]. *EI*<sup>1</sup>, s.v. Usāma b. Zayd; Balādhuri, *Ansāb*, I, 473–76.

with his lance. When the people escaped from his lance he lifted it to those behind him so that they would follow him. When [the Muslims] were put to flight and the uncouth fellows from Mecca who were with the Messenger of God saw [the Muslims] in total disarray, some of them spoke [in such a way as to disclose] the hatred they had harbored [against one another]. Abū Sufyān b. Ḥarb<sup>69</sup> said, "Their stampede will not stop until they reach the ocean!" He had the divining arrows with him in his quiver. Kaladah b. al-Ḥanbal,<sup>70</sup> who was present with his half-brother Ṣafwān b. Umayyah b. Khalaf, shouted, "Indeed, sorcery is useless today." Ṣafwān, who was at that time [still] a polytheist during a grace period granted him by the Messenger of God, said to him, "Shut up! May God smash your mouth! By God, I would prefer to be ruled by a man from Quraysh rather than a man from Hawāzīn!"

Shaybah b. 'Uthmān b. Abī Talḥah,<sup>71</sup> a brother of the Banū 'Abd al-Dār,<sup>72</sup> said, "Today I will avenge my father's death [from Muḥammad]<sup>73</sup> [for his father was killed at Uhud]."<sup>74</sup> Today I will kill Muḥammad. I made for the Messenger of God in order to kill him,<sup>75</sup> but something happened. I was overcome by a state of

69. He was a prominent Meccan merchant and an arch opponent of Muḥammad. When the Prophet marched on Mecca, he came out and submitted, and the Prophet guaranteed safety to those who took refuge with him. He died ca. 32/653. *EP*<sup>2</sup>, s.v. Abū Sufyān.

70. His mother was a black woman. Wāqidī, *Maghāzī*, III, 910; Ibn Sa'īd, *Tabaqāt*, V, 338.

71. He had taken a vow with Ṣafwān, after they had joined the Muslims marching to Hūnayn, that they would avenge themselves upon Muḥammad. The reason for that was that Ṣafwān's father Umayyah b. Khalaf was killed at Badr, while Shaybah's father 'Uthmān b. Abī Talḥah was killed at Uhud. Wāqidī describes vividly how Shaybah made for the Prophet in order to kill him, but he was protected by his uncle 'Abbās from the right and by his cousin Abū Sufyān from the left. See Wāqidī, *Maghāzī*, III, 909–10; Ibn Sa'īd, *Tabaqāt*, II/1, 28.

72. A clan of Quraysh and the descendants of 'Abd al-Dār b. Qusayy. Kalbī, *Jamharah*, 4, 17; Ibn Ḥazm, *Jamharah*, 125–28; see below (n. 1370 to Tabarī, I, 1827).

73. Addition from Hisch. and Ibn Ishāq.

74. A mountain about three miles north of Medina, celebrated for the battle fought there in 3/624–25 which ended unfavorably for the Muslims, *EP*<sup>1</sup>, s.v. Ohod; Hamidullāh, *Battlefields*, 22–28 (gives its topography and a map of the battlefield).

75. Hisch., Ibn Ishāq, and Ibn al-Athīr: I went around him to kill him.

inertness and was unable to do it. I then realized that he was protected from me."

Ibn Humayd—Salamah—Muhammad b. Ishāq—al-Zuhri<sup>76</sup>—Kathīr b. al-'Abbās<sup>77</sup>—his father al-'Abbās b. 'Abd al-Muṭṭalib: I was with the Messenger of God, holding the bit of his white mule which I myself had inserted into the mule's mouth. I was a big man with a strong voice. The Messenger of God was saying when he saw his men in disarray, "Where are you, O men?" When he saw that they did not pay heed [to him] he said, "O 'Abbās, cry loudly, 'O community of the *Anṣār*, O comrades of the Acacia Tree (*al-samurah*)!'"<sup>78</sup> 'Abbās did as requested and they answered, "Here we are, here we are!"<sup>79</sup> Each man would try to turn his camel but could not do so; then he would take his armor and throw it on [his camel's] neck, take his sword and shield, and leap from his mount, letting it go its own way. Then he would follow the voice until he came to the Messenger of God. Finally, a hundred men gathered around [the Prophet]; they confronted the enemy, and fought.<sup>80</sup> At first the cry was "O for the *Anṣār*! [i.e., help the *Anṣār*]!" and finally "O for Khazraj!"<sup>81</sup> They were steadfast in the battle, and the Messenger of God, standing in his stirups, looked down at the brave warriors as they were fighting and said, "Now, the fighting is fierce (*ḥamiya al-waṭīs*)."<sup>82</sup>

[1662]

76. Muhammad b. Muslim b. 'Ubaydallāh b. 'Abdallāh b. Shihāb al-Zuhri, a celebrated traditionist and a historian, died in 124/742. *EI*<sup>1</sup>, s.v. al-Zuhri; Sezgin, *CAS*, I, 280–83; Duri, *Rise*, passim.

77. He was a traditionist and a skilled *faqīh*. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, IV/1, 2.

78. Ibn Sa'd (*Tabaqāt*, II/1, 109) adds: O people of *Sūrat al-Baqarah*.

*Al-Samurah*, considered as an abode of a deity, was a sacred tree. The sanctuary of *al-'Uzzā*, an old Arabian goddess, in the valley of Nakhlah (on the road from al-Ta'if to Mecca), consisted of three *samurah* trees, in one of which she had revealed herself. It was also a tree under which the pledge of *al-Ridwān* took place at the time of al-Hudaybiyah. Ibn Hishām, *Sīrah*, III, 330; *EI*<sup>1</sup>, s.v. *al-'Uzzā*; Ryckmans, *Religions*, 8, 15; Gaudefroy-Demombynes, *Mahomet*, 33, 35, 46, 51.

79. Wāqidi, and Ibn Sa'd: They turned back as if they were camels yearning for their young ones, saying, "Here we are, here we are!"

80. The group consisting of thirty-three *Muhājirūn* and sixty-seven *Anṣār* was proclaimed by Gabriel as "The Hundred Steadfast People." Wāqidi, *Maghāzi*, III, 900–902.

81. One of the two main Arab tribes in Medina, who were more enthusiastic Muslims than the other tribe of *al-Aws*. *EI*<sup>1</sup>, s.v. *Khazraj*.

82. Literally, it means the oven became vehemently hot. It is used as a proverb for a fierce fighting. Lane, *Lexicon*, s.v. *ḥ-m-y*.

Hārūn b. Ishaq<sup>83</sup>—Muṣ'ab b. al-Miqdām<sup>84</sup>—Isrā'il<sup>85</sup>—Abū Ishaq<sup>86</sup>—al-Barā'<sup>87</sup> Abū Sufyān b. al-Hārith was leading the Prophet's mule [by its halter] on the day of Ḥunayn. When the polytheists overwhelmed [the Muslims], the Prophet got off his mount and started reciting verses (in the *rajaz* meter):

I am the Prophet, it is no lie,  
I am the son of 'Abd al-Muṭṭalib!

No man stronger than him was ever seen.

Ibn Ḥumayd—Salamah—Ibn Ishaq—Āṣim b. 'Umar b. Qatādah—Abd al-Rahmān b. Jābir—his father Jābir b. 'Abdallāh: While that man from Hawāzin, the banner-holder on his camel, was doing what he did, 'Alī b. Abī Ṭalib and a man from the Anṣār<sup>88</sup> came down making for him. 'Alī came upon him from behind and hamstrung his camel so that it fell on its backside; the Anṣārī jumped on the man and struck him a blow which cut off his foot<sup>89</sup> and half of his shank, and he was thrown from his saddle.<sup>90</sup> The men fought and, by God, when those who had fled returned they found captives [already] bound. The Messenger of God turned to Abū Sufyān b. al-Hārith b. 'Abd al-Muṭṭalib, who was one of those who stood fast with him that day and who became an excellent Muslim when he embraced Islam, as he was holding the

83. Hārūn b. Ishaq b. Muḥammad al-Hamdānī al-Kūfi died in 285/898. Ibn Ḥajar, *Tahdhīb*, X, 2–3.

84. Muṣ'ab b. al-Miqdām al-Khath'ami al-Kūfi died in 203/818–19. Ibid., X, 165–66.

85. Isrā'il b. Yūnus b. Abī Ishaq al-Sabi'i al-Kūfi died in 162/778. Ibid., I, 261–63; Dhahabī, *Tadhkīrah*, I, 214–15; idem, *Mīzān*, I, 208–10.

86. Abū Ishaq 'Amr b. 'Abdallāh al-Sabi'i al-Kūfi died in 127/745. Ibn Ḥajar, *Tahdhīb*, VIII, 63–67; Dhahabī, *Tadhkīrah*, I, 114–16; Sezgin, *GAS*, I, 283.

87. Al-Barā' b. 'Azib b. al-Hārith al-Awsī al-Anṣārī was a companion of the Prophet. He espoused the cause of 'Alī and fought with him at the Battle of the Camel, Ṣifīn, and Nahrawān, and died in al-Kūfah ca. 72/691–92. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, IV/2, 80–83; VI, 10; Ibn Ḥajar, *Tahdhīb*, I, 425–26; Sezgin, *GAS*, I, 63; *EP*, s.v. al-Barā' b. 'Azib.

88. He was Abū Dujānah. Wāqīdī, *Maghāzī*, III, 902.

89. S: Which sent his foot flying.

90. Wāqīdī, *Maghāzī*, III, 902, adds that another man from the Hawāzin came to his rescue, but he too was killed. 'Alī, Abū Dujānah, Ayman, and 'Uthmān were fighting in front of the Prophet.

crupper of the [Messenger of God's] saddle and asked who it was. He replied, "Your mother's son,<sup>91</sup> O Messenger of God."

Ibn Ḥumayd—Salamah—Ibn Ishāq—'Abdallāh b. Abī Bakr: [1663] The Messenger of God turned and saw Umm Sulaym bt. Milḥān<sup>92</sup> who was with her husband Abū Ṭalḥah.<sup>93</sup> She had wrapped her waist with a garment and was pregnant with [her son] 'Abdallāh b. Abī Ṭalḥah. She had her husband's camel with her and was afraid that it would overpower her, so she drew its head close to her and put her hand in its halter with the nose-ring. The Messenger of God cried, "[Are you] Umm Sulaym?" She replied, "Yes, may you be ransomed with my father and with my mother, O Messenger of God! Kill those who flee from you as you kill those who fight you, for they deserve it." The Messenger of God replied, "Rather, God will suffice, O Umm Sulaym." She had a dagger in her hand. Her husband [was amazed and] asked her what it was, and she replied, "A dagger. I took it with me. If a polytheist had come close to me I would have slit open [his belly] with it!" He said, "O Messenger of God, do you hear what Umm Sulaym says?"

Ibn Ḥumayd—Salamah—Ibn Ishāq—Ḥammād b. Salamah<sup>94</sup>—Ishāq b. 'Abdallāh b. Abī Ṭalḥah<sup>95</sup>—Anas b. Mālik:<sup>96</sup> On the day of Ḫunayn, Abū Ṭalḥah alone took the spoils of twenty men whom he had killed.

Ibn Ḥumayd—Salamah—Muhammad b. Ishāq—his father [Ishāq b. Yasār]<sup>97</sup>—Jubayr b. Muṭ'im:<sup>98</sup> Before the people fled and

91. "Mother" is used here in the sense of a grandmother. It is also said that he answered, "Your brother, may my father and mother be your ransom, Abū Sufyān b. al-Ḥārith." Wāqidi, *Maghāzi*, III, 900.

92. Wāqidi, *Maghāzi*, III, 902–4; Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, I/1, 86; V, 53–54.

93. He was an archer and fought with the Prophet at Badr, Uhud, and other battles. He died in 34/654–55. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, III/2, 64–66.

94. Ḥammād b. Salamah b. Dīnār al-Baṣṭī died in 167/783–84. Ibn Ḥajar, *Tahdhīb*, III, 11–16.

95. He was an *Anṣārī* and died ca. 132/749–50. *Ibid.*, I, 239–40.

96. A companion of the Prophet and one of the most prolific traditionists died in al-Baṣrah between 91/709 and 93/711. He was given by his mother to the Prophet as a servant after the *hijrah* when he was ten years old. *El<sup>2</sup>*, s.v. Anas b. Mālik.

97. Ibn Ḥajar, *Tahdhīb*, I, 257.

98. Jubayr b. Muṭ'im b. 'Adī b. Nawfal b. 'Abd Manāf accepted Islam after the conquest of Mecca and died between 56/675–76 and 59/678–79. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, V, 360; VIII, 39–40; Ibn Ḥajar, *Tahdhīb*, II, 63–64.

men were [still] fighting one another I saw something like a black striped garment descending from the sky until it dropped between us and the enemy. I gazed, and lo, it was [a mass of] black ants strewn [everywhere], which filled the valley. I had no doubt that they were angels and that the enemy would be routed.<sup>99</sup>

[1664] Ibn Ḥumayd—Salamah—Muhammad b. Ishāq: After Hawāzin were routed, the killing of the Banū Mālik from among Thaqīf was heavy and seventy of them were killed beneath their banner.<sup>100</sup> Among those [killed] were 'Uthmān b. 'Abdallāh b. Rabī'ah b. al-Ḥārith b. Ḥubayyib, grandfather of Ibn Umm Ḥakam b. Abī Sufyān.<sup>101</sup> Their banner was with Dhū al-Khimār. When he was killed, 'Uthmān b. 'Abdallāh took it and fought by it until he was killed too.

Ibn Ḥumayd—Salamah—Muhammad b. Ishāq—'Āmir b. Wahb b. al-Aswad b. Mas'ūd: When [the news of] 'Uthmān's death reached the Messenger of God he said, "May God deprive him of His mercy! He used to hate the Quraysh."

'Ali b. Sahl<sup>102</sup>—Mu'ammil<sup>103</sup>—'Umārah b. Zādān<sup>104</sup>—Thābit<sup>105</sup>—Anas [b. Mālik]: On the day of Ḥunayn, the Prophet was riding a white mule called Duldul.<sup>106</sup> When the Muslims fled, the Prophet said to his mule, "Duldul, cling [to this place]!" The mule laid its belly on the ground. The Prophet took a handful of dust and tossed it in the faces of the enemy, saying, "*Hā Mīm*,<sup>107</sup>

99. The angels fought with the Muslims at Badr and their sign was white turbans flowing behind them. Ibn Hishām, *Sīrah*, II, 285–86; Wāqidī, *Maghāzī*, III, 905–6.

100. Wāqidī, *Maghāzī*, III, 907, states that a hundred of them were killed.

101. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, V, 380.

102. 'Ali b. Sahl b. Qādim, also called Ibn Mūsā al-Ḥarashī, died in 261/874–75. Ibn Ḥajar, *Tahdhīb*, VII, 329.

103. Mu'ammil b. Ismā'il al-'Adawī died in 206/821–22. *Ibid.*, X, 380–81.

104. 'Umārah b. Zādān al-Ṣaydalānī al-Baṣrī. *Ibid.*, VII, 416–17.

105. Thābit b. Aslām al-Banānī al-Baṣrī died in 123/740–41 or 127/744–45. *Ibid.*, II, 2–4.

106. Wāqidī, *Maghāzī*, III, 897; Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, II/1, 109; see Tabari below, I, 1783.

107. At the battle of Badr, the Prophet took a handful of small pebbles, turned toward Quraysh, and threw at them, saying, "May God render their faces ugly!" Ibn Hishām, *Sīrah*, II, 280.

*Hā Mīm* are the beginning letters of *sūrah* 46. Scholars differ widely in their interpretation of these mysterious letters at the beginning of certain *sūrahs*. Some

they will not be victorious!"<sup>108</sup> The polytheists retreated; no sword was drawn, no arrow was shot, and no lance was thrust.

Ibn Ḥumayd—Salamah—Muhammad b. Ishāq—Ya'qūb b. 'Utbah b. al-Mughirah b. al-Akhnas:<sup>109</sup> With 'Uthmān b. 'Abdallāh, his young, uncircumcised Christian slave was [also] killed. While one of the *Anṣāris*<sup>110</sup> was plundering the slain of Thaqīf, he stripped the slave and found that he was uncircumcised. He yelled at the top of his voice, "[O you Arabs,]"<sup>111</sup> God knows that Thaqīf are uncircumcised!" Mughirah b. Shu'bāh<sup>112</sup> seized him by his hand, for he was afraid that [this news] about them would get out among the Arabs. He swore by his parents and begged him not to say it [to anyone], for the man concerned was only a Christian slave of theirs. He then started to uncover the slain and showed him that they were circumcised.

The *Ahlāf*'s banner was with Qārib b. al-Aswad b. Mas'ūd. When they were routed, he leaned it against a tree, and fled with his cousins and his people; hence only two men of the *Ahlāf* were slain, one called Wahb from the Banū Ghīyārah,<sup>113</sup> the other

[1665]

see them as abbreviations of God's names, while others see them as abbreviations of the *basmalah*. Yet some others offer a variety of explanations ranging from mystical signs to numerical values.

Western scholars, beginning with Nöldeke, have also attempted various explanations, none satisfactory or convincing. Nöldeke (*Geschichte*, 215f.) suggested that they were the initials of the owners of the manuscripts used by Zayd when he first compiled the Qur'an. Later he abandoned this hypothesis and adopted a view that they were meaningless symbols (Nöldeke-Schwalli, *Geschichte*, II, 68–78). Loth ("Korancommentar") advocated an abbreviation theory, that is, that the letters are cabalistic symbols standing for certain key words and phrases in the *sūras* and that they are part of the revelation. Bellamy ("Mysterious letters") proposed that those letters are abbreviations for the *basmalah*. Watt, *Bell's introduction*, 61–65; Blachère, *Introduction*, 140–49.

108. Wāqidī: They will be vanquished, by the Lord of the Ka'bah. Ibn Sa'd (*Tabaqāt*, II/1, 113) reports that when the Prophet tossed dust in the faces of the enemy, their eyes became full of dust and they heard a rattling sound.

109. He was a *faqīh* in Medina and died in 128/745–46. Ibn Hajar, *Tahdhīb*, XI, 392.

110. According to Wāqidī, *Maghāzī*, III, 911, he was Abū Ṭalhah.

111. Addition from Ibn Ishāq. Wāqidī: O you the *Anṣār*, I swear by God . . .

112. He is known as one of the chief *dāhiyyahs* (one who could get himself out of the most hopeless difficulty) of his time and died between 48/668 and 51/671. EI<sup>1</sup>, s.v. al-Mughirah b. Shu'bāh.

113. The Banū Ghīyārah b. 'Awf b. Thaqīf. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, V, 377; Ibn Hazm, *Jamharah*, 268.

called al-Julāḥ<sup>114</sup> from the Banū Kunnah.<sup>115</sup> When [the news] of al-Julāḥ's death reached the Messenger of God he said, "Today the leader of Thaqīf's youth has been slain except for Ibn Hunaydah." "Ibn Hunaydah" was al-Hārith b. Aws.

Ibn Humayd—Salamah—Ibn Ishāq: After the polytheists were defeated, they came to al-Tā'if<sup>116</sup> while Mālik b. 'Awf was with them. Some of them encamped in Awṭās, while the Banū Ghiyarah<sup>117</sup> of Thaqif went toward Nakhlah.<sup>118</sup> The Messenger of God's cavalry followed those who went to Nakhlah, but not those who took to the narrow passes. Rabī'ah b. Rufay' b. Uhbaṇ b. Tha'labaḥ b. Rabī'ah b. Yarbū' b. Sammāl<sup>119</sup> b. 'Awf b. Imr al-Qays, who was called Ibn Ladh'ah after his mother, overtook Durayd b. al-Šimmaḥ and seized his camel by its halter, thinking that he was a woman because he was in a howdah. But lo, it was a man. He made the camel kneel down beside him and [found that] the man was very old. He was Durayd b. al-Šimmaḥ, [but] the young man did not know him. Durayd asked him what he wanted to do with him. The young man replied that he wanted to kill him. Durayd asked him who he was, and he replied that he was Rabī'ah b. Rufay' al-Sulamī. He then struck him with his sword, but to no effect. Thereupon Durayd said, "What a poor weapon your mother has armed you with! Take this sword of mine that is at the rear of the saddle in the howdah and strike me with it above the spine but below the brain, for I used to slay men in that way. Then when you go to your mother inform her that you have killed Durayd b. al-Šimmaḥ. By God, how many times I have protected your women!" The Banū Sulaym allege that Rabī'ah said, "When I delivered him the blow, his clothes fell open, and lo, his perineum and the interior of his thighs were like paper from riding horses unsaddled." When Rabī'ah returned to his mother, he in-

114. Wāqidi: Al-Lajlāj.

115. Ibn Ishāq: Banū Kubbah. The Banū Kunnah were from the Ghāmidī tribe of Yemen. Wāqidi, *Magħażi*, III, 907; Firuzabadi, *Qāmūs*, s.v. gh-m-d.

116. A town seventy-five miles southeast of Mecca about five thousand feet above sea level in the mountains of Sarāt. Elī, s.v. Tā'if; Hamidullah, *Battlefields*, 43–45.

117. S and Wāqidi: Banū 'Anazah.

118. A valley about two nights' journey from Mecca. Hamdānī, *Ṣifat*, I, 127, 173; Bakrī, *Mu'jam*, IV, 1304; Yāqūt, *Mu'jam*, V, 277.

119. S and Ibn Hazm (*Jamharah*, 262): Simāk.

formed her that he had killed [Durayd] and she said, "By God, he set free three mothers of yours."<sup>120</sup>

**Abū Ja'far [al-Tabarī]:** The Messenger of God sent [his men] in pursuit of those who went toward Awṭās. Mūsā b. 'Abd al-Rahmān al-Kindī<sup>121</sup>—Abū Usāmah<sup>122</sup>—Burayd b. 'Abdallāh<sup>123</sup>—Abū Burdah<sup>124</sup>—his father [Abū Mūsā al-Ash'arī]:<sup>125</sup> When the Prophet came from Ḥunayn, he sent Abū 'Āmir [al-Ash'arī]<sup>126</sup> with an army to Awṭās. He encountered Durayd b. al-Ṣimmah and killed him<sup>127</sup> and God routed Durayd's companions.

**Abū Mūsā [al-Ash'arī]:** The Messenger of God sent me with Abū 'Āmir. When Abū 'Āmir was hit by an arrow, which stuck in his knee, shot by a man from the Banū Jusham,<sup>128</sup> I came to him and said, "O uncle, who shot you?" Pointing to the man, he said, "That one is my killer! You see him, that one shot me!" Abū Mūsā went after him and overtook him, but when the man saw

[1667]

120. Wāqidi adds: "At one early morning and sheared off your father's forelock." The youth replied, "I was not aware of [it]."

121. Mūsā b. 'Abd al-Rahmān b. Sa'id b. Masrūq al-Kindī al-Kūfi died in 258/871–72. Ibn Hajar, *Tahdhīb*, X, 355–56.

122. Hammād b. Usāmah b. Zayd al-Qurashi al-Kūfi died in 201/816–17. *Ibid.*, III, 2–3.

123. Burayd b. 'Abdallāh b. Abī Burdah b. Abī Mūsā al-Ash'arī. *Ibid.*, I, 431–32.

124. Abū Burdah 'Āmir b. Abī Mūsā al-Ash'arī was one of the first *qādīs* of al-Kūfah and died in 103/721–22 or 104/722–23. *EP*, s.v. al-Ash'arī, Abū Burda.

125. He was from Yemen, and after accepting Islam migrated to Abyssinia and returned to Medina on the conquest of Khaybar. He is known as a lukewarm supporter of 'Ali, whom he represented as an arbiter after the battle of Ṣiffin, but he was outwitted by 'Amr b. al-'Āṣ. He died ca. 42/662–63. *EP*, s.v. al-Ash'arī, Abū Mūsā.

126. He had accepted Islam before the conquest of Mecca. Ibn Sa'd, *Ṭabaqāt*, IV/2, 75; Ibn Hajar, *Tahdhīb*, XII, 144.

127. It conflicts with the preceding report that Durayd was killed by Rabi'ah b. Rufay'. Ibn Hishām, *Sīrah*, IV, 97, comments that the person who killed Durayd was 'Abdallāh b. Qunay' b. Uhbañ b. Tha'labah b. Rabi'ah. Balādhuri, *Ansāb*, I, 366, reports that Abū 'Āmir was killed by Ibn Durayd b. al-Ṣimmah, who in turn was killed by al-Dabbāk b. 'Abd al-Rahmān al-Ash'arī.

128. Ibn Hishām, *Sīrah*, IV, 99–100, states that he was shot by two brothers, al-'Alā' and Awfā, sons of al-Hārith from the Banū Jusham b. Mu'āwiyah. One arrow hit his heart, while the other hit his knee. Abū Mūsā attacked and killed both of them. Ibn Hishām adds another note describing Abū 'Āmir's bravery and states that he was challenged to a duel by ten men, all of them brothers. Abū 'Āmir accepted the challenge, killed nine of them and allowed the tenth, who later became a Muslim, to escape. Wāqidi, *Maghāzi*, III, 915–16, reports a similar story and states that Abū 'Āmir killed nine contestants but was killed by the tenth. Cf. Ibn Sa'd, *Ṭabaqāt*, II/1, 109.

him he fled. Abū Mūsā pursued him, calling out [loudly], "Aren't you ashamed of (yourself)? Aren't you an Arab? Won't you make a stand?" So he turned back. They confronted each other and exchanged two blows. Abū Mūsā killed him with his sword and returned to Abū 'Āmir telling him that God had killed his enemy. Abū 'Āmir asked him to remove the arrow [from his knee], and when he removed it water flowed from [the wound]. So he said [to Abū Mūsā], "O my nephew, go to the Messenger of God, give him my salutation (*salām*), and ask him to seek (God's) forgiveness for me." He then appointed Abū Mūsā in charge of the army and died shortly thereafter.

Ibn Humayd—Salamah—Ibn Ishāq: It is alleged that Salamah b. Durayd was the one who shot Abū 'Āmir with an arrow that hit him in his knee and killed him. Salamah b. Durayd said in this regard:

If you ask about me I am Salamah,  
The son of Samādīr<sup>129</sup> to one who observes closely.  
I smite with the sword the heads of the Muslims.

Samādīr was his mother; hence he traced his descent to her.

[1668] After his defeat, Mālik b. 'Awf fled and stopped with some of his horsemen at a narrow pass on the road, asking them to wait until the weak ones and the others had caught up with them. They stopped there until the men from the defeated army caught up with them.<sup>130</sup>

Ibn Humayd—Salamah—Muhammad b. Ishāq—one of the Banū Sa'd b. Bakr: That day, the Messenger of God said to the horsemen whom he sent [in pursuit] that if they could get hold of Bijād, a man from the Banū Sa'd b. Bakr, then they should not let him escape, for he had done something evil.<sup>131</sup> When the Muslims seized him they herded him with his family and his sister al-Shaymā' bt. al-Hārith b. 'Abdallāh b. 'Abd al-'Uzzā,<sup>132</sup> foster-sister

129. The name of his mother. Balādhuri, *Ansāb*, I, 365. It means weakness of sight, or else it signifies an affliction resembling vertigo. Firuzabadi, *Qāmūs*, s.v. s-m-d-r; Lane, *Lexicon*, s.v. s-m-d-r.

130. For more details about Mālik's escape, see Wāqidī, *Magħażi*, III, 916–17.

131. Ibid., III, 913, states that he had brutally dismembered a Muslim and then set the dead body on fire.

132. She used to carry and look after the Prophet as a child. Ibn Ishāq, *Kitāb al-Mubtada'*, 25; Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, I/1, 69.

of the Messenger of God, [like cattle] and treated her roughly. She told the Muslims that she was the foster-sister of the Messenger of God, but they did not believe her until they brought her to the Messenger of God.

Ibn Ḥumayd—Salamah—Ibn Ishāq—Abū Wajzah Yazīd b. ‘Ubayd al-Sa’di:<sup>133</sup> When Shaymā’ was brought to the Messenger of God, she said, “O Messenger of God, I am your foster-sister.”<sup>134</sup> He said, “What is the proof of that?” She replied, “The bite you gave me on my back when I carried you at my hip.” The Messenger of God acknowledged the proof, spread out his robe for her and asked her to sit on it. He then gave her the choice either to live with him in affection and honor or to go back to her people with compensation. She replied that she would prefer to return to her folk and he complied with her wish. The Banū Sa’d b. Bakr allege that the Messenger of God gave her a slave called Makhūl and a slave girl.<sup>135</sup> She married them off, one with the other, and their progeny survives to this day.

[1669]

Ibn Ishāq: The following men were martyred at Hunayn:

From the Banū Hāshim<sup>136</sup> of Quraysh: Ayman b. ‘Ubayd, the son of Umm Ayman, the Messenger of God’s freed bondmaid.

From the Banū Asad b. ‘Abd al-‘Uzzā:<sup>137</sup> Yazid b. Zama’ah b. al-Aswad b. al-Muṭṭalib b. Asad.<sup>138</sup> His horse, called al-Janāh, threw him and he was killed.

From the Anṣār: Surāqah b. al-Hārith b. ‘Adī b. Bal’ajlān [or Banū al-‘Ajlān].<sup>139</sup>

From the Ash’ariyyūn:<sup>140</sup> Abū ‘Āmir al-Ash’arī.

133. Died in 130/747–48. Ibn Hajar, *Tahdhīb*, XI, 349.

134. As in S and Ibn Ishāq. Text: Sister. Lings, *Muhammad*, 306–7, gives a lively description of the meeting.

135. Before she left, she embraced Islam and the Prophet gave her three slaves, a slave girl, and a number of animals. For details, see Wāqidi, *Maghāzi*, III, 913–14.

136. The Banū Hāshim are the descendants of Hāshim b. ‘Abd Manāf, the great-grandfather of the Prophet. Kalbī, *Jamharah*, 4; Ibn Hazm, *Jamharah*, 14–17; *EP*, s.v. Hāshim b. ‘Abd Manāf. Wāqidi lists Ayman b. ‘Ubayd among the Anṣār, which is more correct; see above, n. 67.

137. They are the Banū Asad b. ‘Abd al-‘Uzzā b. Quṣayy. Kalbī, *Jamharah*, 19; Ibn Hazm, *Jamharah*, 117–25.

138. He is not listed by Wāqidi, *Maghāzi*, III, 922. Instead of him, he lists Ruqaym b. Thābit al-Anṣāri.

139. Ibn Sa’d, *Tabaqāt*, II/1, 109; VIII, 310.

140. A South Arabian tribe, descendants of al-Ash’ar, whose name was Nabit b. Udad b. Zayd b. Yashjub. Kalbī, *Jamharah*, 273; Ibn Hazm, *Jamharah*, 397–98.

The captives of Hunayn, along with their possessions, were brought to the Messenger of God, Mas'ūd b. 'Amr al-Qāri<sup>141</sup> overseeing the spoils. The Messenger of God then ordered that the captives and their possessions be taken to al-Jī'rānah<sup>142</sup> and held there in custody.

Ibn Humayd—Salamah—Ibn Ishāq: When the defeated men of Thaqif came to al-Tā'if, they shut the gates of the city and made preparations for war. Neither 'Urwah b. Mas'ūd<sup>143</sup> nor Ghaylān b. Salamah<sup>144</sup> witnessed Hunayn or the seige of al-Tā'if, [because] they were in Jurash<sup>145</sup> learning the use of the testudo (*al-dabbāb* and *al-dubūr*)<sup>146</sup> and the catapult (*al-majāniq*).

*[The Siege of al-Tā'if]*

[1670] 'Alī b. Naṣr b. 'Alī [al-Jahdāmī]—'Abd al-Ṣamad b. 'Abd al-Wārith—'Abd al-Wārith b. 'Abd al-Ṣamad b. 'Abd al-Wārith—his father—Abān al-'Aṭṭār—Hishām b. 'Urwah—'Urwah: When he had finished at Hunayn, the Messenger of God and his companions went directly to al-Tā'if and encamped there for a fortnight, waging war against Thaqif.<sup>147</sup> Thaqif fought the Muslims from behind the fort and none came out in the open. All of the surrounding people surrendered and sent their delegations to the Messenger of God. After besieging al-Tā'if for a fortnight, the

141. Ibn Ishāq: Mas'ūd b. 'Amr al-Ghifārī, Wāqidī, and Ibn al-Athīr (*Kāmil*, II, 266); Budayl b. Waraqā' al-Khuzā'ī.

142. A well about 24 km from Mecca on the way to al-Tā'if. Hamdānī, *Ṣifat*, I, 120; Bakrī, *Mu'jam*, II, 384 (where it is said that the Iraqis pronounce it al-Jī'rānah); Yāqūt, *Mu'jam*, II, 142.

143. He was the uncle of al-Mughirah b. Shu'bāh and was married to Abū Sufyān's daughter. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, I/2, 52–53; II/1, 70; IV/1, 184; IV/2, 25; V, 369–70, 373; VIII, 175. See Tabari below, I, 1687.

144. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, I/2, 52, 53; V, 369.

145. A town about 40 km southeast of Abhā. Jāsir, *Sarāt*, 42–49. Both Bakrī (*Mu'jam*, II, 376) and Yāqūt (*Mu'jam*, II, 126) list it as being in Yemen; however demarcation of the borders between the Yemen and the Hijāz was a problem. Cf. Ḥamidullāh, *Battlefields*, 45–46. See n. 603, Tabari, below, I, 1730.

146. *Dabbāb* is a machine made of skins and wood. It is used in war, propelled to the lower part of the fortress in order to make a breach therein, while the *dubūr* is a part of the *dabbāb* (testudo) that defends the men entering into the *dabbāb* from what is thrown upon them from above. Lane, *Lexicon*, s.v. d-b-b, d-b-r.

147. Khālid b. al-Walid was sent as the vanguard with cavalry from Sulaym. Wāqidī, *Maghāzī*, III, 923. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, II/I, 114, states that the Thaqif had stored enough provisions to last them for a whole year.

Prophet left and halted at al-Jī'rānah where the captives of Hunayn were held with their women and children. It is alleged that those captives taken from the Hawāzin numbered six thousand with women and children. When he reached al-Jī'rānah, the delegations of Hawāzin came to the Prophet and embraced Islam. Therefore, he set all their women and children free and decided to make the lesser pilgrimage [directly] from al-Jī'rānah. The month was Dhū al-Qa'dah. After that, the Messenger of God returned to Medina, put ['Attāb b. Asid]<sup>148</sup> in charge of Mecca, and asked him to perform the greater pilgrimage with the people and to ensure their safety. [He also left behind with him Mu'ādh b. Jabal]<sup>149</sup> to instruct [the people] in Islam. When he reached Medina, the delegations of Thaqīf arrived, brought the dispute [mentioned earlier] before him, and gave him the oath of allegiance, which consisted of a document that they wrote and signed with him.

Ibn Ḥumayd—Salamah—Ibn Ishāq—'Amr b. Shu'ayb:<sup>150</sup> The Messenger of God journeyed from Ḥunayn to al-Tā'if by the way of Nakhlat al-Yamāniyyah,<sup>151</sup> Qarn,<sup>152</sup> al-Mulayh,<sup>153</sup> and Bahrat al-Rughā'<sup>154</sup> of Liyyah.<sup>155</sup> There he built [i.e., at Bahrat al-Rughā'] a mosque and prayed in it. After he arrived that day, he permitted retaliation for homicide. That was the first time [this practice]

[1671]

148. Corrected by me. Text: Abū Bakr. It conflicts with all other sources and with al-Tabari's own statement that 'Attāb b. Asid was appointed by the Prophet over Mecca. See n. 53 above and Tabari below, I, 1685. It was 'Attāb who led the people for the greater pilgrimage also. Cf. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, II/I, 105; V, 330.

149. Addition from text in Tabari, below, I, 1685. The text in this place seems to be badly corrupted. Mu'ādh b. Jabal al-Anṣāri was a prominent companion of the Messenger of God. He died in the plague of 'Amwās in Syria in 18/639–40 when he was thirty-eight. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, II/2, 107–9; III/2, 120–26.

150. 'Amr b. Shu'ayb b. Muḥammad b. 'Abdallāh b. 'Amr b. al-'Āṣ. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, V, 180; Ibn Hajar, *Tahdhīb*, VIII, 48–55.

151. A valley about a night or two nights' journey from Mecca toward the Yemen. Bakrī, *Mu'jam*, IV, 1304; Yāqūt, *Mu'jam*, V, 277–78.

152. Qarn al-Thā'lib, about twenty-four hours' journey from Mecca, was a meeting place for the people of Najd. Bakrī, *Mu'jam*, III, 1067; Yāqūt, *Mu'jam*, IV, 332.

153. A valley near al-Tā'if. Bakrī, *Mu'jam*, III, 1167–68; IV, 1259; Yāqūt, *Mu'jam*, V, 196.

154. A place in the district of al-Tā'if. Bakrī, *Mu'jam*, I, 229; Yāqūt, *Mu'jam*, I, 346.

155. A valley about 13 km east of al-Tā'if. Hamdānī, *Ṣifat*, I, 120–21; Bakrī, *Mu'jam*, III, 1167–68; Yāqūt, *Mu'jam*, V, 30; Jāsir, *Sarāt*, 10–11.

was allowed in Islam. A man of the Banū Layth<sup>156</sup> had killed a man of Hudhayl,<sup>157</sup> so the Messenger of God killed him. While he was in Liyyah, the Messenger of God ordered that the fortress of Mālik b. 'Awf be demolished.<sup>158</sup> He then followed a road called al-Dayqah [i.e., the narrow, strait].<sup>159</sup> As he was passing through it he inquired about its name. When he was told that it was al-Dayqah, he said, "No, rather it is al-Yusrā [i.e., the easy]." Then he went by Nakhb<sup>160</sup> and halted under a lone tree called al-Ṣadirah near the property of a man of Thaqif. The Messenger of God sent word to him either to come out or else his walled garden would be destroyed.<sup>161</sup> He refused to come out, so the Messenger of God ordered the walled garden to be destroyed.<sup>162</sup>

Then the Messenger of God went on until he halted near al-Tā'if and pitched his camp there. Some of his companions were killed by arrows, because the camp had been placed very close to the walls of al-Tā'if and the arrows were reaching them.<sup>163</sup> The Muslims were unable to get through its wall, for [the inhabitants] had shut the gate against them. When his comrades were killed by arrows, the Prophet moved to higher ground and pitched his camp near where his mosque stands today. He besieged them for some twenty days.<sup>164</sup> He had two of his wives with him, one of

156. The Banū Layth b. Bakr b. 'Abd Manāt b. Kinānah. Kalbī, *Jamharah*, 36; Ibn Hazm, *Jamharah*, 180, 183, 465.

157. A tribe of northern Arab descent that occupied much of the territory west and east of Mecca and up into the mountains toward al-Tā'if. It was closely related to Kinānah and consequently to Quraysh. *EP*<sup>2</sup>, s.v. Hudhayl. Wāqidi, *Maghāzī*, III, 924, states that the man of Layth, who had killed a man from the Hudhayl, was apprehended and brought before the Prophet. The people gathered and quarrelled in the Prophet's presence, so he turned the man over to the men of Hudhayl who killed him.

158. Wāqidi, *Maghāzī*, III, 925, states it was burnt.

159. It is often used for a narrow wādi, perhaps impassable when in flood. Serjeant, "Translation," 9.

160. A valley near al-Tā'if. Bakrī (*Mu'jam*, IV, 1301–2); Nakhib, Yāqūt (*Mu'jam*, V, 275); Nakhib or Nakhab.

161. Wāqidi: Burnt.

162. Wāqidi: Burnt.

163. Al-Hubāb b. al-Mundhir had pointed out to the Prophet that the camp was very close to the fortress. Wāqidi, *Maghāzī*, III, 925–26.

164. Ibn Hishām: It is said for seventeen days. Wāqidi: Some state eighteen days, others nineteen days, and yet others fifteen days. Ibn Sa'd: eighteen days.

whom was Umm Salamah bt. Abī Umayyah.<sup>165</sup> Al-Wāqidī states that the other was Zaynab bt. Jahsh.<sup>166</sup> He pitched two tents for them and prayed between the tents as long as<sup>167</sup> he stayed there. After Thaqif surrendered, 'Amr b. Umayyah<sup>168</sup> b. Wahb b. Mu'at-tib b. Mālik built a mosque over the place where the Messenger of God had prayed. There was a column in that mosque about which it is alleged that the sun never rises over it any day without a creaking noise being heard from it.<sup>169</sup> The Messenger of God besieged Thaqif and fought them bitterly. Both sides shot arrows at each other<sup>170</sup> until the day when the wall of al-Tā'if was stormed (*shadkhah*).<sup>171</sup> [That day] a number of the Messenger of God's companions went under a testudo and advanced up to the wall [to make a breach in it].<sup>172</sup> Thaqif showered them with scraps of hot iron, so they came out from under [the testudo], and Thaqif shot them with arrows, killing some of them. The Messenger of God then ordered that the vineyards of Thaqif be cut down, and the men fell upon them, cutting them down.<sup>173</sup>

Abū Sufyān b. Ḥarb and al-Mughirah b. Shu'bāh went up to al-Tā'if and cried out to Thaqif to assure their safety so that they could speak to them. When they guaranteed them safety, they called upon the women of Quraysh and Banū Kinānah<sup>174</sup> to come out to them, for they were afraid that they would be taken cap-

165. See Tabārī, below, I, 1771.

166. See Tabārī, below, I, 1772–73.

167. Hisch and Ibn Ishāq: Then; Wāqidi, Ibn Sa'd: As long as.

168. Corrected from Hisch., Ibn Ishāq, Wāqidi, and Ibn Hazm (*Jamharah*, 268). Text: Abū Umayyah b. 'Amr.

169. Wāqidi adds: More than ten times, hence the people considered that noise [a form of] glorification of God (*tasbih*).

170. Ibn Hishām (*Sīrah*, IV, 126) adds: The Messenger of God shot at them with catapults. A person whom I trust relate to me that the Messenger of God was the first to use the catapult in Islam, as he employed it against the people of al-Tā'if.

171. Its literal meaning is to break or crush. Lane, *Lexicon*, s.v. sh-d-kh.

172. Addition from Hisch., Ibn Ishāq, and Wāqidi. The testudo and the catapult were brought by the Muslims, cf. Wāqidi, *Maghāzi*, III, 923, 927; Balādhurī, *An-sāb*, I, 366, 367.

173. For a different version, see Wāqidi, *Maghāzi*, III, 928–29.

174. A large Muḍarī tribe (Kinānah b. Khuzaymah b. Mudrikah b. al-Yās b. Muḍar b. Nizār b. Ma'add b. 'Adnān), which had its camping grounds in the territory around Mecca. Quraysh derived their origin from them. See *EP*, s.v. Kināna.

[1672]

tive, but they refused [to come out]. Among them were Āminah bt. Abī Sufyān,<sup>175</sup> who was married to 'Urwah b. Mas'ūd, by whom she had [the son] Dāwūd b. 'Urwah.<sup>176</sup>

- [1673] Al-Wāqidī<sup>177</sup>—Kathīr b. Zayd<sup>178</sup>—al-Walīd b. Rabāh<sup>179</sup>—Abū Hurayrah:<sup>180</sup> When fifteen days of siege had passed at al-Tā'if, the Messenger of God consulted Nawfal b. Mu'āwiya al-Dili<sup>181</sup> and asked his opinion about continuing [the siege]. He replied, "O Messenger of God, [they are like] a fox [hiding] in its den. If you persist [in your siege], you will capture it, and if you leave it, it will not harm you."

Ibn Humayd—Salamah—Ibn Ishāq: It has been reported that the Messenger of God said to Abū Bakr b. Abī Qubāfah while he was besieging Thaqif in al-Tā'if, "O Abū Bakr, I saw [in a dream] that I was presented with a large bowl filled with butter and that a cock pecked at it and spilt it." Abū Bakr replied, "O Messenger of God, I don't think that you will attain what you desire from them today." The Messenger of God responded that he did not think so either.<sup>182</sup>

Then Khuwaylah<sup>183</sup> bt. Ḥakīm b. Umayyah b. Ḥārithah b. al-

175. According to Ibn Hishām and Ibn Sa'd (*Tabaqāt*, VIII, 175), she was Maymūnah bt. Abī Sufyān. Āminah was married to someone else, see Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, V, 129; VIII, 68.

176. Ibn Ishāq adds two more names: And al-Firāsiyyah bt. Suwayd b. 'Amr b. Tha'labah, whose son was 'Abd al-Rahmān b. Qārib, and al-Fuqaymiyyah Umaymah, daughter of the intercalator Umayyah b. Qal'. Cf. Wāqidi, *Maghāzi*, III, 929. When those women refused to come out, Ibn al-Aswad b. Mas'ūd spoke to Abū Sufyān and al-Mughirah about saving his own property from destruction. Ibn Hishām, *Sīrah*, IV, 126; Wāqidi, *Maghāzi*, III, 926–27.

177. Abū 'Abdallāh Muḥammad b. 'Umar al-Wāqidi, an early Arab historian, died in 207/823 in Baghdaḍ. *El*<sup>1</sup>, s.v. al-Wāqidi; Sezgin, *GAS*, I, 294–97; Duri, *Rise*, passim.

178. Kathīr b. Zayd al-Aslāmī died during the caliphate of al-Manṣūr (136–58/754–75) Ibn Hajar, *Tahdhīb*, VIII, 413–15.

179. Walīd b. Rabāh al-Dawṣī died in 117/735. *Ibid.*, XI, 133.

180. Although he embraced Islam less than four years before the Prophet's death, he is noted as a prolific narrator of traditions. He died between 57/676–77 and 59/678–79. *El*<sup>2</sup>, s.v. Abū Hurayra.

181. He had fought against the Muslims at Uhud, and accepted Islam after the conquest of Mecca. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, I/1, 81; II/1, 114; III/2, 57, 85, 119.

182. Dreams and their interpretations play an important role in the biography of the Prophet; see Fahd, *Divination*, 247ff.

183. Both Wāqidi (*Maghāzi*, III, 935) and Ibn Sa'd (*Tabaqāt*, III/1, 292; VIII, 113) give her name as Khawlah. Khuwaylah is a diminutive form. Her husband

Awqāṣ al-Sulamiyyah, wife of ‘Uthmān b. Maz‘ūn, requested the Messenger of God that if God granted him victory over al-Tā’if, he would give her the jewelry of Bādiyah bt. Ghaylān b. Salamah,<sup>184</sup> or that of al-Fāri‘ah bt. ‘Uqayl,<sup>185</sup> for they were the most bejeweled<sup>186</sup> women of Thaqif.

Ibn Ishāq: It has been reported that the Messenger of God told her, “And if [the victory] over Thaqif is not granted to me, O Khuwaylah?” Khuwaylah left and told ‘Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb [what had happened], so he came to the Messenger of God and asked him whether what Khuwaylah had said was true. The Messenger of God replied, “Yes, I said it.” [Thereupon ‘Umar] said, “Is [victory] over them not to be granted, O Messenger of God?” On hearing the Messenger of God’s answer [in the affirmative], ‘Umar asked if he should give the order to depart, and after receiving permission he announced the departure.<sup>187</sup>

[1674]

When the people began to move out, Sa‘id<sup>188</sup> b. ‘Ubayd b. Asīd<sup>189</sup> b. Abī ‘Amr b. Ilāj al-Thaqafī cried out that [al-Tā’if] was holding out [against the siege]. ‘Uyaynah b. Ḥiṣn<sup>190</sup> responded, “Yes, admirably and nobly!” One of the Muslims<sup>191</sup> said to him, “May God smite you, O ‘Uyaynah! Do you praise the polytheists for holding out against the Messenger of God while you [yourself] have come to assist him?” He replied, “By God, I did not come to fight Thaqif with you, but I wished Muḥammad to be victorious over al-Tā’if, so that I might obtain a slave girl from Thaqif whom

<sup>184</sup> ‘Uthmān b. Maz‘ūn was one of the early converts and a very pious person. He died in 3/624–25 in Medina. Ibn Sa‘d, *Tabaqāt*, I/1, 90, 114–15, 136; III/1, 286–92, 298.

<sup>185</sup> She was later married to ‘Abd al-Raḥmān b. ‘Awf. Wāqidi, *Maghāzi*, III, 933, 935; Ibn Sa‘d, *Tabaqāt*, III/1, 90.

<sup>186</sup> As vocalized in the text. In other sources it is not vocalized and could be ‘Aqil.

<sup>187</sup> Wāqidi: Prettiest.

<sup>188</sup> Some people were not happy to depart without the victory. Both Abū Bakr and ‘Umar had to convince them that the Prophet was acting according to revelation. Wāqidi, *Maghāzi*, III, 936–37; Ibn Sa‘d, *Tabaqāt*, II/1, 115; Watt, *Muhammad at Medina*, 73.

<sup>189</sup> Wāqidi: Sa‘d.

<sup>190</sup> C: Asad; Wāqidi: Asid b. ‘Amr.

<sup>191</sup> ‘Uyaynah b. Ḥiṣn al-Fazārī had fought several times against the Muslims. Wāqidi, *Maghāzi*, III, 932–33 (story about his hypocrisy); Ibn Sa‘d, *Tabaqāt*, I/2, 180; II/1, 45, 47, 51–52, 58, 87, 110–11, 115–16; III/1, 65.

<sup>192</sup> Wāqidi: ‘Amī b. al-‘As.

I might make pregnant<sup>192</sup> so that she might bear me a son, for Thaqif are clever people (*manākīr*)."<sup>193</sup>

At al-Tā'if, twelve of the Messenger of God's companions were martyred, seven from Quraysh, one from Banū Layth, and four from the *Anṣār*.<sup>194</sup>

*[The Division of the Booty Captured at Hunayn  
and Gifts of Conciliation]*

Ibn Ḥumayd—Salamah—Ibn Ishāq: Then the Messenger of God left al-Tā'if and went [by way] of Dahnā<sup>195</sup> until he halted at al-Jī'rānah with the Muslims who were with him. When he marched to al-Tā'if, he had sent the captives of Hawāzin to be detained in al-Jī'rānah. Thus the delegations of Hawāzin came to him there. The Messenger of God held six thousand captives from the children and women, and innumerable camels and sheep.<sup>196</sup>

[1675] Ibn Ḥumayd—Salamah—Muhammad b. Ishāq—'Amr b. Shu'ayb—his father<sup>197</sup>—his grandfather 'Abdallāh b. 'Amr b.

192. Hisch., Ibn Ishāq, and Wāqidi: Whom I might tread.

193. This is a pun, a play on the word *manākīr*, because its singular *munkar* generally means an action disapproved by sound intellect, or deemed to be bad, or anything pronounced to be abominable by the law. Here it is not used in this general sense but as *rajul'un nakir-un*, meaning a man who possesses intelligence with cunning. Firuzabadi, Qāmūs, s.v. n-k-r; Lane, *Lexicon*, s.v. n-k-r.

Wāqidi (*Maghāzi*, III, 937): For Thaqif are gifted with a blessing (*mubārakūn*). He further states that, when 'Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb informed the Prophet what 'Uayayna had said, he smiled and said, "[The man exhibits] an acceptable foolishness." (He is an agreeable fool.)

Ibn Ishāq (*Sīrah*, IV, 127–28) states that during the siege of al-Tā'if some of the slaves came out, embraced Islam, and were set free by the Prophet. Cf. Wāqidi, *Maghāzi*, III, 931–32 (they numbered from thirteen to nineteen).

194. For their names, see Ibn Hishām, *Sīrah*, IV, 129; Wāqidi, *Maghāzi*, III, 938.

195. Wāqidi adds: Then passed by Qarn al-Manāzil and Nakhlah. Dahnā is a district of al-Tā'if. Bakri, *Mu'jam*, II, 545–46; Yağut, *Mu'jam*, II, 444.

196. According to Hisch. and Ibn Ishāq, and it concurs with what is stated earlier (see Tabārī, I, 1670). Text: Held a large number of captives from the women and children of Hawāzin, six thousand camels, and an immense number of sheep. According to Wāqidi (*Maghāzi*, III, 943–44), there were six thousand captives, twenty-four thousand camels, and about forty thousand sheep. In addition to that, the Muslims captured four thousand *ūqiyyahs* [about 1/12 *rajl* or forty dirhams to the *ūqiyyah*; see n. 983 below] of silver. Cf. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, II/1, 110.

197. Shu'ayb b. Muhammad b. 'Abdallāh b. 'Amr b. al-'Aṣ. Ibn Ḥajar, *Tahdhīb*, IV, 356.

al-'Āṣ.<sup>198</sup> The deputation of Hawāzin came to the Messenger of God while he was in al-Jī'rānah and embraced Islam. Then they said, "O Messenger of God, we are of noble origin and we are kinsfolk. The disaster which has befallen us is not hidden from you. Please show us favor, since God has granted you favor." Then a man of Hawāzin from [the clan of] the Banū Sa'd b. Bakr (it was this clan who nursed the Messenger of God) called Zuhayr b. Ṣurad<sup>199</sup> and nicknamed Abū Ṣurad, stood up and said, "O Messenger of God, among the detainees are your paternal and maternal aunts and the ones who suckled you and looked after you. Had we provided al-Hārith b. Abī Shimr<sup>200</sup> or al-Nu'mān b. al-Mundhir<sup>201</sup> with foster-parents<sup>202</sup> and then got into the situation in which you now hold us, we could hope for his favor and kindness. [We know that] you are the best of protectors."<sup>203</sup> Then he recited [the following] verses:

Have mercy on us, Messenger of God, out of generosity,  
for you are the man [from whom] we hope and treasure  
[as our own].

Grant favor to [your] kinfolk<sup>204</sup> whom fate has frustrated,  
and whose fortunes are shattered by the  
vicissitudes of fate.

198. 'Abdallāh b. 'Amr b. al-'Āṣ accepted Islam before his father and died ca. 65/684–85. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, II/2, 125; III/1, 180, 181; V, 132; Ibn Hajar, *Tahdhīb*, V, 337–38; Dhahabi, *Tadhkirah*, I, 41–42; Duri, *Rise*, 78, 93, 98n.

199. He headed the Hawāzin delegation which consisted of fourteen men. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, I/1, 72; II/1, 111.

200. 'Abd al-Salām Hārūn (*Nawādir al-makhtūtāt*, II, 221) suggests the reading "Shamir." Cf. Ibn al-Athir, *Kāmil*, I, 325.

He was a Ghassānid king to whom the Prophet sent a letter inviting him to accept Islam. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, I/2, 17; III/1, 66. About the Prophet's correspondence with foreign rulers, see below Tabarī, I, 1741, n. 677. The Ghassānids, the clients and auxiliaries of Byzantium, were swept away by the Muslim conquest of Syria, see *EI*<sup>2</sup>, s.v. Ghassān; Shahid, "Pre-Islamic Arabia," 22.

201. He was the last king of the house of the Lakhmids, the Arab client-kingdom of the Persians. *EI*<sup>1</sup>, s.v. Nu'mān b. al-Mundhir; *EI*<sup>2</sup>, s.v. Lakhm.

202. Ibn Hishām: Another tradition states: Had we shared our salt with.

203. C: The best of hosts.

204. *Baydah* literally means an egg. It is used metaphorically to signify a woman, likening her thereto in color and in respect of her being protected. Lane, *Lexicon*, s.v. b-y-d.

[1676]

The Messenger of God said, "Are your sons and wives dearer to you or your possessions?" They replied, "O Messenger of God, you have given us the choice between our honor and our possessions, so give us back our wives and sons, for they are dearer to us." He said, "As for what I and the Banū 'Abd al-Muṭṭalib have [of your goods], they are yours. When I have prayed [the noon prayer]<sup>205</sup> with the people, then [stand up and]<sup>206</sup> say, 'We ask the Messenger of God's intercession with the Muslims, and the Muslims' intercession with the Messenger of God for our sons and wives.' I will then give them to you and will request [the Muslims] on your behalf." When the Messenger of God had prayed the noon prayer with the people, they stood up and spoke as he had asked them, and he did what he had promised to do. The *Muhājirūn* said that what was theirs was the Messenger of God's, and the *Anṣār* said the same. Al-Aqra' b. Ḥābis [al-Tamīmī],<sup>207</sup> however, said that as far as he and the Banū Tamīm<sup>208</sup> were concerned, [they would not agree to give up their share]. 'Uyaynah b. Ḥiṣn also refused on behalf of himself and the Banū Fazārah,<sup>209</sup> and so did 'Abbās b. Mirdās [al-Sulāmī]<sup>210</sup> for himself and the Banū Sulaym.<sup>211</sup> The Banū Sulaym, however, said, "[Yes],<sup>212</sup> what is ours is the Messenger of God's." Therefore, 'Abbās said to them that they had rendered him a coward. Then the Messenger of God said, "He who holds to his share of these captives shall have six camels for every captive from the first booty we take." So the Muslims returned the women and children to their kinsfolk.<sup>213</sup>

205. Addition from *Wāqidī*.

206. Addition from *Ibn Ishāq*.

207. Addition from S and *Ibn Sa'd* (*Tabaqāt*, I/2, 36, 40, 85, 145; II/1, 110–11, 116). He was a Bedouin chief.

208. For the Banū Tamīm, see *Kalbi*, *Jamharah*, 59; *Ibn Hazm*, *Jamharah*, 207, 466–67.

209. A branch of Qays. *Kalbi*, *Jamharah*, 92, 130; *Ibn Hazm*, *Jamharah*, 255–59.

210. Addition from S. He was a leader of 'Abs b. Rifa'ah of Sulaym, and was renowned as a warrior and as a poet. He died during the caliphate of 'Uthmān (23–35/644–56). *El*<sup>2</sup>, s.v. 'Abbās b. Mirdās, *Sezgin*, *GAS*, II, 242–43.

211. They are a branch of Qays. *Kalbi*, *Jamharah*, 92, 122; *Ibn Hazm*, *Jamharah*, 261–64.

212. Addition from *Ibn Ishāq*.

213. For further details, see *Wāqidī*, *Maghāzī*, III, 952; *Ibn Sa'd*, *Tabaqāt*, II/1, 111–12.

Ibn Humayd—Salamah—Muhammad b. Ishāq—Abū Wajzah Yazīd b. 'Ubayd al-Sa'dī: From the captives of Ḥunayn, the Messenger of God gave 'Ali b. Abī Ṭālib a slave girl called Ra'yātah bt. Hilāl b. Ḥayyān b. 'Umayrah b. Hilāl b. Nāṣirah b. Quṣayyah b. Naṣr b. Sa'd b. Bakr; and he gave 'Uthmān b. 'Affān<sup>214</sup> a slave girl called Zaynab bt. Ḥayyān b. 'Amr b. Ḥayyān; and he gave 'Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb a girl whom 'Umar gave to [his son]<sup>215</sup> 'Abdallāh.<sup>216</sup>

[1677]

Ibn Humayd—Salamah—Muhammad b. Ishāq—Nāfi<sup>217</sup>—'Abdallāh b. 'Umar: The Messenger of God gave 'Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb a slave girl from the captives of Hawāzin and 'Umar gave her to me. I sent her to my maternal aunts from the Banū Jumāh<sup>218</sup> to prepare [and get her ready]<sup>219</sup> for me until I had circumambulated the Ka'bah and returned to them, wanting to take her when I returned. When I had finished and came out of the mosque, the men were rushing away. When I asked the reason why, they told me that the Messenger of God had given them back their wives and children. I told them that that girl of theirs was with the Banū Jumāh and that they should go and get her, so they went and took her. As for 'Uyaynah b. Ḥiṣn, he had taken an old widow of Hawāzin and said when he took her, "I see that she is an elderly lady of standing in the tribe. Perhaps her ransom might be high." When the Messenger of God returned the captives for six camels each, 'Uyaynah refused to return her. Zuhayr Abū Ṣurad told him to let her go, for her mouth was neither cold nor were her breasts swelling; she could not conceive, her milk was not rich, and her husband would not care. After Zuhayr had told him this, he returned her for six camels.<sup>220</sup> They allege that

<sup>214.</sup> The third caliph whose assassination in 35/656 led to the first civil strife in Islam. See *EP*<sup>1</sup>, s.v. 'Othmān b. 'Affān.

<sup>215.</sup> Addition from Hisch and Ibn Ishāq.

<sup>216.</sup> 'Abdallāh, son of the second caliph, was one of the prominent personalities of the first generation of Muslims and a frequently quoted authority for traditions. He died in 73/693. *EP*<sup>2</sup>, s.v. 'Abd Allāh b. 'Umar. Most of the companions received a slave girl. For details, see Wāqidi, *Maghāzi*, III, 943–44.

<sup>217.</sup> A freedman of 'Abdallāh b. 'Umar. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, IV/1, 109, 121, 123, 125–26, 133.

<sup>218.</sup> They are Jumāh (= Taym) b. 'Amr b. Huṣayṣ b. Ka'b b. 'Adī. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, IV/1, 105; Ibn Hazm, *Jamharah*, 159.

<sup>219.</sup> Addition from Hisch and Ibn Ishāq.

<sup>220.</sup> Wāqidi, *Maghāzi*, III, 952–54, gives a different version and states that in the beginning her son offered to pay a ransom of a hundred camels, but 'Uyaynah,

[1678]

[when] 'Uyaynah met al-Aqra' b. Hābis he complained to him about it, so he said, 'By God, you did not take her as virgin<sup>221</sup> in her prime nor even full-figured in her middle age!'

The Messenger of God asked the Hawāzin delegation about Mālik b. 'Awf and what he did. They told him that he was in al-Tā'if with Thaqif. The Messenger of God told them to inform him that if he came to him embracing Islam, he would restore his family and possessions to him and give him a hundred camels.<sup>222</sup> When Mālik was informed about it, he left al-Tā'if. He was afraid that Thaqif might imprison him if they knew what the Messenger of God had said about him, so he ordered that his mount be prepared for him and that a horse be brought to him in al-Tā'if. He slipped away at night, came [to the place] where his mount was tethered,<sup>223</sup> mounted his horse, and rode off until he overtook the Messenger of God in al-Jī'rānah or Mecca. The Messenger of God returned him his family and property and gave him a hundred camels. He embraced Islam and became a good Muslim. The Messenger of God put him in charge of his kinfolk and the tribes around al-Tā'if who had embraced Islam. [Those tribes were] Thumālah, Salimah, and Fahm.<sup>224</sup> Then he began to fight Thaqif with them; their flocks could not come out [of al-Tā'if] without being raided by him and he tightened the noose around them.<sup>225</sup> Abū Mihjan b. Habib<sup>226</sup> b. 'Amr b. 'Umayr al-Thaqafi said:

Enemies have dreaded our vicinity,  
but now the Banū Salimah are engaged in warring and  
plundering us.

Mālik brought them on us,  
breaking his covenant and solemn word.

wanting a higher price, declined the offer. Finally, he had to release her without any ransom.

221. Hisch. and Ibn Ishāq: Of fair complexion.

222. Mālik's family were brought to Mecca and were lodged with their relatives. His possessions were also kept aside and were not divided with the other booty. Wāqidi, *Maghāzi*, III, 954–55; Lings, *Muhammad*, 310.

223. It was in Dāhnā. Wāqidi, *Maghāzi*, III, 955.

224. All the three were clans of Azd. Kalbi, *Jamharah*, 210, 211; Ibn Hazm, *Jamharah*, 376–79.

225. From those raids, Mālik used to send the *khums* to the Prophet. Once he sent a hundred camels and then a thousand sheep. Wāqidi, *Maghāzi*, III, 955.

226. Wāqidi (*Maghāzi*, III, 930, 932, 935): Hubayb. He was one of the leaders of Thaqif.

They raided us in our settlements,  
though we were men who retaliated.<sup>227</sup>

(This is the end of Abū Wajzah's report. To return to the report of 'Amr b. Shu'ayb:<sup>228</sup> After the Messenger of God had completed the return of the captives of Ḥunayn to their families, he rode away and the people<sup>229</sup> followed him, saying, "O Messenger of God, divide our booty of camels and small cattle among us," until they forced him back against a tree and his mantle was pulled away from him.<sup>230</sup> He said, "O men, give me back<sup>231</sup> my mantle! By God, if I had as many sheep as the trees of the Tihāmah I would have divided them among you. You have not found me miserly or cowardly or a liar." Then he stood near his<sup>232</sup> camel and took a hair from its hump and holding it aloft in his fingers said, "O men, by God, I do not have anything of your booty, even to this hair, except the fifth, and that fifth will be returned to you. So bring back the needle and the thread, for dishonesty will be a shame, a flame,<sup>233</sup> and a disgrace on the Day of Judgment."<sup>234</sup> A man from the *Anṣār* came with a ball of hair thread, and said, "O Messenger of God, I took this ball to make a pad for my sore camel." He replied, "As for my share in that, you can keep it." The man said, "If it has come to that, I don't want it," and he threw it away.<sup>235</sup> (This is the end of 'Amr b. Shu'ayb's report.)

Ibn Humayd—Salamah—Ibn Ishāq—'Abdallāh b. Abī Bakr: The Messenger of God gave [gifts] to those "whose hearts were to be reconciled (*al-mu'allafa qulūbuham*),"<sup>236</sup> who were certain

227. For Mālik's reply, see Wāqidi, *Maghāzi*, III, 956.

228. See Tabarī, above, I, 1675.

229. Wāqidi: On the way the Bedouins kept on asking him.

230. Either it was caught by the tree or was pulled away by the Bedouins.

231. Hisch. and Ibn Ishāq: Bring back my mantle to me. Cf. Tabrīzī, *Mishkāt*, III, 140; *Mishkat* (trans. Robson), II, 1246; Gaufreoy-Demombynes, *Mahomet*, 183.

232. As in C. Text and Ibn Ishāq: Near a camel.

233. It means a flame of hell-fire.

234. Balādhuri, *Ansāb*, I, 366.

235. Ibn Hishām, *Sirāh*, IV, 135, relating another story, states that when the Prophet ordered his men to return whatever they might have taken, even to a needle, 'Aqil b. Abī Tālib returned the needle which he had taken.

236. It is used in the Qur'ān 9:60, where it states: "Charity is [meant] only for the poor, the needy, those working at [collecting and distributing] it, those [possible converts] whose hearts are being reconciled [to yours], for freeing captives and those who are in debt, and in the cause of God, and for the wayfarer, as a

[1680]

men of eminence, in order to conciliate them and to win over their hearts.<sup>237</sup> He gave a hundred camels each to the following:<sup>238</sup> Abū Sufyān b. Ḥarb; his son Mu'āwiyah,<sup>239</sup> Ḥakīm b. Ḥizām,<sup>240</sup> al-Nuḍayr<sup>241</sup> b. al-Ḥārith b. Kaladah b. 'Alqamah, a brother of the Banū 'Abd al-Dār; al-'Alā' b. Ḥārithah al-Thaqafī,<sup>242</sup> an ally of the Banū Zuhrah,<sup>243</sup> al-Ḥārith b. Hishām,<sup>244</sup> Ṣafwān b. Umayyah; Suhayl b. 'Amr,<sup>245</sup> Huwaytib b. 'Abd al-'Uzzā b. Abī Qays,<sup>246</sup> 'Uyaynah b. Ḥiṣn; al-Aqrā' b. Ḥabis al-Tamīmī; Malik b. 'Awf al-Naṣrī. These men [became known as] "Men of the Hundreds." He gave less than a hundred camels to the following men

duty imposed by God." The term is applied here to certain tribal chiefs and influential men whose loyalty the Prophet endeavored to secure by lavish gifts given out of the *khums*. Wāqidī, *Maghāzī*, III, 944, 948; Lane, *Lexicon*, s.v. a-l-f; Lings, *Muhammad*, 308–9.

Watt (*Muhammad at Medina*, 74, 348–52) argues that the above Qur'ānic term cannot be applied to the men who received gifts at al-Jī'rānah. Its application to the leading Meccans, who received fifty or a hundred camels, was probably the work of the "pious opposition" in Medina during the Umayyad period in the early part of the second/eighth century.

237. Hisch. and Ibn Ishaq: And to reconcile through them their people.

238. See the list compiled by Watt, *Muhammad at Medina*, 73–74.

239. He was the first Umayyad caliph. *EI*<sup>1</sup>, s.v. Mu'āwiya. Abū Sufyān's son Yazid also received a hundred camels. In addition to those camels, both the brothers and their father also received forty *ūqiyahs* each of silver. Wāqidī, *Maghāzī*, III, 944–45; Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, II/1, 110. Watt, *Muhammad at Medina*, 75, states that the mention of Abū Sufyān's sons is doubtless a device to conceal the favor shown to him by Muhammad.

240. He was a nephew of the Prophet's wife Khadijah. He asked for more camels and so was given some. Wāqidī, *Maghāzī*, III, 945 (he got three hundred); Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, I/2, 179; II/1, 97, 110; III/1, 27; IV/1, 6, 45 (he got two hundred).

241. Ibn Ishaq: Al-Ḥārith; Ibn Hishām: Nuṣayr, it is possible that his name was al-Ḥārith. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, V, 331–32, 352, gives his name as al-Nuḍayr b. al-Ḥārith B. 'Alqamah. Kaladah b. 'Abd Manāf b. 'Abd al-Dār b. Quṣayy.

242. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, II/1, 110 (he got fifty).

243. A clan of Quraysh. The Prophet's mother was from this clan. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, I/1, 50–51, 82, 137; II/1, 8; Kalbi, *Jamharah*, 4, 20; Ibn Hazm, *Jamharah*, 128, 464.

244. Al-Ḥārith b. Hishām b. al-Mughirah b. 'Abdallāh b. 'Umar b. Makhzūm b. Yaqāzah b. Murrah died in 18/639. Wāqidī, *Maghāzī*, III, 946; Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, II/1, 110; III/1, 167; V, 1.

245. He headed the Meccan delegation which negotiated the treaty of Hudaybiyah. His son 'Abdallāh had accepted Islam and had migrated to Abyssinia. Wāqidī, *Maghāzī*, III, 946; Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, II/1, 42, 70, 71, 88, 98, 110; III/1, 295–96.

246. He was one of the witnesses for the treaty of Hudaybiyah. Wāqidī, *Maghāzī*, III, 946; Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, II/1, 25, 71, 88, 97, 110.

of Quraysh: Makhramah b. Nawfal b. Uhayb al-Zuhri,<sup>247</sup> 'Umayr b. Wahb al-Jumahi,<sup>248</sup> Hisham b. 'Amr,<sup>249</sup> a brother of the Banu 'Amir b. Lu'ayy.<sup>250</sup> The exact number [of camels] given to them is not preserved,<sup>251</sup> but it is known, as alleged, that it was less than a hundred. He gave fifty camels to Sa'id b. Yarbū' b. 'Ankathah b. 'Amir b. Makhzūm<sup>252</sup> and to al-Sahmī.<sup>253</sup> He gave 'Abbās b. Mirdās al-Sulamī some camels,<sup>254</sup> but he was not pleased with them and reproved the Messenger of God saying:

It was pillage that I acquired,  
by charging on my colt in the rugged plain.  
And I kept the people awake lest they should sleep.<sup>255</sup>  
When they slept I kept watch.  
My pillage and that of al-'Ubayd<sup>256</sup>  
is parceled out between 'Uyaynah<sup>257</sup> and al-Aqra'.<sup>258</sup>  
In battle I repel the enemy,  
leaving myself unprotected. Yet I was given nothing  
except a few young camels,  
to the number of their four legs!  
Neither Hiṣn nor Ḥabis  
excel Mirdās<sup>259</sup> in the assembly,  
and I am not inferior to either of them.  
He whom you demean today will not be exalted.

[1681]

247. His mother was a granddaughter of Hāshim. He was a genealogist, and the Prophet gave him fifty camels. Wāqidi, *Maghāzi*, III, 946 (some authorities state that he did not get any); Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, II/1, 110; III/1, 212; VIII, 35, 161–62, 180 (he got fifty).

248. He had fought against the Muslims at Badr. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, II/1, 10 (not mentioned among those who received gifts); Ibn Hazm, *Jamharah*, 161.

249. Wāqidi, *Maghāzi*, III, 946; Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, II/1, 110 (he got fifty).

250. Ibn Hazm, *Jamharah*, 166.

251. Ibn Ishāq: I do not remember [exactly] what was given to them, but I know that it was less than a hundred.

252. Wāqidi, *Maghāzi*, III, 946; Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, II/1, 110.

253. Ibn Hisham: His name was 'Adi b. Qays.

254. Wāqidi (*Maghāzi*, III, 946–47) states that he was given four camels; Ibn Sa'd (*Tabaqāt*, II/1, 110) on the other hand, states that he got forty.

255. And I urged the warriors to journey in the night: Wāqidi (*Maghāzi*, III, 947); he also gives the Prophet's comment on this poem.

256. The name of his horse.

257. He is 'Uyaynah b. Hiṣn. See above.

258. He is al-Aqra' b. Ḥabis. See above.

259. He is the poet's father.

The Messenger of God said [to them], "Go and cut off his tongue from me," so they gave him more [camels] until he was satisfied. This was what the Messenger of God meant by his order "to cut off his tongue."<sup>260</sup>

Ibn Ḥumayd—Salamah—Ibn Ishāq—Muhammad b. Ibrāhīm b. al-Ḥārith:<sup>261</sup> One of the companions of the Messenger of God<sup>262</sup> said to him, "O Messenger of God, you have given 'Uyaynah b. Ḥiṣn and al-Aqrā' b. Ḥābis a hundred camels each and left out Ju'ayl b. Surāqah al-Damrī."<sup>263</sup> He replied, "By Him in whose hand is my soul,<sup>264</sup> Ju'ayl b. Surāqah is better than an entire world full of men like 'Uyaynah b. Ḥiṣn and al-Aqrā' b. Ḥābis; but I have treated them generously so that they may embrace Islam, and I have entrusted Ju'ayl b. Surāqah to his Islam."

Ibn Ḥumayd—Salamah—Muhammad b. Ishāq—Abū 'Ubaydah b. Muhammad<sup>265</sup>—Miqsam Abū al-Qāsim,<sup>266</sup> manumitted slave of 'Abdallāh b. al-Ḥārith b. Nawfal:<sup>267</sup> I went with Talīd b. Kilāb al-Laythī to 'Abdallāh b. 'Amr b. al-'Āṣ while he was circumambulating the Ka'bah with his sandals in his hand, and we asked him whether he was present when the Tamīmī man spoke to the Messenger of God on the day of Hunayn. He replied affirmatively, saying that a man from the Banū Tamīm called Dhū al-Khuwayṣirah came and stood by the Messenger of God as he was giving gifts to the people and said, "O Muḥammad, I have seen what you have done today." The Messenger of God replied, "Well, what did you see?" He said, "I don't think you have been

<sup>260.</sup> Cf. Gaudefroy-Demombynes, *Mahomet*, 184; other sources supporting this interpretation are indicated.

Ibn Ḥishām, *Sīrah*, IV, 137–38, states that the Prophet gave gifts to some people of Quraysh and other tribal chiefs because they had accepted Islam. His list, as well as that of Wāqīdī, *Maghāzī*, III, 945–46, contains some additional names.

<sup>261.</sup> His grandfather was a *Muhājir* and he died ca. 120/738. Ibn Hajar, *Tahdhīb*, IX, 5–7.

<sup>262.</sup> Wāqīdī, Ibn Sa'd (*Tabaqāt*, IV/1, 180–81); Sa'd b. Abi Waqqāṣ.

<sup>263.</sup> He was one of the early converts and a destitute one of the *Muhājirūn*. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, IV/1, 180–81.

<sup>264.</sup> Ibn Ishāq: Muhammad's soul.

<sup>265.</sup> Abū 'Ubaydah b. Muhammad b. Ammār b. Yāsir. Ibn Hajar, *Tahdhīb*, XII, 160–61.

<sup>266.</sup> He died in 101/719–20. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, V, 217, 346–47; Ibn Hajar, *Tahdhīb*, X, 288–89.

<sup>267.</sup> 'Abdallāh b. al-Ḥārith b. Nawfal b. al-Ḥārith b. 'Abd al-Muṭṭalib died in 79/698–99 or 84/703. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, IV/1, 30; V, 217, 346–47; Ibn Hajar, *Tahdhīb*, V, 180–81.

fair." The Messenger of God became angry and said, "Woe to you! If justice is not to be found with me, then with whom is it to be found?" 'Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb asked the Messenger of God to allow him to kill the man, but he said, "No, leave him, for he will have a following that will penetrate so deeply into religion that they will come out of it as an arrow comes out of the target; one looks at the head and there is nothing on it; then one looks at its butt end and there is nothing on it; [then one looks at its notch and there is nothing on it]."<sup>268</sup> It passed through [the target] before flesh and blood could stick to it."

Ibn Humayd—Salamah—Ibn Ishāq—Abū Ja'far Muḥammad b. 'Ali b. al-Husayn b. 'Alī: A similar account is reported, and the man's name is Dhū al-Khuwayṣirah al-Tamīmī.<sup>269</sup>

Abū Ja'far [al-Ṭabarī]: It is reported on the authority of Abū Sa'īd al-Khudrī<sup>270</sup> that the man who uttered the above words was speaking to the Messenger of God about the booty which 'Alī had sent to the Messenger of God from Yemen, which he distributed among a group consisting of 'Uyaynah b. Ḥiṣn, al-Aqra' [b. Ḥabis], and Zayd al-Khayl.<sup>271</sup> Abū Sa'īd al-Khudrī then affirmed that the man was Dhū al-Khuwayṣirah.<sup>272</sup>

[1683]

Ibn Humayd—Salamah—Muḥammad b. Ishāq—'Abdallāh b. Abī Bakr: A companion of the Prophet<sup>273</sup> who was present at Ḥunayn with him said, "By God, I was wearing rough sandals and riding my mount by the side of the Messenger of God. When my camel crowded his, the toe of my sandal hit the Messenger of God's leg and hurt him. He hit my foot with the whip and said, 'You have hurt me, get behind me!' and so I went behind. The following day, the Messenger of God was looking for me, and I thought it was because I had hurt his leg the day before, so I went

<sup>268.</sup> Addition from Hisch., Ibn Ishāq and Wāqīdī (*Maghāzī*, III, 948–49; he gives a slightly different version).

<sup>269.</sup> Ibn Ishāq adds another chain of authorities to the same account.

<sup>270.</sup> Abū Sa'īd al-Khudrī al-Anṣārī used to give legal opinions in Medina and died in ca. 63/682–83. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, II/2, 124, 127; V, 132; Ibn Ḥajar, *Isābah*, III, 78–80.

<sup>271.</sup> Zayd al-Khayl b. Muhalhil, known as Zayd al-Khayr, was the head of the Tayyi'i delegation. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, I/2, 59–60. See Ṭabarī, below, I, 1747–48.

<sup>272.</sup> For a different version, see Ibn Shabbah, *Ta'rīkh*, II, 540–41.

<sup>273.</sup> Abū Ruhm al-Ghifārī: Wāqīdī, *Maghāzī*, III, 939–40; he also gives additional stories. This incident happened while the Prophet was returning from al-Tā'if to al-Jīrānah. Cf. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, IV/1, 179–80.

expecting [a reprimand]; but he said, 'Yesterday you hit my leg and hurt me, and I hit your foot with the whip. Because of this I have called you to recompense you for it,' and he gave me eighty female sheep for the one blow he struck me."

Ibn Humayd—Salamah—Ibn Ishāq—'Āsim b. 'Umar b. Qatādah—Mahmūd b. Labīd<sup>274</sup>—Abū Sa'id al-Khudri: When the Messenger of God had distributed those gifts among Quraysh and the Bedouin tribes, and the *Anṣār* got nothing from it, this group of *Anṣār* took [the matter] to their hearts and talked volubly about it until one of them said, "By God, the Messenger of God has joined his kinsfolk!"<sup>275</sup> Sa'd b. 'Ubādah<sup>276</sup> went to the Messenger of God and said, "O Messenger of God, this group of *Anṣār* have a grudge against you for what you did with the booty and how you divided it among your own people, and by giving great gifts to the Bedouin tribes while this group of *Anṣār* got nothing." He said, "Where do you stand in this matter, O Sa'd?" He said, "I stand with my kinsfolk." The Prophet said, "Then gather your people in [this]<sup>277</sup> enclosure." Sa'd went out and did so, and when a number of the *Muhājirūn* came, he allowed some to come in and sent back the others. When all of them had assembled, he went and informed the Prophet, who came to them. After due praise and exaltation of God, he addressed them saying: "O community of *Anṣār*, what is this talk I hear about you? [What is] the grudge you have harbored in your hearts [against me]? Did I not come to you when you were erring and God guided you; [were you not] needy and then made rich by God; [were you not] enemies and [did not] God reconcile your hearts?" They answered, "Yes

274. Mahmūd b. Labīd al-Awsī al-Anṣārī died ca. 96/714–15 in Medina. Ibn Hajar, *Tahdhīb*, X, 65–66.

275. Wāqīdī (*Maghāzī*, III, 956 ff.) adds: At the time of war we are his companions, but at the time of distribution [of spoils] his clan and people. We would like to know whether this is from God or his personal view. If it is from God, we will be patient, but if it is his personal view, then we will censure him. When this news reached the Messenger of God, he became very angry.

276. Sa'd b. 'Ubādah al-Khazrajī, who was present at the second pledge of al-'Aqabah, was a champion of Islam and several times had acted as standard-bearer in the expeditions. After the death of 'Abdallāh b. Ubayy, he became undisputed head of the Khazraj and was proposed by the *Anṣār* as their head after the Prophet's death. When Abū Bakr was elected caliph, he refused to give him his oath of allegiance and left Medina for Hawrān, where he died ca. 15/636–37. Balādhurī, *Ansāb*, I, 250; *Et<sup>l</sup>*, s.v. Sa'd b. 'Ubāda. See Tabarī, below, I, 1817f.

277. Addition from: Hisch., Ibn Ishāq, and Wāqīdī.

indeed, God and His Messenger are gracious and kind." He said, "Why do you not answer me [directly], O *Anṣār*?" They said, "What shall we answer you, O Messenger of God? Kindness and graciousness belong to God and His Messenger." He said: "Now then, by God, had you wished you could have said—and you would have spoken the truth and have been accepted as truthful—'You came to us [when your message] was rejected [by the Quraysh] and we believed in you; [you were] forsaken and we assisted you; [you were] evicted and we sheltered you; [you were] needy and we comforted you.' O *Anṣār*, you harbor a grudge [against me] because of the worldly things by which I conciliate a people so that they may embrace Islam, while I entrust you to your Islam. Are you not pleased, O *Anṣār*, that people should take away sheep and camels while you go back to your homes with the Messenger of God?<sup>278</sup> By Him in whose hand is the soul of Muhammad, were it not for the migration (*hijrah*),<sup>279</sup> I would have been one of the *Anṣār* myself. If all the people went one way and the *Anṣār* another, I would take the way of the *Anṣār*.<sup>280</sup> O God, have mercy on the *Anṣār*, their sons and their sons' sons!" The people wept until the tears ran down their beards and said that they were pleased with the Messenger of God as their lot and good fortune. Then the Messenger of God departed and they dispersed.<sup>281</sup>

[1685]

Ibn Humayd—Salamah—Ibn Ishāq: Then the Messenger of God left al-Jī'rānah to make a lesser pilgrimage,<sup>282</sup> and ordered

278. Some of the *Anṣār* said, "God forgive the Messenger of God! He is giving to Quraysh and leaving us out, yet our swords are dripping with their blood." Tabrizi, *Mishkāt*, III, 274; *Mishkat* (trans. Robson), II, 1367–68; transmitted by both Bukhāri and Muslim.

279. The migration of the Prophet from Mecca to Medina in September 622. *EI2*, s.v. *Hidjra*.

280. Tabrizi, *Mishkāt*, III, 275; *Mishkat* (trans. Robson), II, 1368; transmitted by Bukhāri and Muslim.

281. Lings, *Muhammad*, 311–12. Ibn Hishām (*Sīrah*, IV, 140–41) has reproduced a poem of Hassān b. Thābit reproaching the Prophet for giving away those gifts to the Quraysh while the *Anṣār* got nothing. Contrary to Ibn Hishām's view, some authorities state that the poem in question was composed on the occasion of the conquest of Mecca, expressing the *Anṣār*'s displeasure because the Prophet gave precedence to the Banū Sulaym and to Khālid b. al-Walid over the *Anṣār* when the Muslims entered Mecca. See *Diwān* of Hassān, I, 265–66.

282. He left al-Jī'rānah on Tuesday evening, the eighteenth of Dhū al-Qa'dah for the lesser pilgrimage, returned to al-Jī'rānah and then left on Thursday for Medina. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, II/1, III.

that the rest of the booty be held back in Majannah,<sup>283</sup> which is [located] near Marr al-Zahrān.<sup>284</sup> When the Messenger of God completed the lesser pilgrimage and returned to Medina, he appointed 'Attāb b. Asīd in charge of Mecca.<sup>285</sup> He also left behind with him Mu'ādh b. Jabal<sup>286</sup> to instruct the people in religion and to teach them the Qur'ān. He was followed by the remainder of the booty. The Messenger of God's lesser pilgrimage was in Dhū al-Qa'dah, and he arrived in Medina in the same month or in Dhū al-Hijjah.<sup>287</sup> The people made the pilgrimage that year as the Arabs used to do. 'Attāb b. Asīd made the pilgrimage with the Muslims that [same] year, which was 8/630. The people of al-Tā'if persisted in their polytheism and obstinacy within their city from the time the Messenger of God departed from it in Dhū al-Qa'dah [of the year 8/March 630] until the month of Ramaḍān of the following year/January 631.

Al-Wāqīdī states that when the Messenger of God distributed the spoils among the Muslims in al-Jī'rānah, every man got four camels and forty sheep, while each horseman received an additional share for his horse.<sup>288</sup> The Messenger of God arrived in Medina from this expedition toward the end of Dhū al-Hijjah/April 630.

[1686] In this year, the Messenger of God sent 'Amr b. al-'Āṣ<sup>289</sup> to collect alms (*ṣadaqah*)<sup>290</sup> from Jayfar and 'Amr,<sup>291</sup> the two clans

283. It was one of the marketplaces in pre-Islamic Arabia near a mountain, called al-Asghar, about 24 km from Mecca. Hamdānī, *Sīfat*, I, 180; Yāqūt, *Mu'jam*, V, 58–59.

284. A town on the route between Medina and Mecca about thirteen miles from the latter. It is now called Wādi Fātimah. Ḥarbi, *Maṇasik*, 464–65; Al-Wohāibī, *Hijaz*, 151–56, 337ff.

285. Ibn Isḥāq, *Sīrah*, IV, 143, states that his allowance was a dirham a day.

286. Wāqīdī adds: And Abū Mūsā al-Ash'arī.

287. Ibn Hishām comments that the Prophet arrived in Medina on the twenty-fourth of Dhū al-Qa'dah.

288. The horseman received 12 camels and 120 sheep. Wāqīdī, *Maghāzī*, III, 949.

289. He was known as the most wily politician of his time, but his real fame was due to his conquest of Egypt. He died ca. 42/663. *EI*<sup>2</sup>, s.v. 'Amr b. al-'Āṣ.

290. *Ṣadaqah* is used in two different senses: (1) as synonymous with *zakāt*, which is obligatory and its amount is fixed (it is used in this sense in the Qur'ān 9:58, 103); and (2) in the sense of voluntary almsgiving. Here it is used in the former sense. *EI*<sup>1</sup>, s.v. *Ṣadaka*; Lane, *Lexicon*, s.v. *ṣ-d-q*. See Watt's comments on *zakāt* and *ṣadaqah* in his *Muhammad at Medina*, 369–72.

291. Ibn Sa'd (*Tabaqāt*, I/2, 18); Ḥamidullāh (*Majmū'ah*, 128): 'Abd; Ibn Hazm (*Jamharah*, 384): 'Abbād. Both the brothers were heads of the ruling group, the Julandā, in 'Umān and had accepted Islam.

of al-Julandā from the Azd.<sup>292</sup> They allowed 'Amr b. al-'Āṣ to collect the alms [without interference], and so he collected it [only] from the rich and returned [what he took] to the poor. He collected the poll tax (*jizyah*)<sup>293</sup> from the Zoroastrians (*al-Majūs*)<sup>294</sup> who were indigenous to that region, while the Arabs lived in the surrounding countryside.

In the same year, the Messenger of God married al-Kilābiyyah who was called Fātimah bt. al-Ḍahhāk b. Sufyān.<sup>295</sup> When she was given the choice [to select between this world and the hereafter] she preferred this world. It is said that she asked the Messenger of God's protection, so he left her. Ibrāhim b. Wathīmah b. Mālik b. Aws b. al-Hadathān<sup>296</sup> narrated on the authority of Abū Wajzah al-Sa'dī that the Prophet married her in Dhū al-Qa'dah.

In this year, in the month of Dhū al-Hijjah, Māriyah<sup>297</sup> gave birth to Ibrāhim, and the Messenger of God entrusted him to Umm Burdah bt. al-Mundhir b. Zayd b. Labīd b. Khidāsh b. 'Āmir b. Ghanm b. 'Adī b. al-Najjār (her husband was al-Barā' b. Aws b. Khālid b. al-Ja'd b. 'Awf b. Mabdūl b. 'Amr b. Ghanm b. 'Adī b. al-Najjār) for nursing.<sup>298</sup> Māriyah had received Salmā, freed bond-maid of the Messenger of God, who went to Abū Rāfi'<sup>299</sup> and informed him that Māriyah had given birth to a son. Abū Rāfi' then announced the good news to the Messenger of God, who gave him a gift of a slave. When Māriyah gave birth to a son, the Messenger of God's wives became very jealous.

(*Jamharah*, 384): 'Abbād. Both the brothers were heads of the ruling group, the Julandā, in 'Umān and had accepted Islam.

292. An ancient Arab tribe in the highlands of 'Asir and in 'Umān. *EP*<sup>2</sup>, s.v. Azd.

293. A tax levied on the *ahl al-dhimmah* [i.e., the possessors of a written scripture] in an Islamic state.

294. *EP*<sup>2</sup>, s.v. Madjūs.

295. See below, n. 903 to *Tabarī*, I, 1774.

296. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, VIII, 101-2.

297. She was a Coptic maiden sent by the Muqawqis to Muhammad in 6/627-28 as a gift of honor, and the Prophet made her his concubine. *EP*<sup>2</sup>, s.v. Māriya. See *Tabarī*, below, I, 1775, 1777.

298. For details see Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, I/1, 86-93; Lings, *Muhammad*, 315; and below, n. 910 to *Tabarī*, I, 1775.

299. He was Salmā's husband. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, I/1, 86-93.

[1687]

## The Events of the Year

9

(APRIL 20, 630—APRIL 8, 631)

In this year, the deputation of the Banū Asad<sup>300</sup> reportedly came to the Messenger of God. They said, "O Messenger of God, we came [to you] before you could send a messenger to us." Concerning their statement, God revealed: "They bestow a favor upon you [Muhammad] that they have embraced Islam. Say: 'Do not count your embracing Islam as a favor to me, nay but rather God confers a favor upon you, in that He has guided you to the faith'."<sup>301</sup>

In this year, the deputation of Bali<sup>302</sup> came in the month of Rabi' I [June 18–July 17, 630] and stayed with Ruwayfi' b. Thābit al-Balawī.<sup>303</sup>

---

300. A North Arabian tribe which occupied a spacious region extending right across Arabia from Medina to the Euphrates. *EP*, s.v. Asad.

301. Qur'an 49: 17. It refers to the Bedouins who were offering their submission more from self-interest than from sincere belief in Islam. Some commentators state that those verses were revealed about the Bedouins of Banū Asad. Wahidi, *Aṣbāb*, 281; Tūsi, *Tafsīr*, IX, 355; Nöldeke-Schwally, *Geschichte*, I, 223; Blachère, *Coran*, 550.

302. A branch of Qudā'ah. Kalbī, *Jamharah*, 329; Ibn Ḥazm, *Jamharah*, 440–42; Sam'āni, *Ansāb*, II, 323–25; Ibn al-Athīr, *Kāmil*, II, 287.

303. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, II/1, 83; III/2, 35; IV/2, 73; Ibn al-Athīr, *Kāmil*, II, 287.

In this year, the delegation of the Dāriyyūn from Lakhm<sup>304</sup> came. There were ten of them.

According to al-Wāqidi, in this year, 'Urwah b. Mas'ud al-Thaqafi came to the Messenger of God and accepted Islam.<sup>305</sup> I have received the following account about 'Urwah on the authority of Ibn Ḥumayd—Salamah—Muhammad b. Ishāq: When the Messenger of God departed from the people of al-Tā'if, 'Urwah b. Mas'ud b. Mu'attib followed in his wake until he caught up with the Prophet before he reached Medina. 'Urwah then embraced Islam and asked the Prophet that he might return to his people as a Muslim. The Messenger of God said, so his<sup>306</sup> folk report, "They will fight you,"<sup>307</sup> for the Messenger of God knew the proud spirit of resistance that was in them. 'Urwah responded: "O Messenger of God, I am dearer to them than their firstborn."<sup>308</sup> He was indeed loved and obeyed by his people, so he went out summoning his people to Islam and hoping that they would not oppose him because of his position among them. When he appeared above them from his upper balcony, after having already summoned them to Islam and announcing to them his [new] religion, they shot arrows at him from every direction. One arrow struck [Urwah] and killed him. The Banū Mālik allege that one of their men, whose name was Aws b. 'Awf,<sup>309</sup> brother of the Banū Sālim b. Mālik, killed him. But the Ahlāf allege that one of their men called Wahb b. Jābir from the Banū 'Attāb b. Mālik killed him. 'Urwah was asked, "What do you think about your blood [being shed]?"<sup>310</sup> He replied: "[It is] an honor which God has

[1688]

304. A clan of Lakhm. Ibn Hazm, *Jamharah*, 442; *El*<sup>2</sup>, s.v. Lakhm. For the delegates' names, see Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, I/2, 75; Ibn al-Athir, *Kāmil*, II, 287.

305. He returned from Jurash after the Prophet had left al-Tā'if [see Tabari, above, I, 1669]. It is said that he was inspired by God to embrace Islam, so he went to Medina and accepted Islam. Wāqidi, *Maghāzi*, III, 96off., narrates his story with graphic details. See also Lings, *Muhammad*, 313.

306. As in Hisch. and Ibn Ishāq. Text: Their folk.

307. Ibn Shabbah (*Ta'rikh*, II, 470): I am afraid that they might kill you.

308. Hisch., Ibn Hischām: Eyesight; Wāqidi, Ibn Sa'd (*Tabaqāt*, I/2, 52): Their firstborn children. Ibn Shabbah (in another version): If they find me asleep, they will not awaken me [i.e., disturb me].

309. Later on he came to the Prophet with the Thaqif delegation and accepted Islam. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, V, 373–74.

310. It means: Should it be avenged? 'Urwah belonged to the Ahlāf group (see Tabari, above, I, 1655, n. 29), and his clan took up arms to avenge his blood, but he instructed them not to fight and gave up his blood for the sake of God. See Wāqidi for details.

bestowed on me and [an act of] martyrdom to which God has led me. I am only like the martyrs killed with the Messenger of God before he departed from you; so bury me with them." They did so and allege that the Messenger of God said about him that he was among his [own] folk like Yā Sin<sup>311</sup> was among his.<sup>312</sup>

In this year, the deputation of the people of al-Tā'if came to the Messenger of God. It is said that they came in the month of Ramadān [December 12, 630–January 11, 631].

Ibn Ḥumayd—Salamah—Muhammad b. Ishāq: After killing 'Urwah, Thaqif held out a few months. Then they deliberated among themselves [and determined]<sup>313</sup> that they did not have the strength to fight the Arabs surrounding them who had given their oath of allegiance [to the Messenger of God], and who had accepted Islam.

Ibn Ḥumayd—Salamah—Muhammad b. Ishāq—Ya'qūb b. 'Utbah b. al-Mughīrah b. al-Akhnas b. Sharīq al-Thaqafī: 'Amr b. Umayyah, brother<sup>314</sup> of the Banū 'Ilāj, had shunned 'Abd Yālīl b. 'Amr,<sup>315</sup> and there was ill feeling between the two. 'Amr b. Umayyah was one of the most cunning of the Arabs. He ambled over to 'Abd Yālīl b. 'Amr and entered his dwelling place. He then sent word to him that 'Amr b. Umayyah said, "Come out to me." 'Abd Yālīl said to the messenger: "Woe to you! Has 'Amr sent you?" The messenger replied: "Indeed, he is standing here in your dwelling place." 'Abd Yālīl then retorted, "I would not have thought that of 'Amr. He knows how to protect himself better than that." [So he came out],<sup>316</sup> and when he saw 'Amr he welcomed him. 'Amr said: "We have been dealt a situation from which there is no escape (*hijrah*)."<sup>317</sup> Indeed, you have seen what

<sup>311</sup>. These are the mysterious letters at the beginning of the Qur'ān *sūrah* 36, generally construed as a title of the Prophet. Qurtubī, *Tafsīr*, XV, 4–5; Blachère, *Coran*, 469 (abbreviation of *yā insān*, i.e., O men!). See also above (Tabarī, I, 1664, n. 107).

<sup>312</sup>. Ibn Shabbah adds: Who called his people to God and they killed him.

<sup>313</sup>. Addition from Hisch. and Ibn Ishāq.

<sup>314</sup>. Wāqidī: One of.

<sup>315</sup>. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, V, 371. Yālīl was a name of a divinity, cf. Fahd, *Panthéon*, 197–99.

<sup>316</sup>. Addition from Hisch., Ibn Ishāq, and Wāqidī.

<sup>317</sup>. The author makes a pun on this word as it has different meanings. The common meaning is attached to the Prophet's emigration from Mecca to Medina, but it is not intended here.

has transpired as regards this man [i.e., the Messenger of God]. All the Arabs have embraced Islam and you do not have the strength to make war against them, so consider your situation." Thereupon, Thaqif deliberated among themselves, some saying to one another, "Don't you see that your herd is not safe, and none of you can dare go out without being cut off [from the town]." They deliberated [further] and decided to send a man to the Prophet as they had [previously] sent 'Urwah. They spoke to 'Abd Yālīl b. 'Amr b. 'Umayr, who was of the same age as 'Urwah b. Mas'ūd, but he declined to undertake the task. Fearing that he would be dealt with as was 'Urwah on his return, he said, "I am not doing anything until you send someone with me." Thus they agreed to send two men from the Ahlāf and three from the Banū Mālik. There were six [all told]: 'Uthmān b. Abī al-'Āṣ b. Bishr b. 'Abd Duhmān, brother of the Banū Yasār; Aws b. 'Awf, brother of the Banū Sālim [b. 'Awf];<sup>318</sup> Numayr b. Kharashah b. Rabī'ah, brother of Bal-hārīth;<sup>319</sup> and from the Ahlāf, al-Hakam b. 'Amr b. Wahb b. Mu'attib and Shurahbil b. Ghaylān b. Salimah b. Mu'attib.<sup>320</sup> 'Abd Yālīl then departed with them as leader of his folk and in charge of their affairs. He took them [i.e., the other five] with him because he feared he would be dealt with as was 'Urwah b. Mas'ūd, and he hoped that each man among them would keep his [own] clan occupied on their return to al-Ta'if.

When they drew close to Medina and dismounted at Qanāt,<sup>321</sup> they met al-Mughirah b. Shu'bāh taking his turn at pasturing the mounts of the Messenger of God's companions (the task of pasturing the mounts was taken up in turn by each of the companions). When he saw them, al-Mughirah left the mounts [with the Thaqafis]<sup>322</sup> and dashed off to give the Messenger of God the good tidings that they were coming to him. Abū Bakr al-Ṣiddīq met him<sup>323</sup> before he reached the Messenger of God, so he informed

[1690]

<sup>318.</sup> Addition from Ibn Ishāq.

<sup>319.</sup> Ibn Ishāq: Banū al-Hārīth.

<sup>320.</sup> There were additional people in the delegation, see Wāqidi, *Magħażi*, III, 963; Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, I/2, 53; Ibn al-Athīr, *Kāmil*, II, 283–84.

<sup>321.</sup> One of the three valleys of Medina. Ḥarbi, *Manāsik*, 411; Bakrī, *Mu'jam*, III, 1096; Yāqūt, *Mu'jam*, IV, 401.

<sup>322.</sup> Addition from Hisch., Ibn Ishāq, and Wāqidi.

<sup>323.</sup> Wāqidi adds: At the door of the mosque.

Abū Bakr that a group of riders from Thaqīf had arrived with the intention of giving the oath of allegiance and embracing Islam, so that conditions might be set down for them and put in writing [in the presence of] the Messenger of God, guaranteeing [safety] to their folk, their land, and their possessions. Abū Bakr begged al-Mughīrah: "I swear by God on your behalf, don't beat me to the Messenger of God, so that I might be the first to break this news to him." Al-Mughirah complied with this request, so Abū Bakr went to the Messenger of God and informed him that a group of riders from Thaqīf had arrived. Following that, al-Mughīrah<sup>324</sup> went back to his [Thaqafī] companions and brought the mounts back with them. He taught them how to greet the Messenger of God, as they were only used to the pagan salutation. [Narrators] allege that when they came to the Messenger of God, he erected a dome-shaped tent for them in the vicinity of his mosque (*fi nāhiyat masjidīhi*).<sup>325</sup> Khālid b. Sa'īd b. al-'Āṣ<sup>326</sup> acted as intermediary between them and the Messenger of God until their treaty was written, and it was Khālid who drafted the treaty with his own hand. They would not eat the food sent to them from the Messenger of God until Khālid ate of it. [This behavior continued] until they embraced Islam, rendered their oath of allegiance and completed the drafting of their treaty.

Among the things which they had requested of the Messenger of God was that he should leave *al-Tāghīyyah* [i.e., the idol *al-Lāt*]<sup>327</sup> alone, and not demolish it for three years. The Messenger of God refused that request of theirs, but they continued to ask

324. Al-Mughirah went to the Prophet after Abū Bakr. Wāqidī, *Maghāzī*, III, 964.

325. That is, because the Prophet spent most of his time in the courtyard of his mosque; it was here that he received delegates, conducted business, and addressed his followers. The mosque was, in fact, the center for the secular as well as the religious life of the community.

Wāqidī, *Maghāzī*, III, 965, states that the delegates stayed with al-Mughirah and three tents were erected in the mosque so that they would sit there and observe the Muslims while praying and reciting the Qur'ān. Cf. Ibn Shabbah, *Ta'rīkh*, II, 502.

326. He was a rich member of the Umayyad clan. According to some traditions, he was the fourth convert to Islam and served the Prophet as one of his scribes. He refused to recognize Abū Bakr and offered his support to 'Ali. He died in 13/635. *EP*, s.v. Khālid b. Sa'īd; Jafri, *Origins*, 53.

327. The terms *al-Tāghīyyah* (literally means insolent or tyrannical), *al-Tāghūt*, and *Rabbah* (sovereign) were used for the idol *al-Lāt*. It was an old Arabian god-

him to do it for a year or two, and he kept on refusing.<sup>328</sup> Finally, they asked if he could desist for a single month after their return [home], but the Messenger of God declined to allow the idol to remain for any specified time. [By persisting in their request] and showing their desire to leave [the idol alone], they were seeking to be safe from the fools among them [as well as from] their women and children. They did not wish to alarm their fellow tribesmen by destroying the idol until Islam had entered their [hearts]. The Messenger of God not only refused that request but sent Abū Sufyān b. Ḥarb and al-Mughirah b. Shu'bah, who subsequently demolished it. In addition to leaving *al-Ṭāqhiyyah*, they had asked that they be exempted from prayer and from smashing their idols with their own hands. The Messenger of God responded, "As for smashing your idols with your own hands, we shall let you off, but as for prayer there is no good in a religion which has no prayer." They said. "O Muḥammad, we will give in to you on this issue even though it is demeaning."<sup>329</sup>

When they had embraced Islam and the Messenger of God had drawn up their treaty for them, he appointed 'Uthmān b. Abī al-'Āṣ<sup>330</sup> to be their leader, although he was the youngest among them. This was because he was the most zealous in his desire to study Islam and to learn the Qur'ān. Abū Bakr told the Messenger of God, "O Messenger of God, indeed I have seen this youth to be the most zealous among them in his desire to study Islam and to learn the Qur'ān."<sup>331</sup>

Ibn Ḥumayd—Salamah—Ibn Ishāq—Ya'qūb b. 'Utbah: When they left the Messenger of God and turned toward their home-

dess whose sanctuary was near al-Tā'if, where a white stone, hung with all sorts of decorations, was her symbol. *EP*, s.v. *al-Lāt*; Lane, *Lexicon*, s.v. *t-gh-a*; Wellhausen, *Skizzen*, III, 25–29; Ryckmans, *Religions*, 15; Andrae, *Mohammed*, 17; Fahd, *Panthéon*, 111–20.

328. As in Hirsch. and Ibn Ishāq. Text: And he refused.

329. The delegation asked that they be exempted from several other things, such as the interdictions on adultery, *ribā* (usury), and wine, which they considered troublesome obligations. Cf. Ibn Shabbah, *Ta'rikh*, II, 502–3; Buhl, *Leben*, 332; Rodinson, *Mahomet*, 306.

330. According to Wāqidi (*Maghāzī*, III, 966), Ibn Sa'd (*Tabaqāt*, VII/1, 26–27), and Ibn Shabbah, he had secretly embraced Islam soon after his arrival in Medina, and used to visit the Prophet, Abū Bakr and Ubayy b. Ka'b to learn the Qur'ān.

331. After accepting Islam, they fasted the remainder of Ramaḍān. Ibn Hishām, *Sīrah*, IV, 185–86; Wāqidi, *Maghāzī*, III, 968.

[1692]

land, the Messenger of God dispatched Abū Sufyān b. Ḥarb and al-Mughīrah b. Shu'bah to demolish *al-Tā'if*. The two traveled with the deputation until they approached al-Tā'if, at which point al-Mughīrah asked Abū Sufyān to precede him. Abū Sufyān refused, saying, "Go to your kinsfolk yourself,"<sup>332</sup> and stayed at his estate in Dhū al-Harm.<sup>333</sup> When al-Mughīrah b. Shu'bah entered [al-Tā'if], he mounted the idol and struck it with a pickaxe while his folk, the Banū Mu'attib, stood by him, fearing that he might be shot at or struck as 'Urwah had been. The women of Thaqif came out with their heads uncovered and said, lamenting the [loss of the] idol [i.e., the goddess]:

Oh, shed tears for the protector!<sup>334</sup>  
 Ignoble ones have forsaken her,  
 those not competent in wielding swords.

He said: While al-Mughīrah was striking the idol with the axe, Abū Sufyān was saying, "Alas for you, alas!"<sup>335</sup> When al-Mughīrah had demolished it, he took its treasure and ornamentation and sent [it] to Abū Sufyān. Its ornamentation was made up of various items, while its treasure consisted of gold and onyx. The Messenger of God had previously instructed Abū Sufyān to pay the debts of 'Urwah and al-Aswad, the sons of Mas'ūd,<sup>336</sup> from the property of *al-Lāt*, so he discharged their debts.<sup>337</sup>

In this year, the Messenger of God carried out the military expedition to Tabūk.<sup>338</sup>

332. That is, because al-Mughīrah was a Thaqafī from al-Tā'if.

333. Bakrī, *Mu'jam*, IV, 1352. It is also said that it was 'Abd al-Muṭalib's estate in al-Tā'if. Yaqūt, *Mu'jam*, V, 403.

334. It is in rhymed prose. For Ibn Hishām's comment, see *Sīrah*, IV, 186.

335. As in C, Cairo, and Ibn Ishāq. Text: Alas for you, welcome (*ahlan*) to you!

336. After the death of 'Urwah, his son Abū Malīḥ and his cousin Qārib b. al-Aswad left al-Tā'if, went to Medina, and embraced Islam. Before the Thaqif delegation left Medina, they had requested the Prophet that the debts of their fathers be paid from the treasure of *al-Lāt*. Ibn Hishām, *Sīrah*, IV, 186–87; Wāqidi, *Maghāzi*, III, 962, 971; Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, V, 370.

337. On their return home, the delegation was received with hostility, and it took two or three days before the people of al-Tā'if abandoned the idea of waging war against the Prophet. Wāqidi, *Maghāzi*, III, 969–71. For the text of the treaty, see Ibn Hishām, *Sīrah*, IV, 187; Wāqidi, *Maghāzi*, III, 973. Rodinson, *Mahomet*, 306, states that the actual text of this treaty is lost.

338. A town on the northern frontier of Arabia beyond which Byzantine territory began. It was a way station on the pilgrim route between Damascus and Medi-

*An Account of the Military Expedition to Tabük*

Ibn Ḥumayd—Salamah—Muhammad b. Ishāq: After his return from al-Ṭā'if, the Messenger of God stayed in Medina from Dhū al-Hijjah to Rajab [May 19–October 14, 631], then he ordered the people to prepare for a military expedition against the Byzantines.<sup>339</sup>

Ibn Ḥumayd—Salamah—Muhammad b. Ishāq on the authority of al-Zuhri, Yazid b. Rūmān,<sup>340</sup> Abdallāh b. Abī Bakr and 'Āsim b. 'Umar b. Qatādah and others: Everyone transmitted what he had learned about the expedition to Tabük and some people reported what others did not. All the reports agree, however, that the Messenger of God ordered his companions to prepare for the military expedition against the Byzantines.<sup>341</sup> This was a season when people were hard pressed; the heat was oppressive and the country was passing through a dry spell. At the time, fruit was ripe and shade was dearly sought. People love to stay where they have shade and fruit [trees], and find leaving them distasteful. The Messenger of God would seldom go out on a military expedition without alluding to a destination and announcing [publicly] that he meant [a place]<sup>342</sup> other than that intended. The Tabük expedition was the exception, in that he explained [the particulars of the expedition openly] to the people. This was because of the long distance, the difficult season, and the enemy's numerical superiority. He wanted the people to be fully prepared, so he ordered

[1693]

na. For its topography, pictures, and historical geography, see Musil, *Hegāz*, 161–70, 318–21; Philby, *Midian*, 113ff.; Jāsir, *Shimāl*, 423ff., 488–90; Al-Wohabi, *Hijaz*, 272–76; El<sup>1</sup>, s.v. Tabük,

339. It was the largest and the best-equipped army the Prophet had ever led. Wāqidi (*Maghāzi*, III, 1002, 1041) and Baladhuri (*Ansāb*, I, 368) state that thirty thousand people took part in it. Lings, *Muhammad*, 317–19, gives a vivid description. For the Prophet's northern policy, see Watt, *Muhammad at Medina*, 105–17; Robinson, *Mahomet*, 309ff.

340. Yazid b. Rūmān al-Asādī died in 130/747–48. Ibn Ḥajar, *Tahdhīb*, XI, 325.

341. Wāqidi, *Maghāzi*, III, 989–92, 1019, states that the Prophet had received the news that the Byzantines were gathering troops and threatening to attack Medina. After reaching Tabük, the Prophet discovered that the information he had received was exaggerated and decided to return to Medina. Cf. Balādhurī, *Ansāb*, I, 368.

For the question as to whether Muhammad was trying to liberate the Arab auxiliary army in the service of the Emperor, or was trying to expand Islam beyond the boundaries of Arabia, see Buhl, *Leben*, 322–23; Andrae, *Mohammed*, 168.

342. Addition from Hisch. and Ibn Ishāq.

them to make ready and informed them that his objective was the Byzantines. They prepared themselves despite their dislike for that approach and what it entailed, as well as their respect for the Byzantines and their fighting ability.

One day, while the Messenger of God was making preparations for this expedition, he said to Jadd b. Qays,<sup>343</sup> brother<sup>344</sup> of the Banū Salimah:<sup>345</sup> "Would you like, O Jadd, to fight the Banū Asfar (sons of the Yellow/Red One)<sup>346</sup> this year?" He said: "O, Messenger of God, please excuse me [from this] and do not tempt me. By God, my folk know no better admirer of women than I. I fear that if I see the women of the Banū Asfar I shall not be able to control myself." The Messenger of God turned away from him saying, "I excuse you." It was about al-Jadd that the following verse was revealed: "Among them is a man who says, 'Grant me exemption [to stay at home] and tempt me not [into trial].' Have they not already fallen into trial? Indeed hell encompasses the unbelievers."<sup>347</sup> ["Tempt me not"] meant that he feared temptation from the women of the Banū Asfar. But was it not [also] temptation that he had fallen into, by staying behind [while] the Messenger of God [went to battle]? By falling prey to human desires, he had fallen into a greater temptation. Indeed, hell is at his back.

One<sup>348</sup> of the hypocrites, feeling an aversion to battle, being

343. Although he had accepted Islam, he was a hypocrite. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqat*, II/1, 73; III/2, 112.

344. Ibn Ishāq: One of.

345. A clan of Khazraj. Ibn Hazm, *Jamharah*, 358.

346. Wāqidi: Would you like, O Abū Wahb, to join us this year [in an expedition]? Perhaps you might capture a woman of the Banū Asfar.

The Byzantines were called Banū Asfar by the Arabs in contrast to *aswad* (black), a description of non-Arabs as light-skinned. The genealogists were not satisfied with the color explanation and considered Asfar, (Sefo of Genesis 36:II) the grandson of Esau (in the Septuagint, Genesis 36, 10) and the father of Rūmil (Genesis 36, 11), as the ancestor of the Rūm. *EP*<sup>2</sup>, s.v. Asfar; Goldziher, *Muslim studies*, I, 243; Lewis, *Muslim discovery*, 141. Ibn Hazm (*Jamharah*, 511), on the other hand, states that the Banū Asfar were the descendants of Ṣab b. Ishāq b. Ibrāhim, who lived in the mountains of al-Sharāt between Syria and al-Hijāz.

347. Qur'an 9:49. Tabari, *Tafsir*, XIV, 286–89; Tusi, *Tafsir*, V, 270–71; Nöldeke-Schwally, *Geschichte*, I, 224; Blachère, *Coran*, 219. Wāqidi, *Magħāzi*, III, 992–93, states that his son 'Abdallāh, who had fought with the Muslims at Badr and who was a half-brother of Mu'ādh b. Jabal, exchanged harsh words with his father for his refusal to participate in the expedition.

348. Ibn Ishāq: A group of hypocrites. According to Wāqidi, he was Jadd b. Qays.

skeptical of the truth, and spreading false rumors about the Messenger of God, said to another that they should not go out in the heat. With regard to them, God revealed: "They said, 'Do not march out in the heat'; say, 'The heat of hell is far more intense, if only they understand!' So, let them laugh a little, for they will weep more in retribution for [the sins] they have accumulated."<sup>349</sup>

The Messenger of God went ahead earnestly with his preparations for the expedition and ordered the men to get ready quickly. He urged and persuaded the people of means [to help in meeting] the expenses and [to provide] mounts for the cause of God. The men of means provided mounts [in anticipation of] God's reward. 'Uthmān b. 'Affān spent a huge sum, more<sup>350</sup> than anyone had ever done, on this expedition.

Seven Muslims, known as "The Weepers," from among the *Anṣār* and others, came to the Messenger of God and asked him to provide them with mounts, for they were without means. He said: "I do not have any mount to provide you with." They turned back and their eyes flowed with tears out of grief that they had not the wherewithal to meet the expense [of the expedition].<sup>351</sup>

[Ibn Ishāq] states: I have received a report that Yāmīn b. 'Umayr b. Ka'b al-Naḍrī met Abū Laylā 'Abd al-Rahmān b. Ka'b and 'Abdallāh b. Mughaffal as they were weeping, and asked, "What makes you cry?" They responded, "We went to the Messenger of God [asking him] for mounts, but he had none to give us and we do not have anything to sustain us in order to go forth with him." Thereupon he gave them a camel upon which water was carried [from a well], so they mounted it. He provided them with some dates, and they went off with the Messenger of God.<sup>352</sup>

[1695]

Some Bedouins who had excused themselves [from going] came

349. Qur'ān 9:81–82. Wāqidi, *Maghāzī*, III, 1069; Tabarī, *Tafsīr*, XIV, 399–403; Tūsi, *Tafsīr*, V, 311–13; Blachère, *Coran*, 224. Ibn Hishām, *Sīrah*, IV, 160–61, states that the hypocrites used to assemble in the house of Suwaylim, the Jew, keeping men back from joining the expedition.

350. Ibn Ishāq: No one had ever spent like him. Ibn Hishām states that 'Uthmān had spent one thousand dinārs on this expedition. Wāqidi, *Maghāzī*, III, 991, gives a list of people who contributed toward the expenses and states that 'Uthmān provided for a third of the army. Cf. Balādhuri, *Ansāb*, I, 368.

351. Qur'ān 9: 92. For their names, see Ibn Hishām, *Sīrah*, IV, 161.

352. Wāqidi, *Maghāzī*, III, 994; Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, II/2, 112.

to apologize, but God would not accept their excuse. I have been told that they were from the Banū Ghifār,<sup>353</sup> and Khufāf b. Imā' b. Rahḍah was one of them.

When the Messenger of God was prepared and determined to set off, a number of Muslims, whose intentions had prevented them from [following] the Messenger of God, lagged behind without any doubts or misgivings. Among them were Ka'b b. Mālik b. Abī Ka'b,<sup>354</sup> brother of the Banū Salimah; Murārah b. al-Rabī', brother of the Banū 'Amr b. 'Awf; Hilāl b. Umayyah, brother of the Banū Wāqif<sup>355</sup> and Abū Khaythamah, brother of the Banū Sālim b. 'Awf.<sup>356</sup> They were sincere people whose Islam was beyond reproach.

After the Messenger of God had set out, he pitched his camp by Thaniyyat al-Wadā',<sup>357</sup> whereas 'Abdallāh b. Ubayy b. Salūl<sup>358</sup> pitched his camp separately below him facing Dhubāb,<sup>359</sup> a mountain in al-Jubbānah below Thaniyyat al-Wadā'. [The narrators] allege that the latter's camp was not the smaller of the two camps. When the Messenger of God set out, 'Abdallāh b. Ubayy stayed behind with the hypocrites and waverers.<sup>360</sup> 'Abdallāh b. Ubayy was a brother of the Banū 'Awf b. al-Khazraj; 'Abdallāh b. Nabtal was a brother of the Banū 'Amr b. 'Awf; and Rifā'ah b. Zayd b. al-Tābūt was a brother of the Banū Qaynuqā'. They were the

353. A clan of Kinānah. Kalbi, *Jamharah*, 42; Ibn Hazm, *Jamharah*, 186.

354. He was one of the poets supporting the Prophet and was from the clan of Salimah of Khazraj. He died between 50/670 and 55/675. *EP*<sup>2</sup>, s.v. Ka'b b. Mālik; Sezgin, *CAS*, II, 293–94.

355. The Banū Wāqif were the allies of the Banū 'Amr b. 'Awf. Ibn Hazm, *Jamharah*, 344.

356. The Banū Sālim b. 'Awf were a clan of Khazraj. *Ibid.*, 354.

For those who stayed behind, see Wāqidi, *Maghāzi*, III, 997–98; Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, II/1, 119.

357. A narrow pass in a mountain overlooking Medina through which one enters the city. Ibn Shabbah, *Ta'rīkh*, I, 269–70; Bakrī, *Mu'jam*, IV, 1372; Yāqūt, *Mu'jam*, II, 86; Ḥamidullāh, *Battlefields*, 10.

358. He was a chief of Sālim, a section of the 'Awf clan of the Khazraj. The sources suggest that but for the emigration of Muhammad he might have been the leader of Medina. Although he had accepted Islam, he was not a devoted Muslim and had the reputation of being the leader of the hypocrites. He died shortly after the Prophet's return from this expedition. *EP*<sup>2</sup>, s.v. 'Abd Allah b. Ubayy.

359. Dhubāb or Dhibāb, a mountain near Medina. Bakrī, *Mu'jam*, II, 609; Yāqūt, *Mu'jam*, III, 3.

360. Most of them were afraid to fight the Byzantines. See Wāqidi, *Maghāzi*, III, 995–96.

chief men among the hypocrites<sup>361</sup> and were doing harm to Islam and its people by their artful machinations.

Ibn Ḥumayd—Salamah—Ibn Ishāq—‘Amr b. ‘Ubayd<sup>362</sup>—al-Ḥasan al-Baṣrī:<sup>363</sup> Concerning them, God revealed: “They had sought to stir up sedition before, and turned things upside down for you, [but truth came out in the end and God’s will prevailed, even though they did not like it].”<sup>364</sup> [1696]

Ibn Ishāq: The Messenger of God left ‘Alī b. Abī Ṭālib behind to look after his family and ordered him to stay with them, and he left Sibā’ b. ‘Urfuṭah, a brother of the Banū Ghifār, in charge of Medina.<sup>365</sup> The hypocrites spread false rumors about ‘Alī b. Abī Ṭālib, saying that he had been left behind because he was a burden to the Messenger of God and he wanted to relieve himself of him. [After] hearing [these accusations] ‘Alī took his weapons and set off until he caught up with the Messenger of God while he was [camped]<sup>366</sup> in al-Jurf,<sup>367</sup> saying, “O Prophet of God, the hypocrites allege that you have left me behind because you found me burdensome and wanted to get rid of me.” He replied, “They lied. I left you behind because of [what I have left]<sup>368</sup> behind, so go back and represent me in my family and yours. Are you not pleased, O ‘Alī, that you are in the same position in relation to me as Aaron (Hārūn) was in relation to Moses (Mūsā), except that there will be no prophet after me?”<sup>369</sup> ‘Alī returned to Medina and the Messenger of God went on his expedition.

361. Balādhurī, *Ansāb*, I, 274ff.

362. ‘Amr b. ‘Ubayd b. Bāb, also known as Ibn Kaysān al-Tamīmī, died ca. 142/759–60. Ibn Ḥajar, *Tahdhīb*, VIII, 70–75.

363. He was a famous preacher of the Umayyad period in al-Baṣrah and died in 110/728. *EP*, s.v. al-Ḥasan al-Baṣrī; Sezgin, *GAS*, I, 591–94.

364. Qur’ān 9: 48. See also Wāḥidī, *Asbāb*, 172; Ṭabarī, *Tafsīr*, XIV, 283–86; Tabarsī, *Majma’*, III, 35–36.

365. According to another report, it was Muḥammad b. Maṣlamah al-Anṣārī. Ibn Hishām, *Sīrah*, IV, 162; Wāqidi, *Maghāzi*, III, 995; Ibn Sa’d, *Tabaqāt*, II/1, 44, 77, 119; IV/2, 54. In addition to above reports, Maṣ’ūdī, *Tanbīh*, 235–36, cites another report according to which ‘Alī b. Abī Ṭālib was put in charge of Medina.

366. Addition from Ibn Ishāq.

367. Located about 6 km from Medina on the way to Syria where the Muslims used to camp before going out on an expedition, Bakrī, *Mu’jam*, II, 377; Yāqūt, *Mu’jam*, II, 128.

368. Addition from Hisch. and Ibn Ishāq.

369. Bukhārī, *Ṣaḥīḥ*, II, 300; Muslim, *Ṣaḥīḥ*, VII, 120; Ṭabarī, *Mishkāt*, III, 242; *Mishkat* (trans. Robson), II, 1340.

[1697]

Some days after the Messenger of God had set out, Abū Khaythamah,<sup>370</sup> a brother of the Banū Sālim, returned to his family on a hot day. He found his two wives in huts [made of palm sticks] in his garden [of palm trees surrounded by a fence]. Each had sprinkled her hut and cooled water for him in it and prepared food for him there. When he entered the garden, he stood at the door of the hut and looked at his wives and what they had prepared for him and said, "The Messenger of God is exposed to the heat of the sun and the blowing of the winds, while Abū Khaythamah is in cool shade, [has] cool water, prepared food, and rests with a pretty woman<sup>371</sup> in his estate. This is not fair." Then he added, "By God, I will not enter either of your huts, but will join the Messenger of God; so get some provisions ready for me." They did so and he brought forth his camel upon which water was carried [from a well] and mounted it. He set out in search of the Messenger of God until he overtook him where he had camped in Tabūk. 'Umayr b. Wahb al-Jumāhi,<sup>372</sup> who was also looking for the Messenger of God, had overtaken Abū Khaythamah on the way, so they traveled together. When they approached Tabūk, Abū Khaythamah said to 'Umayr b. Wahb, "I have done wrong. If you don't mind, stay behind me until I go to the Messenger of God." 'Umayr complied with his request. When Abū Khaythamah drew near the Messenger of God as he halted in Tabūk, the people called [the Prophet's] attention, saying that a rider was approaching on the way. The Messenger of God said, "[It must] be Abū Khaythamah!" They said, "O Messenger of God, he is, by God, Abū Khaythamah." Having dismounted he came and greeted the Messenger of God, who responded by saying, "Woe to you, O Abū Khaythamah!" He then informed the Messenger of God what had happened and [the Prophet] spoke to him well and invoked a blessing upon him.<sup>373</sup>

When the Messenger of God passed by al-Hijr,<sup>374</sup> he halted and

370. Wāqīdī, *Maghāzī*, III, 998–99; Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, II/1, 119.

371. Wāqīdī: With two pretty women.

372. Wāqīdī states that he overtook Abū Khaythamah at Wādi al-Qurā.

373. Ibn Hishām, *Sīrah*, IV, 164, has reproduced the verses composed by Abū Khaythamah on this occasion.

374. An ancient ruined site in northwestern Arabia near Madā'in Shālih. It was a commercial town second only to Petra in importance during the Nabatean period.

the people drew water from its well. Having departed from there, the Messenger of God said, "Do not drink any of its water nor perform ablutions with it. If you have used it for making dough, then eat none of it, and feed it to the camels. Let none of you go out at night alone except with a companion."<sup>375</sup> The people did as the Messenger of God had ordered them, except for two men from the Banū Sā'idah:<sup>376</sup> one went out to relieve himself, while the other went to look for his camel. The one who had gone out to relieve himself was choked on his way, and the other who had gone to look for his camel was carried away by the wind and was thrown to earth at the two mountains of Tayyi'. When the Messenger of God was informed about them he said, "Did I not forbid you from going out alone without a companion?" He then prayed for the one who was choked on his way and he recovered, and the other who was thrown to earth at the two mountains of Tayyi' was presented to the Messenger of God by a man of Tayyi' when he arrived in Medina.

Abū Ja'far [al-Ṭabarī] states that the story of the two men was reported by Ibn Ḥumayd—Salamah—Ibn Isḥāq—‘Abdallāh b. Abī Bakr—al-‘Abbās b. Sahl b. Sa'd al-Sā'iḍī.<sup>377</sup>

When the people woke up in the morning and had no water, they complained to the Messenger of God. So he prayed, and God sent a cloud, which rained so much so that they not only quenched their thirst but carried away all the water they needed.

Ibn Ḥumayd—Salamah—Muhammad b. Isḥāq—‘Aṣim b. ‘Umar b. Qatādah: I said to Maḥmūd b. Labīd,<sup>378</sup> "Did the people recognize hypocrisy among them?" He replied, "Yes, by God, if a

---

Several water wells are located in that plain. The Qur'ān relates that it was inhabited by a godless people, and the Prophet forbade his soldiers to refresh themselves at these wells, because it was an accursed spot. *EI<sup>2</sup>*, s.v. al-Ḥidjī, Ryckmans, *Religions*, 12; Al-Wohāibi, *Hijaz*, 77–80.

Ibn Hishām, *Sīrah*, IV, 165, states that when the Messenger of God passed by al-Ḥidjī he covered his face with his cloak and urged his camel on, saying, "Do not enter the dwellings of those who sinned unless you are lamenting, for fear that you may meet with the same fate that befell them." Cf. Wāqidi, *Maghāzi*, III, 1007.

375. Because it was very windy. Wāqidi, *Maghāzi*, III, 1006.

376. A clan of Khazraj. Kalbi, *Jamharah*, 187; Ibn Hazm, *Jamharah*, 365, 472.

377. He died ca. 120/738. Ibn Hajar, *Tahdhīb*, V, 118.

378. He was an *Anṣārī* from the *tābi'ūn* or "followers" and used to give legal opinions in Medina. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, II/2, 132; IV/2, 79.

[1698]

man knew that hypocrisy [exited] in his brother, father, uncle, or his kinsfolk, they would cover it up for each other." Then Maḥmūd said, "Some of my clansmen have informed me that a hypocrite, whose hypocrisy was notorious,<sup>379</sup> used to go with the Messenger of God wherever he went. When the incident of rain happened at al-Hijr and the Messenger of God prayed as he did, and God sent a cloud which rained until the people were satisfied, we went to him and said, 'Woe to you! Is there anything more to say after this?' He replied, '[It was] a passing cloud!'"

[1699] Then the Messenger of God moved on. On the way his camel strayed and his companions went in search of it. There was a man called 'Umārah b. Hazm<sup>380</sup> with the Messenger of God who was present at al-'Aqabah<sup>381</sup> and Badr<sup>382</sup> and who was the uncle of the Banū 'Amr b. Ḥazm. In his camp was Zayd b. Luṣayb<sup>383</sup> al-Qaynuqā'i<sup>384</sup> who was a hypocrite. Zayd, while he was in 'Umārah's camp and 'Umārah was with the Messenger of God, said, "Does not Muḥammad allege that he is a prophet and informs you of news from heaven when he doesn't know where his camel is?"<sup>385</sup> The Messenger of God said while 'Umārah was with him, "A man has said that this Muḥammad tells you that he is a prophet and alleges that he informs you of heavenly matters when he doesn't

379. According to Wāqidi, *Maghāzī*, III, 1009, he was Aws b. Qayzī or Zayd b. al-Luṣayt.

380. He was present at the second 'Aqabah and was killed in the battle of the Yamāmah in 12/633. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, III/1, 67; III/2, 50–51, 77, 140; VIII, 117.

381. A mountain pass between Minā and Mecca, where the Prophet had secret meetings with the Medinese at the pilgrimages of the year 621 and 622 which paved the way for his subsequent migration to Medina. In 621, at "the first 'Aqabah," twelve people were present, and in 622, at "the second 'Aqabah," seventy-three people were present who promised to defend Muḥammad, if necessary, by arms. *EP*<sup>2</sup>, s.v. 'Akaba; Balādhuri, *Anṣāb*, I, 239–54; Hamidullāh, *Battlefields*, 7–8.

382. A town and a marketplace southwest of Medina, a night's journey from the coast and at the junction of a road from Medina with the caravan route from Mecca to Syria, where the first great battle of Islam was fought in Ramaḍān 2/March 624. *EP*<sup>2</sup>, s.v. Badr; Hamidullāh, *Battlefields*, 13–21, gives topographical details and a map of the battlefield.

383. Hisch., Ibn Ishāq, Wāqidi: al-Luṣayt. Ibn Hishām: al-Luṣayb. Wāqidi states that he was a Jewish convert to Islam.

384. Qaynuqā' was one of the three main Jewish tribes of Medina. After they were expelled, a few of them embraced Islam and some of them were hypocrites. *EP*<sup>2</sup>, s.v. Kaynukā'.

385. It was the Prophet's camel *al-Qaṣwā'*. Wāqidi, *Maghāzī*, III, 1009. See Tabari, below (I, 1784).

know where his camel is. By God, I know nothing except that which God has taught me, and He has indicated to me where it is. It is in the<sup>386</sup> valley on such-and-such a mountain trail. It is caught up in a tree by its halter; so go and bring it to me." They went and brought it. 'Umārah b. Ḥazm returned to his camp<sup>387</sup> and said, "By God, what a wonderful thing the Messenger of God has just told us about something said by someone of which God has informed him." He then repeated the words as uttered by Zayd b. al-Luṣayb. A man who was in the camp of 'Umārah but was not present with the Messenger of God, exclaimed, "By God, Zayd uttered those words [just] before you came." Consequently, 'Umārah advanced on Zayd beating him on the neck and saying, "O servants of God, by God, a great distressing thing happened in my camp and I did not know of it. [Addressing Zayd] Get out of my camp, O enemy of God, and do not accompany me." Some people allege that Zayd repented after that, while others say that he was suspected of evil until he died.

Then the Messenger of God continued his march and men began to fall behind. When they told the Messenger of God that so-and-so had fallen behind, he responded, "Leave him, for if there is any good in him God will unite him with you; if not, God has relieved you of him." Finally, it was reported to him that Abū Dharr<sup>388</sup> had fallen behind and his camel had delayed him. He said, "Let him be, for if there is any good in him God will join him to you; if not, God has relieved you of him." Abū Dharr remained on his camel until it slowed down with him. Then he took his baggage, lifted it onto his back and started following the trail of the Messenger of God. When the Messenger of God had halted at one of his halting places, an onlooker called his attention to a lonely man walking on the way. The Messenger of God said that he wished it was Abū Dharr. When the people looked attentively, they said that it was indeed Abū Dharr. The Messenger of God said, "May God have mercy on Abū Dharr! He walks alone, will die alone, and will be raised alone."

[1700]

386. Hisch. Ibn Ishāq: This valley.

387. As in Hisch., Ibn Ishāq, and Wāqidi. Text: To his family.

388. Abū Dharr al-Ghifārī, a companion of the Prophet, was noted for his humility, asceticism, and religious learning. He died in 32/652-53 and is considered one of the four pillars of the early Shi'ah. *EP*, s.v. Abū Dharr; *Jafri, Origins*, 52.

[1701]

Ibn Ḥumayd—Salamah—Ibn Ishāq—Buraydah b. Sufyān al-Aslāmī<sup>389</sup>—Muḥamad b. Ka'b al-Qurażī:<sup>390</sup> When 'Uthmān exiled Abū Dharr, he came down to al-Rabādhah<sup>391</sup> where he died and there was no one with him except his wife and slave. [Abū Dharr] instructed them to wash him and to wrap him in a shroud and lay him on the open road and to tell the first caravan that passed by that he was Abū Dharr, a companion of the Messenger of God, and that they should help [his wife and slave] bury him. When he died, they did [as they were told] and put his body on the open road. 'Abdallāh b. Mas'ūd<sup>392</sup> had been approaching that place with a group of men from Iraq on a lesser pilgrimage when suddenly they noticed the bier on the road,<sup>393</sup> the camels nearly treading on it. [Abū Dharr's] slave went to them and said, "This is Abū Dharr, the Messenger of God's companion. Help us to bury him." 'Abdallāh b. Mas'ūd broke into tears saying, "The Messenger of God spoke the truth. You will walk alone, die alone, and be raised alone." Then he and his companions got down and buried him, and he told them Abū Dharr's story and what the Messenger of God had said to him on his way to Tabūk.<sup>394</sup>

A band of hypocrites, among them Wadi'ah b. Thābit, a brother<sup>395</sup> of the Banū 'Amr b. 'Awf, and a man from Ashja',<sup>396</sup> a confederate of the Banū Salimah called Makhshī<sup>397</sup> b. Ḥumayyir,

389. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, IV/1, 173; VI, 172; VII/1, 84, Ibn Hajar, *Tahdhīb*, I, 433–34.

390. He was from the Banū Qurayzah. It was probably his father or grandfather who was converted to Islam. He died between 108/726–27 and 120/738. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, V, 272–73; VII/2, 193; Ibn Hajar, *Tahdhīb*, IX, 420–22.

391. A village about three days' journey from Medina on the way to al-Hijāz. Bakrī, *Mu'jam*, II, 633–37; Yāqūt, *Mu'jam*, III, 24.

392. He was one of the early converts to Islam and became famous as a reader of the Qur'ān. He is also known for his Qur'ānic exegesis and is regarded as the head of the Kūfan transmitters. *EP*<sup>2</sup>, s.v. Ibn Mas'ūd.

393. Ibn Ishāq: In the middle of the road. Wāqidi: On the open road.

394. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, IV/1, 161–75, gives the same account with additional *isnād*. Cf. Wāqidi, *Magħāzi*, III, 1000–1001. After citing Wāqidi's report, Balādhurī (*Ansāb*, V, 55–56) gives another report which states that Jarir b. 'Abdallāh al-Bajalī and Mālik al-Ashtar, who were passing through al-Rabādhah in a caravan from al-Kūfah, performed the last rites of Abū Dharr.

395. Wāqidi (*Magħāzi*, III, 1003): One of. He also gives two additional names.

396. A clan of Ghāṭafān. Ibn Hazm, *Jamharah*, 249.

397. Hisch., Ibn Ishāq: Mukhashshin (all the subsequent occurrences are the same.)

were going<sup>398</sup> with the Messenger of God as he was proceeding to Tabūk. Some of them said to others, "Do you think that fighting the Banū Aṣfar is like fighting others?"<sup>399</sup> By God, it looks to me as if you will be tied with ropes tomorrow in order to intimidate and frighten the faithful." Makhshī b. Humayyir<sup>400</sup> said, "By God, I wish I could swear before a judge that every one of us should be flogged a hundred lashes if we could escape from God's revealing a verse about us because of what you have said."<sup>401</sup>

The Messenger of God, as it was reported to me, said to 'Ammār b. Yāsir,<sup>402</sup> "Overtake that band, for they have forged lies, and ask them what they said. If they deny it, tell them, 'Yes indeed, you said such-and-such.'" 'Ammār went and told them [what the Prophet had said], and they came to the Messenger of God making excuses. The Messenger of God had stopped on his camel, and Wadi'ah b. Thābit started speaking while he held its girth: "O Messenger of God, we were simply playing and speaking nonsense." Then God revealed about them: "And if you question them, then assuredly they will say, 'We were only speaking nonsense and playing.'"<sup>403</sup> Makhshī b. Humayyir said, "O Messenger of God, my name and my father's name have withheld me [from attaining honor]."<sup>404</sup> The man who was pardoned in the above verse was Makhshī b. Humayyir,<sup>405</sup> and so he was called

[1702]

398. Hisch., Ibn Ishāq: Were pointing to.

399. Ibn Ishāq: Is like fighting the Arabs (with each other)?

400. Wāqidi: Al-Julās b. Suwayd.

401. It suggests the powerful influence of the Qur'ānic verses. The Qur'ān 9:64, states: "The hypocrites fear lest a sūrah be revealed concerning them to notify them as to what is in their hearts. Say: Mock on; God will bring forth what you dread."

402. He and his wife were early converts to Islam and suffered severe tortures. He is known for his learning, great piety, and devotion to Islam. He lost his life at Siffin in 37/657 and is considered one of the four pillars of the early Shi'ah. *EP*, s.v. 'Ammār b. Yāsir, *Jafri, Origins*, 52.

403. Qur'ān 9:65. Wāhidi, *Asbāb*, 174–75; Tabārī, *Tafsīr*, XIV, 332–35; Blachère, *Coran*, 222. Tabarsī, *Majma'*, III, 44–46, states that a band of fourteen men tried to ambush the Prophet near a mountain pass while he was returning from Tabūk. Cf. Mas'ūdī, *Tanbīh*, 236–37.

404. *Makhshī* means a person who is feared, and *Humayyir* is a diminutive form of *himār*, meaning a little donkey.

405. Qur'ān 9:66, states: "Make no excuses! You have disbelieved following your profession of faith. If We should pardon one faction of you, We will still punish another faction since they have been such criminals." "One faction" in the above verse means one person, and he was Makhshī. Tabārī, *Tafsīr*, XIV, 336.

'Abd al-Rahmān.<sup>406</sup> He asked God to make him die as a martyr in a place not known [by anyone]. He was killed on the day of al-Yamāmah<sup>407</sup> and no trace of him was found.

When the Messenger of God reached Tabūk, Yuhannah b. Ru'bah, governor of Aylah,<sup>408</sup> came to him, made a treaty with him, and offered him the poll tax (*jizyah*). The people of Jarbā'<sup>409</sup> and Adhruh<sup>410</sup> also offered him the poll tax, and the Messenger of God wrote a document for each of them which is still in their possession.

Then the Messenger of God summoned Khālid b. al-Walīd<sup>411</sup> and sent him to Ukyadīr at Dūmah.<sup>412</sup> This was Ukyadīr b. 'Abd al-Malīk, a man from Kindah<sup>413</sup> who was a king of Dūmah and a Christian. The Messenger of God told Khālid that he would find him hunting wild cows. Khālid b. al-Walīd rode out until he came

406. Wāqīdī adds: Or 'Abdallāh.

407. Al-Yamāmah is a district in central Arabia where the battle of al-Yamāmah was fought between the Muslims led by Khālid b. al-Walīd, and the Banū Hanifah led by "the false prophet" Musaylimah. The Muslims were victorious but suffered heavy losses. *EI*<sup>1</sup>, s.v. Yamāma; Philby, *Heart of Arabia*, II, 31–34; Hitti, *History*, 141.

408. A seaport at the north end of the Gulf of 'Aqabah near the biblical site of Ezion-geber and Elath. It was an important way station on the pilgrim route between Egypt and Mecca. Now it is called al-'Aqabah. *EI*<sup>2</sup>, s.v. Ayla; Buhl, *Leben*, 327–28; Musil, *Hegāz*, 81–87; Jāsir, *Shimāl*, 461; Al-Wohābi, *Hijaz*, 43–51, 315ff.

For the treaty, see Ibn Hishām, *Sīrah*, IV, 169; Ḥamidullāh, *Majmū'ah*, 87–89.

409. It was an ancient fortress situated on the Roman road leading from Busrā to the Red Sea, about one mile north of Adhruh. Yāqūt, *Mu'jam*, II, 118–19, states that its inhabitants were Jews. *EI*<sup>2</sup>, s.v. Djarbā'.

410. It was a Roman camp between Ma'ān and Petra in the Judhām country and was visited by the caravans of Quraysh. It became famous in Islamic history on account of the arbitration conference which took place there after the battle of Shiffīn. *EI*<sup>2</sup>, s.v. Adhruh. Wāqīdī, *Maghāzi*, III, 1032, has reproduced the treaty. Cf. Ḥamidullāh, *Majmū'ah*, 90–91.

411. He had fought against the Muslims at Uhud but was converted to Islam in 6/627 or 8/629. He became one of the well-known commanders at the time of the early Islamic conquests and died in 21/642. *EI*<sup>2</sup>, s.v. Khālid b. al-Walīd.

412. Dūmat al-Jandal, an oasis at the head of the Wādi Sirhān, linking central Arabia and the mountains of Hawrān and Syria, is situated on the route between Damascus and Medina. The entire basin with its settlements is now called al-Jawf. *EI*<sup>2</sup>, s.v. Dūmat al-Djandal. For its topography and historical geography, see Musil, *Arabia*, 157–64, 458–74, 531–53; Jāsir, *Shimāl*, 99ff., 528–33. This expedition against Dūmah was the third.

413. A South Arabian tribal group that spread all over Arabia in the fifth and sixth centuries from the south to the center to the north, and played a decisive role in the history of Arabia before the rise of Islam. *EI*<sup>2</sup>, s.v. Kinda.

within sight of his fort. It was a moonlit summer night and Umayyad was on the roof terrace with his wife. The wild cows had been scratching the palace gate with their horns all night. His wife asked him if he had ever seen anything like that, and he said, "No indeed." Then she said, "Who would allow this?" He responded, "No one." He then came down and called for his horse, which was saddled. A group of men from his family, among them his brother Ḥassān, took their hunting spears, mounted [their horses], and rode off. On their way they encountered the Messenger of God's cavalry, and [Umayyad] was seized and his brother Ḥassān was killed. Ḥassān was wearing a silk brocade gown woven with gold in the form of date-palm leaves. Khālid stripped him of it and sent it to the Messenger of God before his arrival.<sup>414</sup>

Ibn Ḥumayd—Salamah—Muhammad b. Ishāq—‘Āsim b. ‘Umar b. Qatādah—Anas b. Mālik: I saw Umayyad's gown when it was brought to the Messenger of God. The Muslims were feeling it with their hands and admiring it. The Messenger of God said, "Are you amazed at it? By Him in whose hand is Muhammad's soul, the kerchiefs of Sa'd b. Mu'ādh<sup>415</sup> in paradise are better than this."

[1703]

Ibn Ḥumayd—Salamah—Ibn Ishāq: Khālid brought Umayyad to the Messenger of God, who spared his blood and made peace with him on the condition that he paid the poll tax.<sup>416</sup> Then he released him, and he returned to his village.

[Now the report goes back to Yazid b. Rūmān at the beginning of the military expedition to Tabuk.] [See Ṭabarī, I, 1692, above] The Messenger of God stayed in Tabuk no more than ten nights

414. It was sent with 'Amr b. Umayyah al-Damri, Wāqidī, *Maghāzī*, III, 1026. Cf. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, I/2, 36–37, 48; II/1, 119–20; III/2, 13; Buhl, *Leben*, 328.

415. Sa'd b. Mu'ādh died in 5/627 as a result of injuries suffered during the siege of Medina when he was thirty-seven years old. Ibn Hishām, *Sirah*, III, 262–64; Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, III/2, 2–13; Ibn Hajar, *Isābah*, III, 84–85; El', s.v. Sa'd b. Mu'ādh.

The tradition states: A silk robe was presented to the Messenger of God, and his companions began to feel it with their hands and marvel at its softness, so he said, "Do you marvel at the softness of this? Sa'd b. Mu'ādh's headband in paradise is better and softer than it." Tabrizi, *Mishkāt*, III, 272; *Mishkat* (trans. Robson), II, 1365; transmitted by both Bukhāri and Muslim.

416. According to one report, Umayyad surrendered peacefully. Gaudefroy-Demombynes, *Mahomet*, 190. For the text of the treaty, its translation, and comments, see Ḥamidullāh, *Majmū'ah*, 246–47; Watt, *Muhammad at Medina*, 362–65.

and departed, returning to Medina. On the way there was water issuing from a rock in a valley called *al-mushaqqaq* (i.e., the cracked, furrowed),<sup>417</sup> enough to quench the thirst of two or three riders. The Messenger of God ordered that whoever should get there before him must not draw any water from it until he came. A number of hypocrites<sup>418</sup> got there first and drew the water that was there. When the Messenger of God came and halted, he found no water. He inquired as to who had got there first, and was told that so-and-so had. He exclaimed, "Did we not forbid them to draw any water from it until we came?" He then cursed them and invoked God against them. Then he alighted and put his hand under the rock, and water started to sprinkle into his hand as God willed. He then sprinkled the rock with that water, rubbed it with his hand and prayed as God willed him to pray. The water gushed forth, as one who heard it said, with the sound of thunder. The people drank and drew water from it for their needs, and the Messenger of God said, "Those<sup>419</sup> of you who live will indeed hear about this valley that it is more fertile than others in its vicinity."

[1704]

The the Messenger of God proceeded until he halted in Dhū Awān,<sup>420</sup> a town an hour's daytime journey from Medina. The people who had built the Mosque of Dissent (*masjid al-dīrār*) had come to him while he was preparing for Tabūk, saying, "O Messenger of God, we have built a mosque for the sick and needy and for rainy and cold nights, and we would like you to visit us and pray for us in it."<sup>421</sup> [The Prophet] said that he was on the verge of traveling, and was preoccupied, or words to that effect, and that when he returned, God willing, he would come to them and pray for them in it.

When he stopped in Dhū Awān, news of the mosque<sup>422</sup> came to him, and he summoned Mālik b. al-Dukhshum, a brother of the

417. Yāqūt, *Mu'jam*, V, 135; Jāsir, *Shimāl*, 595–96.

418. Wāqidi, *Maghāzi*, III, 1039, names four hypocrites who got there first.

419. Hisch.: If you live, or those of you who live.

420. Bakrī, *Mu'jam*, I, 208–9; Yāqūt, *Mu'jam*, I, 275. Some ruins located about 4 km from Medina were said to be of the Mosque of Dissent. Philby, *Pilgrim*, 86.

421. Wāqidi, *Maghāzi*, III, 1045–46, names five persons who had come to the Prophet with the invitation to visit the mosque. Cf. Ibn Shabbah, *Ta'rīkh*, I, 52–55.

422. Wāqidi adds: And the people who built it came to him from the heaven.

Banū Sālim b. 'Awf, and Ma'n b. 'Adī, or his brother 'Āsim b. 'Adī, brothers of the Banū al-'Ajlān,<sup>423</sup> and said, "Go to this mosque whose owners are unjust people and destroy and burn it." They went out briskly<sup>424</sup> until they came to the Banū Sālim b. 'Awf who were Mālik b. al-Dukhshum's clan. Mālik said to Ma'n, "Wait for me until I bring fire from my people." He went to his kinsfolk and took a palm branch and lighted it. Then both of them ran until they entered the mosque, its people inside, set fire to it and destroyed it and the people dispersed.<sup>425</sup> Concerning them it was revealed in the Qur'ān: "And those who have taken a mosque for [working] mischief and disbelief, as well as disunion among the faithful and as an outpost for those who already fought God and His Messenger, will swear, 'We desired nothing but good.' God witnesses what sort of liars they are."<sup>426</sup>

Those who built [the mosque] were twelve men:<sup>427</sup> Khidām<sup>428</sup> b. Khālid from the Banū 'Ubayd b. Zayd, one of the Banū 'Amr b. 'Awf, (the Mosque of Dissent was built as an extension onto his house); Tha'labah b. Hātib from the Banū 'Ubayd, attributed to the Banū Umayyah b. Zayd;<sup>429</sup> Mu'attib b. Qushayr from the Banū Dubay'ah b. Zayd; Abū Ḥabibah b. al-Az'ar from the Banū Dubay'ah b. Zayd; 'Abbad b. Hunayf, the brother of Sahl b. Hunayf, from the Banū 'Amr b. 'Awf; Jāriyah b. 'Āmir and his two sons Mujammi' and Zayd; Nabtal b. al-Ḥārith from the Banū Dubay'ah; Bahzaj from the Banū Dubay'ah; Bijād b. 'Uthmān from the Banū Dubay'ah; and Wadi'ah b. Thābit from the Banū Umayyah, the clan of Abū Lubābah b. 'Abd al-Mundhir.

[1705]

423. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, III/2, 35–36.

424. Wāqidi adds: On foot.

425. Wāqidi states that the fire was set after the evening prayer.

426. Qur'ān 9:107. The Prophet had received some information which made him suspect the ulterior motives of the builders of this mosque. Probably they were linked to those who had planned an attempt on the Prophet's life when he was returning from Tabūk. It was also suspected that they were acting in concert with Abū 'Amir, an opponent of the Prophet. Balādhuri, *Ansāb*, I, 281–83; Tabari, *Tafsīr*, XIV, 468–75; Tabarsi, *Majma'*, III, 72–73; Buhl, *Leben*, 329; Nöldeke-Schwally, *Geschichte*, I, 224–25; Gaudefroy-Demombynes, *Mahomet*, 186–88; Blachère, *Coran* 227–28; Robinson, *Mahomet*, 314–15.

427. Wāqidi states that it was built by fifteen men.

428. Balādhuri (*Ansāb*, I, 277): Khidhām.

429. Banū Umayyah b. Zayd and Banū Dubay'ah b. Zayd were clans of the Banū 'Amr b. 'Awf of Aws. Ibn Hazm, *Jamharah*, 322.

The Messenger of God arrived in Medina [and found that] a group of hypocrites had stayed behind. From among the Muslims, Ka'b b. Mālik, Murārah b. al-Rabī', and Hilāl b. Umayyah had also stayed behind, but without doubt or hypocrisy. The Messenger of God ordered that no one should speak to the three.<sup>430</sup> Then the hypocrites who had stayed behind came to him making excuses and swearing oaths so he forgave them, but neither God nor His Messenger ever absolved them from guilt. The Muslims refrained from speaking to those three until God revealed: "God has forgiven the Prophet and the Emigrants (*Muhājirūn*) and the Helpers (*Anṣār*) who followed him in the hour of difficulty, after the hearts of a section of them were about to swerve aside; He then turned to them [in His mercy], surely He is kind and compassionate with them. As for the three who were left behind [he did not forgive them], until, when the earth became straitened for them, despite all its breadth, and their souls became straitened, so that they thought there was no shelter from God except in Him, He then turned to them, that they might also repent; surely God accepts repentance, and is all-compassionate. O believers, fear God, and be with those who are truthful."<sup>431</sup>

The Messenger of God returned to Medina from Tabūk in the month of Ramaḍān. In that month, the deputation of Thaqif, those whose report has been mentioned before, came to him.

*(An Account of the People Who Accepted Islam)*

- [1706] In this year {i.e., A.H. 9}, the Messenger of God dispatched 'Alī b. Abī Ṭālib with an army (*sariyyah*)<sup>432</sup> to the land of Tayyi' in the month of Rabī' II.<sup>433</sup> He raided them and took captives and seized

430. For details, see Ibn Hishām, *Sīrah*, IV, 175–81; Wāqīdī, *Maghāzī*, III, 1049–56; Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, II/1, 119; Lings, *Muhammad*, 320.

431. Qu'rān 9:117–19. Tabārī, *Tafsīr*, XIV, 539–57; Blachère, *Coran*, 229.

432. The term *sariyyah*, pl. *sarāyā*, is applied to an army sent by the Prophet in contradistinction to *ghazwah* (pl. *ghazawāt*, also *maghāzī*, meaning raiding expedition), wherein the Prophet himself participated. Originally it was applied to a portion of an army marching by night; it could consist of from five persons to four hundred. Lane, *Lexicon*, s.v. *s-r-y*.

433. Ibn Hishām, *Sīrah*, IV, 290–91; Wāqīdī, *Maghāzī*, III, 984–89; Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, I/2, 172; Balādhurī, *Ansāb*, I, 382, 522. It is known as the *sariyyat 'Alī* to *Fulus* (or *Fals*, or *Fils*), which was an idol in Najd worshipped by Tayyi'. Yāqūt, *Mu'jam*, IV, 273–74; Wellhausen, *Skizzen*, III, 48–49; Ryckmans, *Religions*, 9, 17; Fahd, *Panthéon*, 75–77.

two swords that were in the temple, one called "rasūb"<sup>434</sup> and the other "mikhdham."<sup>435</sup> The two swords were well-known and were presented to the temple by al-Ḥārith b. Abī Shimr.<sup>436</sup> 'Adī b. Ḥātim's<sup>437</sup> sister was among the captives.

Abū Ja'far [al-Ṭabarī]: The reports about 'Adī b. Ḥātim that have reached me do not specify time and do not mention what al-Wāqidi reported concerning 'Adī b. Ḥātim's sister being taken as a captive by 'Alī.<sup>438</sup>

Muhammad b. al-Muthannā [al-Baṣrī]<sup>439</sup>—Muhammad b. Ja'-far<sup>440</sup>—Shu'bāh<sup>441</sup>—Simāk:<sup>442</sup> I heard 'Abbād b. Ḥubaysh [al-Kūfi]<sup>443</sup> reporting from 'Adī b. Ḥātim, who said: The Messenger of God's cavalry came, or the Messenger of God's messengers came, and they took my paternal aunt and some other people captive and brought them before the Prophet, where they were lined up. [My aunt] said "O Messenger of God, the man who should speak for me (*wāfid*)<sup>444</sup> is far away, my son has been separated [from me], and I am an old woman of no service [to anyone]. Be kind to me and God will be kind to you, O Messenger of God." He said, "Who is the man who should speak for you?" "'Adī b. Ḥātim," she said. He said, "[The one] who fled from God and His Messenger." He then granted her request, and a man next to her, who was apparently 'Alī, told her to ask him for a mount. She asked for one and the Messenger of God ordered it for her.

434. A sword that penetrates into, or disappears in, the thing struck with it. Lane, *Lexicon*, s.v. r-s-b.

435. A sharp sword. Lane, *Lexicon*, s.v. kh-dh-m. Wāqidi, *Maghāzī*, III, 988, states that there were three swords and three coats of arms. The third sword was called *al-Yamāni*.

436. See Ṭabarī above I, 1675, n. 200.

437. He was a son of the celebrated poet Ḥātim al-Ṭā'i and was a supporter of 'Alī. He died in 68/687–88. *EI<sup>2</sup>*, s.v. 'Adī b. Ḥātim.

438. According to Wāqidi, *Maghāzī*, 988–89, 'Adī b. Ḥātim fled as he got the news of 'Alī's expedition. It was 'Adī's sister who was taken as a captive. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, I/2, 60, states that according to some reports, she was captured during Khālid's expedition. Cf. Lings, *Muhammad*, 315–16.

439. Died ca. 252/866. Ibn Hajar, *Tahdhīb*, IX, 425–27.

440. Muhammad b. Ja'-far al-Hudhalī al-Baṣrī died ca. 193/808–9. *Ibid.*, IX, 96–98.

441. Shu'bāh b. al-Hajjāj al-Baṣrī died in 160/776–77. *Ibid.*, IV, 338–46.

442. Simāk b. Ḥarb al-Kūfi died in 123/740–41. *Ibid.*, IV, 233–34.

443. *Ibid.*, V, 91.

444. *Wāfid* is a man coming to a king, or to a great man, as an ambassador. Ibn Manzūr, *Lisān*, s.v. w-f-d; Lane, *Lexicon*, s.v. w-f-d. For its original meaning, see Fahd, *Divination*, 241.

[1707] 'Adī b. Ḥātim: She came to me and said, "You have done something which your father would not have done. Go to him [i.e., the Messenger of God] with earnestness and fear. So-and-so went to him and he was treated properly." So I went to him and lo, a woman and two boys, or a boy, were with him. [Then the narrator [i.e., 'Abbād b. Ḥubaysh] recounted their closeness [of relationship] to the Prophet.]<sup>445</sup> And so I knew that he was neither like Khusraw (*Kisrā*)<sup>446</sup> nor like Caesar (*Qayṣar*).<sup>447</sup> He said to me, "O 'Adī b. Ḥātim, what made you flee from saying, 'There is no God except Allāh'? Is there any God except Allāh? What made you flee from saying, 'God is great'? Is there any thing greater than Allāh?" So I embraced Islam and saw in his face that he was rejoicing.

Ibn Ḥumayd—Salamah—Muhammad b. Ishāq—Shaybān b. Sa'd al-Tā'i: It has been reported to me that 'Adī b. Ḥātim of Tayyi' used to say, "No Arab disliked the Messenger of God when he first heard about him more than I. As far as I was concerned, I was a noble man, a Christian, traveling about among my people and collecting the fourth part of their spoils (*mirbā'*).<sup>448</sup> I professed my own religion, and the way I was treated was as if I were a king among my people. When I heard the Messenger of God I disliked him and said to an Arab slave of mine who was herding my camels, 'May you have no father!'<sup>449</sup> Prepare for me some docile, fat, and old camels, and keep them near me. When you hear of Muhammad's army treading this country, inform me.'" He did that, and one morning he came to me and said, "O 'Adī, whatever you were going to do when Muhammad's cavalry should descend upon you, do it now, for I have seen banners and when I inquired about them I was told that they were Muhammad's army." I asked him to bring my camels, which he did, and I took my family and children and told him that I would join my fellow

445. The reference is to Fātimah, the Prophet's daughter, and her two sons, Hasan and Husayn.

446. An Arabic form of the Persian Khusraw, used especially for the Sāsānid kings. *EI<sup>2</sup>*, s.v. *Kisrā*.

447. An Arabic name for the Roman and Byzantine emperor. *EI<sup>2</sup>*, s.v. *Kayṣar*.

448. See below, n. 456.

449. It is used as a proverb for an imprecation and rough speech against whom it is addressed; however, it is not said with the desire of its having effect, but rather on an occasion of intense love. *Lane, Lexicon*, s.v. *a-b-w*.

Christians in Syria. I traveled to al-Jūshiyah<sup>450</sup> and left one of Hātim's daughters in that settlement. When I reached Syria I stayed there.

The Messenger of God's cavalry followed me when I turned away from [that settlement] and took Hātim's daughter among the captives. She was brought to the Messenger of God among the captives of Tayyi' and he received the news of my flight to Syria. Hātim's daughter was put in the enclosure by the door of the mosque where the captives were detained.<sup>451</sup> When the Messenger of God passed by her she went to him and, being an intelligent woman, said, "O Messenger of God, [my] father is dead, and the man who should speak for me has gone away. Grant me a favor and God will grant one for you." "Who is the man who should speak for you?" he asked. When she replied that it was 'Adī b. Hātim he exclaimed, "The one who has fled from God and His Messenger." Then he walked away and left her. On the following day he passed by her<sup>452</sup> while she was in despair. A man behind [the Prophet] motioned her to go to him and speak (to him). She went to him and said, "O Messenger of God, [my] father is dead, and the man who should speak for me is absent. Be kind to me and God will be kind to you." He replied, "I have done so, but do not rush to leave until you find someone of your own people whom you can trust and take you to your country, then call on me." She states: I asked about the man who had motioned to me to speak and was told that it was 'Ali b. Abī Tālib. I stayed until some riders from Balī or Qudā'ah<sup>453</sup> came. What I wanted was to go to my brother in Syria. I went to the Messenger of God and said, "O Messenger of God, a group of my people who are trustworthy and reputable have arrived." He provided me with clothing, put me on a mount and gave me money, and I departed with them until I arrived in Syria.

450. As in C, Ibn Ishāq, and Yāqūt (*Mu'jam*, II, 185). Text, and Ibn Hishām: al-Hūshiyah. Al-Jūshiyah is a place between Najd and Syria.

451. Wāqidi, *Maghāzi*, III, 988, states that she was lodged with Ramlah bt. al-Hārith.

452. Hisch., Ibn Ishāq: And exactly the same thing happened. On the third day he passed by her and she was in despair. Wāqidi, *Maghāzi*, III, 989, states that her request was granted on the fourth day.

453. A South Arabian tribe. Kalbī, *Jamharah*, 274, 279; Ibn Hazm, *Jamharah*, 440.

[1709]

'Adī said: By God, I was sitting among my family when I saw a woman riding in a howdah pointing to me and leading her way to us. I exclaimed, "[Is it] Hātim's daughter?" and it was she. When she got to me she reviled me, saying, "You, the unjust one who broke with your relatives, you carried away your family and children and abandoned your father's (little) daughter<sup>454</sup> and honor." I replied, "O [my] little sister, do not say anything except good, for by God, I have no excuse. I did do what you stated." Then she dismounted and stayed with me. Because she was a prudent woman, I asked her what she thought of [the Prophet]. She replied, "By God, I think that you should join him forthwith, for if the man is a prophet, then the one who joins him first will have an exquisite virtue; and if he is a king, you will not be humbled in the glory of the Yemen, you being what you are." I said, "By God, this is a good suggestion," and so I left until I came to the Messenger of God in Medina. I went to him while he was in his mosque and greeted him, and he asked who I was. When I said that I was 'Adī b. Hātim, he got up and took me to his house. By God, as he was leading me an old feeble woman ran to him and asked him to stop. He stopped for a long while as she spoke to him of her needs. I said to myself, "By God, this is no king." Then he continued until we entered his house, reached out for a leather cushion stuffed with palm fibers and threw it to me, saying, "Sit on this." I said, "No, rather you sit on it." He said, "No, you," and so I sat on it and he sat on the ground. I said to myself, "By God, this is not the way a king conducts himself." Then he said "Now, 'Adī b.

[1710]

Hātim, are you not half Christian and half Sabaean (*rakūsī*)?"<sup>455</sup> I replied, "Yes." "Didn't you go among your people collecting the fourth part of their spoils?"<sup>456</sup> he asked. When I admitted it, he said, "But that is not lawful for you in your religion." I said, "Certainly, it is true," and realized that he was a prophet sent by

454. The diminutive form is used to express endearment. Hisch., *Ibn Ishāq: Baqiyah* [i.e., remainder, survival] of your father.

455. A term applied to a person who professes a religion which is a mixture of Christianity and the Sabaeans (*al-Šābi'ah*), see *Tabarī*, above, I, 1657, n. 38. *Ibn Manzūr, Lisān*, s.v. r-k-s.

456. According to the Arab lexicographers, pre-Islamic practice was to allot one-quarter of the booty to the leader as commander-in-chief. It was also the South Arabian practice. In Islam, one-fifth of the booty was set aside for God before the general division. *Lane, Lexicon*, s.v. r-b'; *Beeston, Warfare*, 15.

God who knows what is not known. Then he said, "O 'Adi b. Hātim, perhaps it is the poverty that you see which prevents you from embracing this religion, but, by God, [so much] wealth will soon flow among them that there will not be enough people to take it. Perhaps it is because you see how few they are and how many are their enemies which prevents you from joining this religion. But by God, you will hear of a woman traveling on her camel from al-Qādisiyyah<sup>457</sup> to visit this House [i.e., the Ka'bah]<sup>458</sup> without fearing [any one] except God. Perhaps it is because you see that others have kingship and power, but, by God, soon you will hear that the white castles of Babylon (*Bābil*)<sup>459</sup> have been conquered." Then I embraced Islam.

'Adi b. Hātim used to say that two things [mentioned above by the Prophet] occurred and that the third remained, but, by God, that too would certainly come to pass. I have seen the white castles of Babylon being conquered, and I have seen a woman traveling on her camel from al-Qādisiyyah to this House to make the pilgrimage without any fear. By God, the third will happen and wealth will flow until there will not be anyone to take it.

**Al-Wāqidī:** In this year, the deputation of the Banū Tamīm<sup>460</sup> came to the Messenger of God.

Ibn Humayd—Salamah—Ibn Ishāq—Āsim b. 'Umar b. Qatādah and 'Abdallāh b. Abi Bakr: 'Uṭārid b. Hājib b. Zurārah b. 'Udas<sup>461</sup> al-Tamīmī came to the Messenger of God in a large deputation with the nobility of Tamim. Among them were al-Aqra' b. Hābis; Zibriqān b. Badr al-Tamīmī, one of the Banū Sa'd;

[1711]

457. A place southwest of al-Hirah and south-southwest of where al-Kūfah was later founded. It is famous as the site of the Muslim victory over the Sāsānids between 14/635 and 16/637. *EP*, s.v. al-Kādisiyya.

458. *EP*, s.v. Ka'ba.

459. *EP*, s.v. Bābil. Ibn Ishāq, *Kitāb al-Mubtada'*, 267–68, gives different versions of what the Prophet said to 'Adi. One version states: O 'Adi b. Hātim, the last hour will come only when the treasures of Kisrā and Qayṣar would have been conquered . . . the last hour will come only when a woman would travel on her camel, from al-Hirah [to Mecca] to circumambulate the Ka'bah, without protection . . . the last hour will come only when a man carrying a sack of money would roam [about the country] and would not find anyone who would take it.

460. An Arab tribe. *EP*, s.v. Tamim. The following account of a challenge to a boasting competition, including the poem of Hassān, seem to be the product of later years. See Arafat, "An interpretation"; Monroe, "Poetry."

461. Ibn Hazm (*Jamharah*, 232): 'Udus. He was from the clan of Banū 'Abdallāh b. Dārim of the Tamim.

'Amr b. al-Ahtam; al-Hutāt b. so-and-so,<sup>462</sup> Nu'aym b. Zayd,<sup>463</sup> and Qays b. 'Āsim, a brother of the Banū Sa'd. With them was 'Uyaynah b. Hiṣn b. Hudhayfah al-Fazārī.<sup>464</sup>

Al-Aqra' b. Hābis and 'Uyaynah b. Hiṣn had been with the Messenger of God when Mecca was conquered<sup>465</sup> and <sup>466</sup> al-Ta'if was besieged. When the deputation of the Banū Tamīm came, they were with them. As the deputation entered the mosque, they called out to the Messenger of God from behind the [inner] apartments, "Come out to us, O Muhammad."<sup>467</sup> That loud call of theirs annoyed the Messenger of God, and he came out. They said, "O Muhammad, we came to compete with you in boasting, so allow our poet and orator [to start]." He replied, "Yes I permit your orator, let him speak." 'Uṭārid b. Hājib stood up and said: "Praise be to God who granted us His favors and who is worthy of praise. [It is He] who has made us kings and has granted us great wealth with which we are generous, and has made us the mightiest people of the East, the greatest in number, and best armed; so who among the people is our equal? Are we not the leaders of men and their superiors? Let him who competes with us enumerate what we have enumerated. Had we wished we could have said more, but we are too modest<sup>468</sup> to speak much of what He has

462. Ibn Ishāq: Al-Habhab b. Yazid. Ibn Hishām: Al-Hutāt b. Yazid. Ibn Shabbah (*Tarikh*, II, 527): Al-Huthāt b. Yazid. For their genealogy, see Ibn Hishām, *Sīrah*, IV, 206–7.

463. Ibn Shabbah adds: Qays b. al-Hārith.

464. There were more than eighty people in the delegation. The reason of their coming is explained by Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, I/2, 404; II/1, 116, as follows:

The Tamimis had attempted to prevent the Khuzā'ah tribe from paying the alms to the Prophet's agent. Although the Khuzā'ites were able to drive the Tamimis away, the Prophet's agent fled back to Medina. Subsequently, the Prophet sent a force of fifty horsemen under the leadership of 'Uyaynah b. Hiṣn to punish the Tamimis. In a surprise raid, 'Uyaynah captured about fifty men, women, and children and brought them back to Medina. It was then that the delegation came. When their women and children saw them, they began to cry. This explains the sense of urgency and impatience displayed by the delegation in their attempt to reach the Prophet.

465. Ibn Ishāq adds: And at the battle of Hunayn.

466. Ibn Shabbah adds: [The battle of] Hunayn [was fought], and.

467. The delegation on its arrival in Medina passed by the Tamimī prisoners. When the women and children saw them, they burst into tears, hence the delegation went hurriedly to the mosque calling the Prophet from behind the inner apartments.

468. C and Ibn Shabbah: We are afraid to elongate.

granted us, and we are known [for that].<sup>469</sup> Now, I will say that you may bring forward the like of our speech and anything better than ours." Then he sat down.

The Messenger of God said to Thābit b. Qays b. Shammās,<sup>470</sup> a brother of Balhārīth<sup>471</sup> b. al-Khazraj, "Get up and answer the man's speech." Thābit got up and said:<sup>472</sup> "Praise belongs to God who created heaven and earth and carried out His command therein, and His knowledge encompasses His Throne. Nothing exists but by His bounty. By His power He made us kings and chose the best of His creation as a prophet who is the noblest in lineage, the most truthful in speech, and the best in noble descent. He sent down to him His book and entrusted him with His creatures. He was the chosen one of God from the worlds. Then he summoned people to faith, and the Emigrants from his people and his kinsfolk believed in the Messenger of God. They are the most noble people in lineage, the most prominent, and the best in deeds. Then the first of creation to answer and respond to God when the Messenger of God summoned them were ourselves. We are the Helpers of God and the viziers of His Messenger, and we fight people until they believe in God. He who believes in God and His Messenger has protected his life and possessions [from us]; as for one who disbelieves, we will fight him forever in the cause of God and killing him is a small matter to us. I say this and ask God's forgiveness for myself and the believing men and the believing women. Peace be upon you."

Then they said, "O Muḥammad, permit our poet [to speak]," and he did. Al-Zibriqān b. Badr got up and said:

We are the nobles, no tribe can match us,  
from us are the kings and in<sup>473</sup> our midst houses  
of worship are built.

How many tribes have we plundered and subjugated,  
for excellence in glory is to be sought after!

469. Addition from Hisch. and Ibn Shabbah.

470. He was the Prophet's orator and a scribe. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, I/2, 35, 40, 82; II/1, 46, 116; III/1, 284; V, 22; VIII, 83, 262, 326.

471. Ibn Ishāq, Ibn Shabbah: Banū al-Hārith.

472. Ibn Shabbah gives a slightly different version of Thābit's speech.

473. Ibn Hishām: And we collect the fourth [of the spoils].

- [1713] In times of drought when no tattered clouds are seen,  
we feed meat to the hungry in our banquet halls.  
You can see leaders coming to us humbly from every land,  
and we feed them.<sup>474</sup>  
We are delighted to slaughter a herd of camels for our guests,  
when they come to us they eat their fill.  
You will see not a tribe whom we challenge,  
except in submission or with its head nearly cut off.  
We scorn others but none scorns us,  
similarly, we are exalted in pride.  
He who would challenge us [in these matters] knows us,  
so he withdraws his challenge, and the news is listened to  
seriously.

Hassān b. Thābit<sup>475</sup> was absent [at the time], so the Messenger of God sent for him. Ḥassān said: When the runner came and informed me that the Messenger of God had called me to answer the Banū Tamīm's poet, I went to him while reciting.<sup>476</sup>

We protected the Messenger of God when he settled down  
among us,<sup>477</sup> whether Ma'add liked it or not.<sup>478</sup>  
We defended him when he dwelt among our houses,<sup>479</sup>  
with our swords against every transgressor and  
oppressor, in a unique house whose glory and wealth<sup>480</sup>  
is in Jābiyat al-Jawlān<sup>481</sup> among the foreigners.  
Is glory [nothing] but the reiteration of domination  
and generosity, and the dignity of kings and the enduring  
of great misfortunes?

474. Ibn Hishām: And we are obeyed.

475. The "Poet Laureate" of the Prophet was a Khazrajī and died ca. 40/659. *EP*, s.v. Ḥassān b. Thābit; Sezgin, *GAS*, II, 289–92; Brockelmann, *GAL*, I, 37; SI, 67.

476. See *Dīwān* of *Ḥassān*, I, 109–10.

477. *Dīwān*: We aided and sheltered the Prophet Muhammad.

478. As in Hisch., Ibn Ishāq, and *Dīwān*. Text: From every Ma'addī [Arab] tyrant and oppressor. Ma'add, son of 'Adnān, a descendant of Ismā'il, the son of Ibrāhīm, is considered as the ancestor of the Northern Arabs. Ibn Ḥazm, *Jamharah*, 9.

479. *Dīwān*: We aided him when he dwelt among us.

480. *Dīwān*: In a unique tribe whose source and honor.

481. A village in the district of Damascus toward al-Jawlān. Bakrī, *Mu'jam*, II, 355; Yāqūt, *Mu'jam*, II, 91–92; he cites the above verses.

When I came to the Messenger of God and the tribal poet [of Tamîm] had recited what he recited, I replied in the same pattern and rhyme.

When al-Zibriqân b. Badr had finished his recitation, the Messenger of God said to Hassân, "Arise, O Hassân, and answer the man for what he has said." Hassân recited:<sup>482</sup>

The nobles are from Fîhr<sup>483</sup> and their sister tribes;  
they have shown a way of life to be followed.

Everyone who fears God

and does all manner of good commends them.<sup>484</sup>

They are a people such that when they fight they harm  
their enemies, and when they help their adherents  
they benefit.

That is their nature and not a newly acquired habit;  
be informed<sup>485</sup> that the worst of personal traits is  
innovation.

If there are people who surpassed them and came after  
them, then every preceding people would  
have precedence.

People do not repair what their hands have destroyed in  
defense, nor do they destroy what they have repaired.

If they compete with others, they win by virtue of their  
precedence; if weighed against the people of glory  
and generosity, their scales are heavy.

Chaste are those whose chastity is mentioned in  
revelation; they are not rapacious<sup>486</sup> nor can greed  
harm them.

They are not stingy with an act of generosity toward a  
neighbor,<sup>487</sup> nor are they touched by the stain of  
covetousness.

When we declare war on a tribe, we do not creep  
silently, like a calf crawling to the wild cow.

[1714]

[1715]

482. See *Dîwân* of Hassân I, 101–3.

483. He is the ancestor of Quraysh. Ibn Hazm, *Jamharah*, 12.

484. *Dîwân*: Is pleased with them and with the mission they have begun.

485. *Dîwân*: Indeed.

486. As in the *Dîwân*. Text: Not disposed by nature.

487. *Dîwân*: A client.

We stand tall when the claws of war reach us,  
when the hordes are humbled by its nails.

They do not boast<sup>488</sup> when they overpower their enemy,  
and if they are beaten, they neither languish nor  
despair.

In battle, when death is at hand,  
they are like lions of Bishah<sup>489</sup> with crooked claws.

[1716] Take what they give you willingly when they are angered,  
and think not about what they withheld.

To fight them is to plunge into poison<sup>490</sup> and ruin,  
so do not antagonize them.

How noble are a people who<sup>491</sup> have the Messenger of God  
in their midst, when [other] factions and parties  
become divided!<sup>492</sup>

I dedicate my eulogy to them from my heart,  
aided in its beloved task by an eloquent and ready  
tongue,

For they are the best of all people  
in matters both grave and gay.

When Ḥassān b. Thābit had finished his speech,<sup>493</sup> al-Aqra' b. Ḥabis said,<sup>494</sup> "By my father, this man has a helper. Indeed, his orator and his poet are better than ours and their voices are louder<sup>495</sup> than ours." When they were through, they embraced Islam and the Messenger of God gave them valuable gifts. [Before com-

488. *Dīwān*: They do not rejoice.

489. As in the *Dīwān*. Text and Ibn Ishāq: Halyah. Bishah, a place about five days' journey from Mecca toward Yemen, is known for its lions. Bakri, *Mu'jam*, I, 293–94; Yāqūt, *Mu'jam*, I, 529. For its topography see Philby, *Arabian Highlands*, 28ff.

490. *Dīwān*: A bitter tree. A kind of tree when pressed issues a juice resembling milk which spirits into the eyes and produces an effect like that of a flame of fire and weakens the sight.

491. *Dīwān*: Whose leader is the Messenger of God.

492. Hisch. and Ibn Ishāq: And parties differ.

493. For additional poetry, see Ibn Hishām, *Sīrah*, IV, 211–12.

494. Ibn Shabbah's version states that both al-Aqra' and 'Uyaynah consulted with each other before accepting Islam. The report further states that both of them were among those "whose hearts were to be reconciled," hence the Messenger of God gave them a hundred camels each. Next, 'Abbās b. Mirdās's verses are cited. It is obvious that this passage is an interpolation, see Ṭabarī, above, I, 1681 (distribution of the booty of Ḥunayn).

495. Ibn Ishāq: Sweeter.

ing to the Messenger of God] they had left 'Amr b. al-Ahtam [who was the youngest of them]<sup>496</sup> behind with their mounts. Qays b. 'Āsim, who hated 'Amr b. al-Ahtam, said, "O Messenger of God, there is a man among us with our saddle bags who is but a young boy," and he belittled him. The Messenger of God, however, gave him the same as he had given the others. When 'Amr heard that Qays b. 'Āsim had [belittled him], he satirized him, saying:

When you defamed me to the Prophet you exposed  
yourself; you neither spoke the truth nor hit the mark.  
If you hate us, well, Byzantine<sup>497</sup> is your origin,  
but the Byzantines do not harbor hatred  
against the Arabs.

We have ruled and our authority is ancient, but yours<sup>498</sup>  
is left behind at the root of the rump and the tail.

Ibn Humayd—Salamah—Muhammad b. Ishāq—Yazid b. Rūmān: Concerning them, God revealed: "Surely those who call unto you from behind the private apartments [i.e., the Banū Tamim], most of them have no sense."<sup>499</sup> This is a preferable reading.

Al-Waqidi: In this year, 'Abdallāh b. Ubayy b. Salūl died. He got sick during the last days of Shawwāl and died in Dhū al-Qa'dah. His illness lasted for twenty days.<sup>500</sup>

In this year, a letter from the kings of Ḥimyar<sup>501</sup> [announcing] their acceptance of Islam arrived to the Messenger of God with

496. Addition from Ibn Ishāq.

497. Rūm in Arabic meant the land of the Rhomaeans or Byzantines. *E/I*, s.v. Rūm.

498. Ibn Ishāq:

We ruled you voluntarily but your authority  
is sitting on the tail and showing its teeth.

499. Qur'an 49:4. Wāhidī, *Asbāb*, 274–77; Tabarī, *Majma'*, V, 129–30; Nöldeke-Schwally, *Geschichte*, I, 220; Blachère, *Coran*, 548.

500. Although he was the chief opponent, the Prophet, in a conciliatory spirit, visited him before he died and attended his funeral. Some Muslims, especially 'Umar did not like it and protested to the Prophet. Wāqidī, *Maghāzī*, III, 1057–60; Ibn Shabbah, *Ta'rīkh*, III, 863–64; Lings, *Muhammad*, 321–22; Rodinson, *Mahomet*, 315.

501. Ḥimyar was one of the last ancient southwest Arabian kingdoms which ruled Yemen before its conquest by the Muslims. They claim Qahtāni descent. Kalbi, *Jamharah*, 176, 274; Ibn Hazm, *Jamharah*, 432–38; Shahid, "Pre-Islamic Arabia," 6f.

their messenger in the month of Ramadān. [Those kings were] al-Hārith b. 'Abd Kulāl, Nu'aym b. 'Abd Kulāl, and al-Nu'mān, prince of Dhū Ru'ayn.<sup>502</sup>

[1718] Ibn Humayd—Salamah—Muhammad b. Ishāq—'Abdallāh b. Abī Bakr: On his return from Tabūk, a letter from the kings of Ḥimyar [announcing] their Islam came to the Messenger of God with their messenger. [They were] al-Hārith b. 'Abd Kulāl, Nu'aym b. 'Abd Kulāl, and al-Nu'mān, prince of Dhū Ru'ayn, Hamdān,<sup>503</sup> and Ma'āfir.<sup>504</sup> Zur'ah Dhū Yazan<sup>505</sup> sent Mālik b. Murrah al-Rahāwī with [news of] their acceptance of Islam and their abandonment of polytheism and its followers.

Then the Messenger of God wrote to them:<sup>506</sup> "In the name of God, the Compassionate, the Merciful. From Muhammad, the Messenger of God, and His Prophet to al-Hārith b. 'Abd Kulāl, Nu'aym b. 'Abd Kulāl, and al-Nu'mān, prince of Dhū Ru'ayn, Hamdān, and Ma'āfir. I praise God to you. There is no God except Him.

"Now then: Your messenger reached us on our return from Byzantine territory and met us in Medina. He conveyed your message and told us your news and informed us of your [acceptance of] Islam and your killing of the polytheists. Indeed, God has guided you with His guidance. If you [wish to] do well and obey God and His Messenger [you must] perform prayers, pay the zakāt tax,<sup>507</sup> give God's fifth of booty,<sup>508</sup> the share of His Mes-

<sup>502.</sup> It is a name both of a district and a clan in the southwest of Yemen. Hamdāni, *Ṣifat*, I, 90, 98, 101. Cf. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, I/2, 20, 84; V, 386–87.

<sup>503.</sup> It is a name both of a district and a well-known large Arab tribe of Yemen. Hamdāni, *Ṣifat*, I, *passim*; *El*<sup>2</sup>, s.v. Hamdān.

<sup>504.</sup> A district at the beginning of the Sarāt mountains in Yemen. The inhabitants of that district are known as al-Ma'āfir b. Ya'fur. Hamdāni, *Ṣifat*, I, 67, 68, 71, 98, 99.

<sup>505.</sup> A Ḥimyarī king. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, V, 386.

<sup>506.</sup> A transcription of this letter on parchment in Ḥimyarite characters was discovered in Beirut. See Cohen, "Manuscrit"; Hamidullāh, *Majmū'ah*, 180–84.

<sup>507.</sup> It is one of the principal obligations of Islam. This tax is levied on definite kinds of property and is distributed among eight categories of persons as stated in the Qur'ān 9:60, *El*<sup>1</sup>, s.v. Zakāt; Tabrizi, *Mishkāt*, I, 557–611; *Mishkat* [trans. Robson], I, 371–416.

<sup>508.</sup> "Know that with anything you may acquire as spoils, a fifth of it belongs to God and the Messenger, close relatives and orphans, paupers and the wayfarer, if you believe in God and what We have sent down to Our servant . . ." Qur'ān 8:41. *Maghniyyah*, *Fiqh*, 220–23.

senger, his selected portion (*safiyy*),<sup>509</sup> and alms (*sadaqah*)<sup>510</sup> to the poor, which is incumbent on the faithful. [The required *zakāt* is:] from land one tenth of that watered by springs and rain, and one twentieth of that watered by the leathern bucket;<sup>511</sup> from camels, a milch camel for every forty camels, and a young male camel for every thirty camels; a sheep for every five camels; two sheep for every ten camels;<sup>512</sup> one cow for every forty cows; a bull calf or a cow calf for every thirty cows,<sup>513</sup> a sheep for every forty sheep at pasture.<sup>514</sup> This is God's ordinance, which He has made obligatory on the faithful with regard to alms. If anyone adds more thereto, it is to his credit. He who professes this and bears witness to his Islam and helps the faithful against the polytheists is one of the faithful with his rights and obligations as theirs, and has the protection of God and His Messenger. If a Jew or a Christian embraces Islam, then<sup>515</sup> he has the same rights and obligations as the faithful. He who holds fast to his religion, Judaism or Christianity, is not to be tempted from<sup>516</sup> it. It is incumbent on him to pay the poll tax: for every adult, male or female, free or slave, one full dinār (denarius),<sup>517</sup> or its value in *al-ma'āfir*,<sup>518</sup> or its substitute in clothes. He who pays that to the Messenger of God has the protection of God and His Messenger, and he who holds back from it is the enemy of God and His Messenger.

[1719]

<sup>509</sup>. It signifies the portion of the spoils, which the chief chooses for himself before the division. It could be anything from armor to a horse, a camel, or a slave, and it is taken out before the *khums*. *Balādhūri*, *Ansāb*, I, 514–18; *Lane, Lexicon*, s.v. *s-f-y*.

<sup>510</sup>. See *Ṭabarī*, above, I, 1686, n. 290.

<sup>511</sup>. *Bukhārī*, *Ṣaḥīḥ*, I, 259; *Tabrīzī*, *Mishkāt*, I, 567; *Mishkat* (trans. Robson), I, 380.

<sup>512</sup>. *Bukhārī*, *Ṣaḥīḥ*, I, 252–53; *Tabrīzī*, *Mishkāt*, I, 565–67; *Mishkat* (trans. Robson), I, 378–79.

<sup>513</sup>. *Bukhārī*, *Ṣaḥīḥ*, I, 254.

<sup>514</sup>. *Ibid.*, I, 252–53; *Tabrīzī*, *Mishkāt*, I, 565–67; *Mishkat* (trans. Robson), I, 378–79.

<sup>515</sup>. Hisch. and Ibn Iṣhāq add: He is among the faithful and.

<sup>516</sup>. Hisch. and Ibn Iṣhāq: He should not be dissuaded from it.

<sup>517</sup>. *EP*, s.v. *Dinār*.

<sup>518</sup>. C: *Al-Ma'āfirī*. *Ma'āfir*, without the relative adjective ending in *yā'*, is also used meaning *Ma'āfirī* cloth. *Ma'āfir* enjoyed a certain reputation as weavers. According to legend, *Tubba' As'ad Kāmil* was the first to cover the Ka'bah with *Ma'āfir* cloths. The poll tax of a dinār of full weight of the *Ma'āfir* standard could also be paid in articles of clothing of that *Ma'āfir* material. *Ibn Manzūr*, *Lisān*, s.v. *'-f-r*; *EISupp*, s.v. *Ma'āfir*.

"Now then: The Messenger of God, Muhammad the Prophet, has sent to Zur'ah Dhū Yazan that when my messengers Mu'ādh b. Jabal, 'Abdallāh b. Zayd,<sup>519</sup> Mālik b. 'Ubādah,<sup>520</sup> 'Uqbah b. Namir,<sup>521</sup> and Mālik b. Murrah<sup>522</sup> and their companions come to you, I commend them to your good care. Collect the alms and the poll tax from your districts and hand them over to my messengers. Their leader is Mu'ādh b. Jabal, and let him not return unless he is satisfied. Muhammad witnesses that there is no god but God and that he is His servant and messenger.

[1720] "Mālik B. Murrah al-Rahāwī has reported to me that you were the first from Ḥimyar to embrace Islam and that you have killed<sup>523</sup> the polytheists, so rejoice at your good fortune. I order you to treat Ḥimyar well. Do not be treacherous and do not forsake each other. The Messenger of God is the master of [both] your rich and your poor. Alms are neither lawful to Muhammad nor to his family; it is a purifying tax to be spent on poor Muslims and the wayfarer. Mālik has conveyed only the necessary information but has kept [others'] secrets to himself, so I order you to treat him well. I have sent to you some of the most virtuous of my people, the most religious and the most learned, so I order you to treat them well, for he [i.e., Mu'ādh b. Jabal] will be accountable for them. May the Peace, Mercy, and Blessings of God be on you."

Al-Wāqidi: In this year, the deputation of Bahrā'<sup>524</sup> [consisting of] thirteen men came to the Messenger of God, and they stayed with al-Miqdād b. 'Amr.<sup>525</sup>

In this year, the deputation of the Banū al-Bakkā'<sup>526</sup> came.

<sup>519.</sup> 'Abdallāh b. Zayd al-Khazrajī was the one who was inspired with the call to prayer (*adhān*). He also acted several times as a scribe of the Prophet and died in 32/652–53. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, III/2, 87.

<sup>520.</sup> Ibid., V, 387.

<sup>521.</sup> Ibid.

<sup>522.</sup> Ibid., VI, 18; his name is given as Mālik b. Murārah al-Ruhāwī.

<sup>523.</sup> Ḥamidullāh (*Majmū'ah*, 182): You have deserted.

<sup>524.</sup> They are the Banū Bahrā' b. 'Amr b. al-Hāfi, a clan of Quḍā'ah. Ibn Hazm, *Jamharah*, 440–41; Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, 1/2, 66.

<sup>525.</sup> He was a Bahrāni from South Arabia and was the only (or one of the two) Muslim horseman at Badr. He was one of seven early converts and is considered one of the four pillars of the early Shī'ah and died in 33/653–54. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, III/1, 114–16; Ibn 'Abd al-Barr, *Iṣṭi'āb*, IV, 1480; Jafri, *Origins*, 52.

<sup>526.</sup> A clan of the Banū 'Amir. The delegation consisted of three people. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, I/2, 47–48; Ibn Hazm, *Jamharah*, 151.

In this year, the deputation of the Banū Fazārah<sup>527</sup> arrived. They were some ten men. Among them was Khārijah b. Ḥiṣn.

In this year, the Messenger of God mourned the loss of the Negus (*al-Najāhi*) who died in the month of Rajab, in the year 9/630.

In this year, Abū Bakr made the pilgrimage with the people. Abū Bakr departed from Medina with three hundred people and took with him five camels [for sacrifice], while the Messenger of God sent twenty camels [for sacrifice].<sup>528</sup> 'Abd al-Rahmān b. 'Awf<sup>529</sup> also made the pilgrimage and sacrificed.

The Messenger of God sent 'Ali b. Abī Ṭalib immediately after Abū Bakr had left. He overtook him at al-'Arj,<sup>530</sup> and ('Ali) read the declaration of dispensation (*al-Barā'ah*)<sup>531</sup> on the day of sacrifice at al-'Aqabah.<sup>532</sup>

I have received an account on the authority of Muhammad b. al-Husayn<sup>533</sup>—Ahmad b. al-Mufaddal<sup>534</sup>—Asbāt<sup>535</sup>—al-Suddī.<sup>536</sup> When these verses [1 to 40 from *Sūrat al-Barā'ah*] were revealed, the Messenger of God sent them with Abū Bakr and appointed him as leader of the pilgrimage. After Abū Bakr had reached al-Shajarah of Dhū al-Hulayfah,<sup>537</sup> 'Ali followed him and took those verses

[1721]

<sup>527.</sup> They are the Banū Fazārah b. Dhubyān b. Baghid b. Rayth b. Ghatafān. Ibn Ḥazm, *Jamharah*, 255.

<sup>528.</sup> For details, see Wāqidi, *Magħāzi*, III, 1076–78.

<sup>529.</sup> He was a prominent early convert from the Banū Zuhrah of Quraysh. He was one of the six members of the *shūrā* who played a key role in the selection of 'Uthmān and he died in 31/652. *EI*, s.v. 'Abd al-Rahmān; Jafri, *Origins*, 58–79.

<sup>530.</sup> A village near Medina on the way to Mecca. Bakrī, *Mu'jam*, III, 930–31; Yāqūt, *Mu'jam*, IV, 98–99.

<sup>531.</sup> According to C. Text adds: On him. See Qur'ān, *sūrah 9*. The title of the Dispensation [or Release] comes from the opening verse which states: "Dispensation [comes] from God and His Messenger for those idolaters with whom you have made a treaty." The alternate title of Repentance is found in verses 5, 11, and 103. This episode later became a cause of conflict between the Shi'is and the Sunnis. Tendentious reporting is reflected in the following report of al-Suddī.

<sup>532.</sup> A place about 4 km from Mecca where the pilgrims throw pebbles. See Tabarī, above I, 1699, n. 381.

<sup>533.</sup> Muhammad b. al-Husayn b. Ibrāhim al-Āmirī al-Baghdādī died in 261/874–75. Ibn Hajar, *Tahdhīb*, IX, 121–22.

<sup>534.</sup> Ahmad b. al-Mufaddal al-Qurashi died in 214/829–30 or 215/830–31. *Ibid.*, I, 81.

<sup>535.</sup> He is Asbāt b. Naṣr al-Hamdānī. *Ibid.*, I, 211–12.

<sup>536.</sup> Ismā'il b. 'Abd al-Rahmān al-Suddī died in 127/744–45. *Ibid.*, I, 313–14.

<sup>537.</sup> A place about 12 km from Medina. Bakrī, *Mu'jam*, II, 464–65; Yāqūt, *Mu'jam*, III, 325.

from him, so Abū Bakr came back to the Prophet<sup>538</sup> and said, "O Messenger of God, may you be ransomed with my father and mother! Was anything revealed about me?" "No," he replied, "but no one except me or someone from my family should communicate [the declaration of dispensation]."<sup>539</sup> Aren't you pleased, O Abū Bakr, that you were with me in the cave,<sup>540</sup> and that you shall be my companion at the cistern?<sup>541</sup> "Yes, indeed, O Messenger of God," he answered, and left as the head of the pilgrims, while 'Alī announced the declaration of immunity. 'Alī stood up on the day of sacrifice<sup>542</sup> and announced, saying: "No polytheist shall come near the Holy Mosque after this year,<sup>543</sup> and no one shall circumambulate the House [i.e., the Ka'bah] naked. Those who have a covenant between themselves and the Messenger of God will have his covenant until [the end of] its term.<sup>544</sup> These are the days of eating and drinking [i.e., celebration]. God will allow only the one who is Muslim to enter Paradise." [The polytheists] said, "We declare ourselves free from your covenant and that of your cousin except to strike." Then the polytheists went back blaming each other and saying, "What will you do? The Quraysh have accepted Islam, and so you had better embrace Islam."

I have received an account on the authority of al-Hārith b. Muḥammad<sup>545</sup>—'Abd al-'Azīz b. Abān<sup>546</sup>—Abū Ma'shar<sup>547</sup>—Muḥammad b. Ka'b al-Quraṣī and others: The Messenger of God sent Abū Bakr as a leader of the pilgrimage in the year 9/631 and sent 'Alī b. Abī Ṭālib to read thirty or forty verses from *Sūrat al-*

538. According to both Ibn Ishaq (*Sīrah*, IV, 188–90), and Wāqidī (*Maghāzi*, III, 1077), Abū Bakr did not return to Medina. See also Mas'ūdi, *Mu'riji*, II, 297; *idem.* *Tanbīh*, 237; Lings, *Muhammad*, 323.

539. Balādhuri's (*Ansāb*, I, 383) report ends here.

540. The reference is to the Qur'an 9:40.

541. Tabrīzī, *Mishkāt*, III, 222; *Mishkat* (trans. Robson), II, 1322–23.

542. The tenth of Dhū al-Hijjah is called *yawm al-nahr* (the day of sacrifice) when animals are sacrificed. A rock near 'Aqabah was held to be the most auspicious site for sacrifice, but sacrifice could be made anywhere in Minā.

543. Qur'an 9:28; Blachère, *Coran*, 216.

544. Qur'an 9:4; Blachère, *Coran*, 212–13.

545. Al-Hārith b. Muḥammad b. Abī Usāmah al-Tamīmī died in 282/895–96. Dhahabi, *Tadhkīrah*, II, 619–20; *idem*, *Mīzān*, I, 442–43.

546. 'Abd al-'Azīz b. Abān al-Umawī al-Kūfī died in 207/822–23. Ibn Hajar, *Tahdhīb*, VI, 329–31.

547. Abū Ma'shar Ziyād b. Kulayb al-Tamīmī al-Kūfī died ca. 120/738. *Ibid.*, III, 382.

*Barā'ah* to the people, giving the polytheists four months to travel in the land. 'Ali read the proclamation of dispensation on the day of 'Arafah<sup>548</sup> thus giving the polytheists [the remaining] twenty days of Dhū al-Hijjah, and the months of Muḥarram, Ṣafar, Rabi' I, and ten days of Rabi' II. He also read it to them in their settlements, stating that no polytheist would be allowed for the pilgrimage after that year and that no one would be allowed to circumambulate the House naked.

Abū Ja'far [al-Ṭabarī]: In this year, alms (*al-Ṣadaqāt*) were made obligatory, and the Messenger of God dispatched his agents to collect them.<sup>549</sup>

[1722] In this year, the following verse was revealed: "Take alms from their wealth to purify them."<sup>550</sup> The reason for its revelation was the story about the affair of Tha'labah b. Ḥāṭib mentioned by Abū Amāmah al-Bāhilī.<sup>551</sup>

Al-Waqīdī: In this year, the Messenger of God's daughter Umm Kulthūm<sup>552</sup> died in Sha'bān, and she was washed by Asmā' bt. 'Umays and Ṣafiyyah bt. 'Abd al-Muṭtalib. It is said that she was washed by the *Anṣārī* women, among whom was a woman called Umm 'Atīyyah. Abū Ṭalḥah descended into her grave.

In this year, the deputation of Tha'labah b. Munqidh came.<sup>553</sup>

In this year, the deputation of Sa'd Hudhaym<sup>554</sup> came.

Ibn Ḥumayd—Salamah—Ibn Ishāq—Salamah b. Kuhayl<sup>555</sup> and

548. 'Arafah or 'Arafāt is a plain about 21 km east of Mecca and is the site of the central ceremonies of the annual pilgrimage to Mecca. The day of 'Arafah is the ninth of Dhū al-Hijjah. On that day, the pilgrims halt in the plain of 'Arafah, in front of the *jabal al-rahmah* and pray, without which the *hajj* is not valid. The halt lasts from the moment after midday until sunset. *EI*<sup>2</sup>, s.v. 'Arafāt; *EI*<sup>2</sup>, s.v. al-Hadīj.

549. Wāqīdī, *Maghāzī*, III, 1084–85.

550. Qur'ān 9:103; Blachère, *Coran*, 227.

551. Tha'labah b. Ḥāṭib al-Anṣārī, who was a poor man, once requested the Prophet to pray for him, saying that if he became rich he would look after the needy. After he became rich, he changed and even refused to give alms. For details, see Wāhīdī, *Asbāb*, 175–76.

552. Mas'ūdī, *Murūj*, II, 297; al-Dhahabī, *Ibar*, I, 5; *EI*<sup>1</sup>, s.v. Umm Kulthūm. See Tabarī, below I, 1767, n. 876; idem, *Dhuyūl*, 498.

553. They were four people, and they embraced Islam. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, I/2, 43.

554. A clan of Quḍā'ah. Ibn Ḥazm, *Jamharah*, 447–48; Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, I/2, 65.

555. Salamah b. Kuhayl al-Kūfī died ca. 121/739. Ibn Hajar, *Tahdhīb*, IV, 155–57.

Muhammad b. al-Walid b. Nuwayfi' [al-Asadi]<sup>556</sup>—Kurayb,<sup>557</sup> a freed slave of Ibn 'Abbas—'Abdallāh b. 'Abbās: The Banū Sa'd b. Bakr sent Ḍimām b. Tha'labah to the Messenger of God.<sup>558</sup> He came and made his camel kneel at the door of the mosque, hobbled it, then entered the mosque as the Messenger of God was sitting with his companions. Ḍimām was a robust and hairy man with two forelocks. He came forward until he stood over the Messenger of God and said, "Which of you is 'Abd al-Muṭtalib's son?" The Messenger of God replied, "I am the son of 'Abd al-Muṭtalib." Ḍimām asked, "[Are you] Muhammad?" He replied, "Yes." Ḍimām said, "O son of 'Abd al-Muṭtalib, I am going to ask you [something] and will speak rudely about the matter, so don't take it amiss." [The Prophet] replied, "I will not, so ask what comes to your mind." Ḍimām said, "I adjure you by God, your God, the God of those who went before you, and the God of those who will come after you, has God sent you as a messenger to us?" [The Prophet] replied, "O God! Yes." Ḍimām then adjured him to answer the following questions: "Has He ordered you to command<sup>559</sup> us to worship Him alone and not to associate anything with Him and to renounce these rival deities which our forefathers used to worship instead<sup>560</sup> of Him? Has He ordered you to command us to pray these five prayers?" [The Prophet] replied, "O God! Yes." Then Ḍimām began to mention the obligatory acts of Islam one by one, zakāt tax, fasting, pilgrimage, and all the laws of Islam, and adjured him to answer. When he was finished he said, "I testify that there is no god but God alone. Who has no associate, and I testify that Muhammad is His<sup>561</sup> Messenger; and that I will discharge these obligations, and will avoid what you have forbidden me from doing; I will neither add to nor diminish [anything] from them." Then he withdrew to his camel.<sup>562</sup> When

556. Ibid., IX, 504.

557. Kurayb b. Abī Muslim al-Hāshimi died in 98/716–17 in Medina. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, VIII, 211; Ibn Hajar, *Tahdhīb*, VIII, 433.

558. According to Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, I/2, 43–44, he came to Medina in Rajab 5/627–28.

559. Ibn Shabbah (*Ta'rikh*, II, 522): That we worship Him alone [who] has no associate.

560. Hisch. and Ibn Ishāq: Along with Him.

561. Ibn Shabbah adds: His servant and.

562. Ibn Ishāq adds: Returning home.

he turned away, the Messenger of God said, "If [this] man with the two forelocks is sincere, he will go to Paradise."

Qimām came to his camel, freed it from its hobble, and traveled until he came to his people, who gathered around him. The first thing he said was, "How evil are *al-Lāt* and *al-'Uzzā!*"<sup>563</sup> They said, "Refrain from this, O Qimām; beware of white leprosy (*baras*), beware of true leprosy (*judhām*), and beware of madness!" He replied, "Woe to you! Both [*al-Lāt* and *al-'Uzzā*] can neither heal nor harm. God has sent a messenger and has sent down to him a book. By means of it I seek to deliver you from your present state [of ignorance]. [As for me], I bear witness that there is no god except God, the One without a partner, and that Muhammad is His servant and messenger. I have brought to you what he has commanded you to do and what he has forbidden you from doing." By God, before the evening was over that day [there was] not a single man or woman in his tribe who had not become Muslim. 'Abdallāh b. 'Abbās said that they had not heard of any tribal delegate better than Qimām b. Tha'labah.

[1724]

---

563. *Al-'Uzzā* is an old Arabian goddess, whose name means "the Strong, the Powerful." Her main sanctuary was in the valley of Nakhlah. In Mecca, she formed a trinity with *al-Lāt* and *Manāt* and they were called the three "daughters of Allāh." Wellhausen, *Skizzen*, III, 30–42. See Tabārī, above I, 1161, n. 78.

# The Events of the Year

## IO

(APRIL 9, 631—MARCH 28, 632)

Abū Ja'far [al-Tabarī]: In this year, in the month of Rabi' II [it is said in the month of Rabi' I, or in Jumādā I], the Messenger of God sent Khālid b. al-Walid with an army of four hundred to the Banū al-Ḥārith b. Ka'b.<sup>564</sup>

Ibn Ḥumayd—Salamah—Ibn Ishāq—'Abdallāh b. Abī Bakr: The Messenger of God sent Khālid b. al-Walid in the month of Rabi' II, or Jumādā I, in the year 10/631 to the Balḥārith<sup>565</sup> b. Ka'b in Najrān,<sup>566</sup> and ordered him to invite them to Islam for three days before he fought them. If they should respond to him [with the acceptance of Islam], then he was to accept it from them,<sup>567</sup> and to stay with them and teach them the Book of God, the *sunnah* of His prophet, and the requirements of Islam (*ma'ālim al-islām*); if they should decline, then he was to fight them.

564. A clan of a South Arabian tribe. Ibn Hazm, *Jamharah*, 416–17. See also Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, I/2, 72; II/1, 122.

565. Ibn Ishāq: Banū al-Ḥārith.

566. Name of a town and a district in northern Yemen. *EI*<sup>1</sup>, s.v. Nadjrān. For its topography see Philby, *Arabian Highlands*, 213ff.

567. Hisch. and Ibn Ishāq: And if they declined he was to fight them.

Khālid departed and came to them, sending out riders in every direction inviting them to Islam and saying, "O people, accept Islam, and you will be safe." So they embraced Islam and responded to his call. Khālid stayed with them, teaching them Islam, the Book of God, and the *sunnah* of His prophet.<sup>568</sup>

Then Khālid wrote to the Messenger of God:<sup>569</sup> "In the name of God, the Compassionate, the Merciful, to Muḥammad the Prophet, the Messenger of God, from Khālid b. al-Walid. Peace be upon you, O Messenger of God, and God's mercy and blessings. I praise God unto you, the only God. Now then: O Messenger of God, God bless you. You sent me to the Banū al-Ḥārith b. Ka'b and ordered that, when I came to them, I should not fight them for three days and that I should invite them to Islam. [You also ordered that] if they accepted it, I should accept it from them and teach them the requirements of Islam, the Book of God, and the *sunnah* of His Prophet. If they did not accept Islam, I was to fight them. I came to them and invited them to Islam for three days as the Messenger of God commanded me, and I sent riders among them [announcing], 'O Banū al-Ḥārith, embrace Islam, and you will be safe.' They have surrendered and did not fight, and I am staying in their midst ordering them [to do] what God has ordered, forbidding them from [doing] what God has forbidden, and teaching them the requirements of Islam and the *sunnah* of the Prophet until the Messenger of God writes to me. Peace be upon you, O Messenger of God, and God's mercy and blessings."

The Messenger of God wrote to him:<sup>570</sup> "In the name of God, the Compassionate, the Merciful, from Muḥammad, the Prophet, the Messenger of God, to Khālid b. al-Walid. Peace be upon you. I praise God, the only God, unto you. Now then: Your letter has reached me via your messenger<sup>571</sup> with the news<sup>572</sup> that the Banū al-Ḥārith [b. Ka'b]<sup>573</sup> surrendered before they fought<sup>574</sup> and re-

[1725]

<sup>568.</sup> Addition in Hisch., Ibn Ishāq: For that was what the Messenger of God had ordered him to do if they accepted Islam and did not fight.

<sup>569.</sup> See Ḥamīdullāh, *Majmū'ah*, 131.

<sup>570.</sup> See Ḥamīdullāh, *Majmū'ah*, 132.

<sup>571.</sup> As in Ibn Ishāq and Ḥamīdullāh (*Majmū'ah*, 132). Text: Messengers.

<sup>572.</sup> Hisch. and Ḥamīdullāh (*Majmū'ah*): Informing [me].

<sup>573.</sup> Addition from Ḥamīdullāh.

<sup>574.</sup> Hisch., Ḥamīdullāh: Before you fought them.

sponded to your invitation to Islam and pronouncement (of<sup>575</sup> the *shahādah*) that there is no god except God alone, who has no associate, and that Muḥammad is His Servant and Messenger. God has guided them with His guidance, so give them good tidings and warn them and return, and let their deputation come with you. Peace be upon you, and God's mercy and His blessings."

Then Khālid b. al-Walīd came back to the Messenger of God and with him came the deputation of the Banū al-Ḥārith b. Ka'b. Qays b. al-Ḥuṣayn b. Yazīd b. Qanān Dhū al-Ghuṣṣah, Yazīd b. 'Abd al-Madān,<sup>576</sup> Yazīd b. al-Muḥajjal, 'Abdallāh b. Qurayz<sup>577</sup> al-Ziyādī, Shaddād b. 'Abdallāh b. al-Qanānī, and 'Amr b. 'Abdallāh al-Dabābī were among the delegation. When they came to the Messenger of God, he saw them and asked who those people were, because they looked like Indians. He was told that they were the Banū al-Ḥārith b. Ka'b. When they stood before the Messenger of God, they greeted him and said, "We testify that you are the Messenger of God and that there is no god but Allāh." He replied, "And I testify that there is no god but Allāh, and that I am the Messenger of God." Then he said, "You are the ones who when driven away would push forward." They became silent and none of them answered him. He repeated it three times and none of them replied. When he repeated it the fourth time Yazīd b. 'Abd al-Madān replied, "Yes, O Messenger of God, we are the ones who, when driven away, pushed forward," and he repeated it four times. The Messenger of God said, "Had Khālid b. al-Walīd not written to me that you had surrendered and had not fought, I would have thrown your heads underneath your feet." Yazīd b. 'Abd al-Madān answered, "By God, O Messenger of God, we did not eulogize you, nor did we eulogize Khālid." "Then whom did you eulogize?" he asked. They said, "We exalted God who guided us through you." "You have spoken the truth," he said, and then asked them, "With what did you overpower those who fought you in pre-Islamic times (*al-jāhiliyyah*)?"<sup>578</sup> "We did not prevail over anyone," they replied. "Yes, indeed, you did prevail over

575. Hisch., Ḥamidullāh: And they pronounced.

576. Ibn Sa'd adds: 'Abdallāh b. 'Abd al-Madān.

577. Ibn Ishāq, Ibn Sa'd: Qurād.

578. See *EP*, s.v. *Djāhiliyya*.

those who fought you," he said. They replied, "O Messenger of God, we used to overpower those who fought us because we were the sons of slaves and<sup>579</sup> were united, not divided, and never committed an injustice against anyone." "You have spoken the truth," he said, and appointed Qays b. 'al-Ḥuṣayn as their leader.<sup>580</sup>

(1727)

The deputation of the Banū al-Ḥārith b. Ka'b returned to their people at the end of Shawwāl or the beginning of Dhū al-Qa'dah. After their return there did not pass but four months before the Messenger of God died.

Ibn Ḥumayd—Salamah—Ibn Ishāq: I have received an account on the authority of 'Abdallāh b. Abī Bakr: After the deputation of the Banū al-Ḥārith b. Ka'b returned, the Messenger of God sent 'Amr b. Ḥazm al-Anṣārī and later someone from the Banū al-Najjār<sup>581</sup> to instruct them in religion, to teach them the *sunnah* and the requirements of Islam, and to collect alms from them. The Messenger of God wrote a letter for 'Amr entrusting him with his commands. [It read]:<sup>582</sup>

"In the name of God, the Compassionate, the Merciful. This is a declaration from God and His Messenger. 'O you the believers, fulfill your contracts.'<sup>583</sup> [This is a] deed from Muḥammad, the Prophet, to 'Amr b. Ḥazm when he sent him to the Yemen. He orders him to fear God (*taqwā*) in all his doings for 'Surely God is with those who are god-fearing, and those who are doers of good.'<sup>584</sup> He commands him to observe the truth as God has commanded, that he should give the people tidings of good (*al-khayr*), command them to follow it, teach them the Qur'ān, instruct them in religion, and forbid them [from wrongdoing], because 'None but the purified shall touch the Qur'ān.'<sup>585</sup> [He]

579. We were . . . and: Omitted from Hisch., Ibn Ishāq.

580. According to Ibn Sa'd, the Prophet gave him twelve ḫiqiyahs [of silver] as a gift.

581. 'Amr b. Ḥazm was from the Banū Najjār, a clan of al-Khazraj. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, I/2, 21; V, 49–50; Ibn Ḥazm, *Jamharah*, 347–49.

582. See Ḥamidullāh, *Majmū'ah*, 173–77, where it is analyzed into twenty-two themes.

583. Qur'ān 5:1.

584. Ibid., 16:128.

585. Ibid., 56:79.

should inform the people of their privileges and obligations and be gentle to them when right is with them, but be severe with them when they are unjust, for God abhors injustice and forbids it, and states, 'Surely the curse of God shall rest upon the evildoers.'<sup>586</sup>

[1728] "He should give the people good news of paradise and the way to attain it,<sup>587</sup> and should warn them of hell-fire and the way to earn it. [He] should court the friendship of the people until they comprehend religion and should teach them the rites of pilgrimage, its practices, its obligations, and what God has commanded about it with regard to the greater pilgrimage (*al-hajj al-akbar*)<sup>588</sup> and the lesser pilgrimage (*al-hajj al-asghar*), the latter being the '*umrah*'.<sup>589</sup> [He must] prohibit people from praying in one small garment unless it be a garment whose ends<sup>590</sup> could be doubled over the shoulders.<sup>591</sup> [He must] forbid them from wrapping themselves in one garment which would expose [what decency requires to be concealed]<sup>592</sup> and forbid men to braid their hair when it is long on the back of the head. [He must] forbid them from appealing to tribes and kinsfolk when there is a dispute among them, but let their appeal be to God alone who has no associate. He who does not appeal to God but [instead] to tribes and kinsfolk should be smitten with the sword, so that the appeal is made to God alone who has no associate. [He must] command the people to perform the ablution thoroughly with plentiful water—washing the face, washing the hands and the forearms up to the elbows, washing the feet up to the ankles, and rubbing [the wet hands] on the head as God has commanded.<sup>593</sup>

"He orders him to offer prayer at the appropriate times with proper bowing and humility; the morning prayer at daybreak, the

586. *Ibid.*, 11:18.

587. Hisch., Ḥamidullāh: And its distinguished mark.

588. For the *hajj*, see *EP*<sup>2</sup>, s.v. Ḥadjdj.

589. See *EP*<sup>1</sup>, s.v. 'Umra.

590. As in Hisch., Ibn Ishāq. Text: End.

591. As in Hisch., Ibn Ishāq. Text: Shoulder.

592. The tradition states: None of you should pray in a single garment of which no part comes over his shoulders. Tabrizi, *Mishkāt*, I, 236–40; *Mishkat* (trans. Robson), I, 153–55. Transmitted by both Bukhārī and Muslim.

593. For details, see Tabrizi, *Mishkāt*, I, 125–34; *Mishkat* (trans. Robson), I, 82–87.

noon prayer at noon when the sun declines, the afternoon prayer when the sun is declining, the sunset prayer when the night approaches [it should not be delayed until the stars appear in the sky], and the evening prayer at the beginning of the night.<sup>594</sup> [He must] order them to go to the congregational prayer when they are summoned, and to wash the whole body (*ghusl*) before going [to the congregational prayer].<sup>595</sup>

"He orders him to take God's fifth from booty and those alms enjoined on the faithful from landed property—one tenth from the land watered by streams<sup>596</sup> and rain, and one twentieth from land watered by a leathern bucket, two sheep for every ten camels and four sheep for every twenty camels; a cow for every forty cows and a bull or a cow calf for every thirty cows; one sheep for every forty sheep at pasture. This is the ordinance of God which He has enjoined on the faithful concerning alms. He who adds thereto earns merit. A Christian or a Jew who embraces Islam sincerely, out of his own accord, and follows the religion of Islam, is among the faithful with the same privileges and the same obligations. He who holds fast to his Christianity or Judaism is not to be seduced<sup>597</sup> from it. On every adult, male or female, free or slave, [the poll tax] is one full dinār, or its substitute ('*arduhu*)<sup>598</sup> in clothes. He who pays [the poll tax] has the protection of God and His Messenger, and he who withholds it is the enemy of God, His Messenger, and all the faithful."

Al-Wāqidī: When the Messenger of God died, 'Amr b. Ḥazm was his agent (*'āmil*) in Najrān.

Al-Wāqidī: In this year, the deputation of Salāmān came to the Messenger of God in Shawwāl. They were seven people headed by Ḥabib al-Salāmānī.<sup>599</sup>

594. Tabrīzī, *Mishkāt*, I, 184ff.; *Mishkat* (trans. Robson), I, 118ff.

595. Tabrīzī, *Mishkāt*, I, 427–40; *Mishkat* (trans. Robson), I, 284–92.

596. As in Hisch., Ibn Ishāq, and Ḥamidullāh (*Majmū'ah* 175). Text: *Al-Ba'l*. It signifies what imbibes with its roots, without irrigation or rain; or palm trees growing in land whereof the supply of water is near to the surface, so that it needs no irrigation. Lane, *Lexicon*, s.v. b'-l. See Tabarī above, I, 1718.

597. Hisch., Ibn Ishāq, and Ḥamidullāh (*Majmū'ah*, 175): Not to be turned from it.

598. It means width but is also used meaning compensation, substitute. (Lane, *Lexicon*, s.v. 'r-d). Ibn Ishāq: *'iwduhu* [i.e., substitute].

599. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, I/2, 67, states that everyone in the delegation received five *ūqiyahs* [of silver] as a gift. Cf. Ibn al-Athīr, *Kāmil*, II, 295.

[1729]

In this year, the deputation of Ghassān<sup>600</sup> came in Ramaḍān.  
 In this year, the deputation of Ghāmid came in Ramaḍān.<sup>601</sup>  
 In this year, the deputation of al-Azd headed by Ṣurad b. 'Abd-allāh came, and they were ten odd.<sup>602</sup>

[1730] Ibn Humayd—Salamah—Muhammad b. Ishāq—'Abdallāh b. Abi Bakr: Ṣurad b. 'Abdallāh al-Azdi came to the Messenger of God with the deputation from al-Azd, embraced Islam, and became a good Muslim. The Messenger of God invested him with authority over those of his people who had embraced Islam and ordered him to fight the polytheists from the tribes of the Yemen with them. Ṣurad b. 'Abdallāh then left with an army by the Messenger of God's command and alighted at Jurash,<sup>603</sup> which at that time was a closed city inhabited by Yemenī tribes. Khath'am<sup>604</sup> had sought refuge with them, and when they heard that the Muslims were marching they shut themselves in it. The Muslims besieged them for about a month but the tribes refrained from coming out of the city. Ṣurad withdrew from them, appearing to return. While he was near a mountain called Kashar,<sup>605</sup> the inhabitants of Jurash, thinking that he had fled from them, came out in pursuit of him. When they overtook him he turned on them and inflicted a heavy loss on them.

The people of Jurash had sent two of their men to the Messenger of God while he was in Medina to explore and see [what was taking place]. One evening, after the afternoon prayer, while they were with the Messenger of God, he inquired in what country Shakar was. The two men from Jurash got up and replied, "O Messenger of God, there is a mountain in our country called Kashar, and the people of Jurash call it likewise." "It is not Kashar but Shakar," he replied. They said, "What is [the news] of it, O Messenger of God?" He replied, "Camels brought for sacrifice to God [at Mecca] are being slaughtered there now." Then the two

600. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, I/2, 71–72, states that the delegation accepted Islam, but they kept their conversion secret because their people did not accept Islam. See also Tabarī, above, I, 1675, n. 200.

601. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, I/2, 76–77. They were ten.

602. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, I/2, 71; Ibn al-Athīr, *Kāmil*, II, 295.

603. See Tabarī, above, I, 1669, n. 145.

604. A South Arabian tribe related to Azd. Ibn Ḥazm, *Jamharah*, 387, 390. See also Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, I/2, 78.

605. Ibn Ishāq, Ibn Sa'd: Shakar. For Shakar, see Jāsir, *Sarāt*, 45–46.

men sat with Abū Bakr, or with 'Uthmān, who said to them, "Woe to you! The Messenger of God has just now announced to you the death of your people, so go to him and ask to pray to God to remove [that affliction] from your people." They went and did so, and he did pray for them. Then they left the Messenger of God and returned to their people, and discovered that they were killed on the day Ṣurad attacked them, which was the very day and at the very hour in which the Messenger of God had uttered those words.

The deputation of Jurash returned to the Messenger of God and embraced Islam, and he declared the environs of their city to be a sanctuary (*himān*) with well-known marks<sup>606</sup> for horses, mounts, and ploughing oxen. Anyone who pastured his cattle elsewhere (other than in the sanctuary), then his cattle could be seized and destroyed with impunity.<sup>607</sup> A man from al-Azd said with regard to that raid that Khath'ām used to attack Azd in pre-Islamic times and used to invade them in the sacred month:

O what a raid! We never raided before with such success,  
 with mules, horses, and asses,  
 Until we came to Ḥumayr in its strongholds—  
 where Khath'ām had assembled and were given warnings.  
 If I could satisfy the thirst for revenge which I carried,  
 I should not care whether they followed Islam  
 or were infidels.

In this year, the Messenger of God dispatched 'Alī b. Abī Ṭālib with an army to the Yemen in Ramadān.<sup>608</sup>

Abū Kurayb<sup>609</sup> and Muḥammad b. 'Amr b. Hayyāj<sup>610</sup>—Yahyā b. 'Abd al-Rahmān al-Azājī<sup>611</sup>—Ibrāhīm b. Yūsuf<sup>612</sup>—his fa-

606. It refers to the landmarks, probably whitewashed cairns. Ryckmans, *Religions*, 9; Serjeant, "Translation," 6.

607. For the document, see Ḥamidullāh, *Majmū'ah*, 242–43.

608. Ibn Hishām, *Sīrah*, IV, 290–91; Wāqidi, *Maghāzi*, III, 1079–83; Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, II/1, 122.

609. Muḥammad b. al-'Alā' b. Kurayb al-Hamdānī al-Kūfi died in 248/862. Ibn Hajar, *Tahdhīb*, IX, 385–86.

610. Muḥammad b. 'Amr b. Hayyāj al-Hamdānī al-Kūfi died in 255/869. Ibid., IX, 362–63.

611. Ibid., XI, 250 (al-Azājī al-Kūfi).

612. Died in 198/813–14. Ibid., I, 183.

[1732]

ther<sup>613</sup>—Abū Ishāq—al-Barā' b. ‘Āzib:<sup>614</sup> The Messenger of God sent Khālid b. al-Walid to the people of the Yemen inviting them to Islam, and I was among those who went with him. He persisted in the matter for six months, but they did not respond, so the Messenger of God sent ‘Ali b. Abī Ṭalib and ordered him that Khālid and those who were with him should return, but if any of them would like to follow him he should allow them. Al-Barā' said, 'I was one who followed ‘Ali, and as we reached the borders of the Yemen the people got the news. They gathered around him and ‘Ali led us in the morning prayer. When he had finished [the prayer], he lined us up in one row. Then he moved before us, praised and extolled God, and then read to them the letter of the Messenger of God.<sup>615</sup> All of Hamdān embraced Islam in one day, and he wrote to the Messenger of God about it. When the Prophet read ‘Ali's letter he fell down, prostrating himself to God.<sup>616</sup> Then he sat up and said, 'Peace be upon Hamdān, peace be upon Hamdān!' [After the conversion of Hamdān] the people of the Yemen followed in succession with their acceptance of Islam.'

Abū Ja’far [al-Tabarī]: In this year, the deputation of Zubayd<sup>617</sup> came to the Prophet with their acceptance of Islam.<sup>618</sup>

Ibn Ḥumayd—Salamah—Ibn Ishāq—‘Abdallāh b. Abī Bakr: ‘Amr b. Ma’dikarib<sup>619</sup> came to the Messenger of God with men from the Banū Zubayd and embraced Islam. He had told Qays b. Makshūh al-Murādi when the Messenger of God's news reached them: "O Qays, you are the leader of your tribe today. We have been told that a man from Quraysh called Muḥammad has appeared in the Ḥijāz<sup>620</sup> and claims that he is a prophet. So come with us in order that we may learn about him. If he is a prophet as

613. Yūsuf b. Ishāq b. Abī Ishāq al-Sabīl died in 157/773–74. *Ibid.*, XI, 408–9.

614. He was from the tribe of Khazraj and an ardent supporter of ‘Ali. Ibn Sa’d, *Tabaqāt*, IV, 364; Ibn ‘Abd al-Barr, *al-Isti’āb*, I, 155; Jafri, *Origins*, 52.

615. See Ḥamidullāh, *Majmū’ah*, 132–33.

616. Ibn al-Athir, *Kāmil*, II, 300.

617. A clan of Yām of Hamdān. Kalbi, *Jamharah*, 227, 229; Ibn Ḥazm, *Jamharah*, 394.

618. Ibn Sa’d, *Tabaqāt*, I/2, 64; Ibn al-Athir, *Kāmil*, II, 297–98.

619. He was a famous warrior and poet of a noble Yemenite family. After the Prophet's death he apostatized, supported al-Aswad al-‘Ansī, and fought against the Muslims. He was taken captive but was freed later. Probably he was killed at al-Qādisiyah or Nihāwand. *EI<sup>2</sup>*, s.v. ‘Amr b. Ma’dikarib.

620. The northwestern part of Arabian Peninsula. *EI<sup>2</sup>*, s.v. Ḥidjāz.

he says, then it will not be hidden from you, and when we meet him we will follow him. If he is other than that we shall know about him." But Qays b. Makshūh declined and called ['Amr b. Ma'dikarib's] idea foolish. Thereupon 'Amr b. Ma'dikarib rode off and came to the Messenger of God, attested his truthfulness, and embraced Islam. When Qays learned about it he criticized 'Amr and threatened<sup>621</sup> him, saying that he had gone against him and rejected his counsel. With regard to that, 'Amr said:

On the day of Dhū Ṣan'ā' I counseled you,  
counsel which was plainly upright. [1733]  
I counseled you to fear God,  
practice goodness, and come to its understanding.  
Out of worldly desires you went off,  
like a donkey<sup>622</sup> beguiled by its lust.  
He wished to meet me on a horse,  
which I ride like a lion,  
Wearing a wide coat of mail glittering like a pool,  
whose water is purified against hard level ground.  
Mail that repels lances with their heads bent,  
with broken shafts flying around.  
If you had encountered me,  
you would have encountered a lion with a flowing mane.  
You would confront a lion  
with rough claws and lofty back,  
Vying with his rival for glory;  
if the rival heads for him he grasps him in his arms,  
Seizes him and lifts him up,  
throws him down and kills him,  
Dashes out his brains and shatters him,  
tears him apart and devours him,  
Admitting none a share in what  
his teeth and claws could take.<sup>623</sup>  
Whenever he feeds on the prey,  
he is received coolly.

621. As in Hisch., Ibn Ishāq. Text: Became vigilant.

622. Hisch., Ibn Ishāq: A little donkey.

623. The following verses are omitted from Ibn Ishāq. Ibn Hishām states that some of the above verses were recited differently to him.

- He shakes like the shaking of a stallion,  
whose drink is covered with foam,
- [1734] Become afflicted with gnats,  
and deprived of reaching his country.
- Do not wish to encounter me,  
wish for someone else with soft shoulders.
- Provide me with a country for him,  
where the people around him will be numerous.

'Amr b. Ma'dikarib stayed with his people the Banū Zubayd while Farwah b. Musayk al-Murādī<sup>624</sup> was their chieftain. When the Messenger of God died, 'Amr apostatized and said:

We found Farwah's reign the worst of reigns,  
a donkey sniffing at dirt.<sup>625</sup>

If you had looked at Abū 'Umayr,  
you would have seen him like a cauldron filled with filth  
and treachery.

Farwah b. Musayk al-Murādī had come to the Messenger of God in this year (i.e., 10/631) before the coming of 'Amr b. Ma'dikarib, disassociating himself from the kings of Kindah.<sup>626</sup>

Ibn Humayd—Salamah—Ibn Ishāq—'Abdallāh b. Abī Bakr: Farwah b. Musayk al-Murādī came to the Messenger of God, withdrawing himself from the kings of Kindah<sup>627</sup> out of hostility toward them. Shortly before [the advent of] Islam, there was a battle between Murād<sup>628</sup> and Hamdān wherein the latter gave a sound thrashing to the former in an encounter called *al-razm*.<sup>629</sup> The person who led Hamdān over Murād was al-Ajda' b. Mālik, who put them to disgrace on that day. Concerning that [engagement], Farwah b. Musayk said:

624. He headed the Murād delegation, and the Prophet appointed him as the head of the Murād, Zubayd, and Madhhij. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, I/2, 63–64.

625. Hisch., Ibn Ishāq: *Thafr*. It means the vulva of an animal of prey. Lane, *Lexicon*, s.v. *th-f-r*.

626. Ibn al-Athir, *Kāmil*, II, 295–97.

627. Hisch., Ibn Ishāq: And distancing himself from them.

628. A clan of Madhhij. Kalbi, *Jamharah*, 258; Ibn Hazm, *Jamharah*, 406.

629. Hisch., and Ibn Ishāq: *Al-Razm*. *Razm* means death, while *radm* means a thing that intervenes between two other things, an obstruction, a barrier. Lane, *Lexicon*, s.v. *r-d-m*.

[1735]

If we are victorious, we were victors of old,<sup>630</sup>  
 and if defeated, we were not defeated before.<sup>631</sup>

If we are killed,<sup>632</sup> it is not (because of) cowardice,  
 but (because of) our fate and the bait<sup>633</sup> of others.

Likewise is the fate whose wheel turns  
 now for and now against.

When it is with us we are delighted and rejoice in it,  
 though its opulence has shielded us for years.

When the wheel of fate turns,  
 those who were envied are found ground to pieces,  
 And those who were envied with the turn of fate  
 will find the turn of time deceptive.

If kings remained forever we would be immortal,  
 and if the noble endured we would endure.

But those leaders of my people are annihilated,  
 like the annihilation of previous generations.

When Farwah b. Musayk headed for the Messenger of God, separating himself from the kings of Kindah, he said:

When I saw the kings of Kindah turning away,  
 like a man's foot letting him down by his leg's sinew,  
 I turned to my camel, leading the way to Muhammad,  
 hoping for the virtues and good earth of Medina.

When he reached him, the Messenger of God asked him, "It has been reported to me, O Farwah, that you were upset at what happened to your people on the day of *al-razm*." He replied, "O Messenger of God, what befell my people on that day would upset any person if it happened to his people." The Messenger of God answered that if it were so, Islam would bring only good to his people, and appointed him [as a leader] over Murâd, Zubayd, and

630. Additional verse in Ibn Ishâq:  
 They passed by Lufât with sunken eyes,  
 tugging at reins as they turned.

Lufât is a place name in the Murâd country.

631. Ibn Ishâq:  
 . . . if we are conquered we were not conquered before.

632. Ibn Ishâq and Ibn al-Athîr:  
 And our nature is not cowardice.

633. Ibn al-Athîr: And the good fortune of others.

[1736]

Madhbij<sup>634</sup> and sent with him Khālid b. Sa'īd b. al-Āṣ in charge of the alms. Khālid remained with Farwah in his country until the Messenger of God died.

Abū Kurayb and Sufyān b. Waki'<sup>635</sup>—Abū Usāmah—Mu-jālid<sup>636</sup>—Āmir—Farwah b. Musayk: The Messenger of God asked me, "Are you distressed about your people's encounter with Hamdān?" "Yes, by God, it annihilated my kinsfolk and near relatives," I replied. He said, "It is better for those who survived."

In this year, the deputation of 'Abd al-Qays<sup>637</sup> arrived.

Ibn Humayd—Salamah—Ibn Ishāq: Al-Jārūd b. 'Amr b. Ḥanash b. al-Mu'allā, a brother of 'Abd al-Qays, who was a Christian, came to the Messenger of God with a deputation of 'Abd al-Qays.<sup>638</sup>

Ibn Humayd—Salamah—Ibn Ishāq—al-Ḥasan b. Dīnār<sup>639</sup>—al-Ḥasan [al-Baṣrī]: When al-Jārūd reached the Messenger of God, he spoke to him, and the Messenger of God proposed Islam to him, invited him to embrace it, and made him desirous of Islam. He answered, "O Muḥammad, I followed a religion, and now if I leave it for yours will you guarantee my religion?"<sup>640</sup> The Messenger of God replied, "Yes, I guarantee that what God has guided you to is better than that [i.e., which you practice]." So he and his companions embraced Islam. Then they asked the Messenger of God for mounts, and when he replied that he had none they said, "O Messenger of God, between us [i.e., Medina] and our country there are some stray beasts that strayed from their owners. Can we ride them to our country?" He replied, "No, beware of them. Indeed, it [leads to] hell-fire."

Al-Jārūd then left for his people. He was a good Muslim, steadfast in his religion until he died, having lived through the period

634. A South Arabian tribe. Kalbi, *Jamharah*, 176, 258; Ibn Hazm, *Jamharah*, 476–77.

635. Sufyān b. Waki' b. al-Jarrāḥ al-Kūfi died in 247/861. Ibn Hajar, *Tahdhīb*, IV, 123–24.

636. Mujālid b. Sa'īd al-Hamdānī al-Kūfi died in 144/761–62. Ibid., X, 39–41.

637. A branch of Rabi'ah. Kalbi, *Jamharah*, 141, 168; Ibn Hazm, *Jamharah*, 295–96.

638. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, I/2, 54, states that they stayed in Medina for ten days and the Prophet gave them gifts before they departed. Ibn al-Athīr, *Kāmil*, II, 298.

639. Al-Ḥasan b. Dīnār, Abū Sa'īd al-Baṣrī. Ibn Hajar, *Tahdhīb*, II, 275–76.

640. As in Hisch., Ibn Ishāq. The text is without the interrogative particle.

of apostasy (*al-riddah*).<sup>641</sup> When some of his people who had embraced Islam went back to their earlier religion with al-Gharūr<sup>642</sup> al-Mundhir b. al-Nu'mān b. al-Mundhir, al-Jārūd stood up, confessed his Islam and invited them back to it saying, "O people, I testify that there is no god but God, and Muhammad is His servant and His Messenger. I am done with him<sup>643</sup> who does not pronounce the *shahādah*."

The Messenger of God had sent al-'Alā' b. al-Hadramī to al-Mundhir b. Sāwā al-'Abdī before the conquest of Mecca,<sup>644</sup> and he embraced Islam and became a good Muslim. Al-Mundhir died after the Messenger of God but before the apostasy of the people of al-Bahrayn,<sup>645</sup> while al-'Alā', who was the Messenger of God's *amīr* (deputy) over al-Bahrayn, was with him.

In this year, the deputation of the Banū Ḥanīfah<sup>646</sup> came.

Ibn Ḥumayd—Salamah—Ibn Ishāq: The deputation of the Banū Ḥanīfah came to the Messenger of God and among them was Musaylimah b. Habib,<sup>647</sup> the arch liar. They stayed with the daughter of al-Ḥārith,<sup>648</sup> a woman of the *Anṣār* from the Banū Najjār.<sup>649</sup>

641. It is generally translated as "the wars of apostasy," because in the traditional sources it is reported as a religious movement directed against Islam. This view was first challenged by Wellhausen (*Skizzen*, VI, 7–37), and Caetani (*Annali*, II, 549–831), who argued that it was essentially political in nature. The leaders of the *riddah*, often called "the false prophets," represented themselves as possessing prophetic aspirations, hence it was not wholly devoid of religious character. Cf. Watt, *Muhammad at Medina*, 147–48. Its character and extent are analyzed by Shoufani, *al-Riddah*, 71–106.

642. Hisch., Ibn Ishāq: Gharūr b. al-Mundhir.

643. Hisch., Ibn Ishāq: I regard him an infidel.

644. According to Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, I/2, 19, 27–28, 41, the Prophet sent al-'Alā' to al-Mundhir b. Sāwā, who was Khusraw's governor over al-Bahrayn after he had returned from al-Jīrānah. See also Ḥamidullāh, *Majmū'ah*, 112–15.

645. In pre-Islamic and early Islamic times, this name was applied to the mainland of Eastern Arabia, embracing the oases of al-Qatīf and Hajar [al-Ḥasā]. Later, it was restricted to the archipelago offshore. *EP*<sup>2</sup>, s.v. al-Bahrayn.

646. A large section of this ancient Arab tribe revolted against Medina under Musaylimah. *EP*<sup>2</sup>, s.v. Hanifa. For the delegation, see Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, I/2, 55–56; Ibn al-Athīr, *Kāmil*, II, 298.

647. Musaylimah, diminutive of Maslamah (which was his real name), was the theocratic lord of a sacred *ḥaram*. According to one report, he had set up this sacred enclave in Yamānah before the Prophet's *hijrah*. He thus controlled an extensive area of the eastern Arabia. *EP*<sup>1</sup>, s.v. Musailimia; Serjeant, "Early Arabic Prose," 127.

648. She was Ramlah bt. al-Ḥārith. Ibn Sa'd.

649. A clan of Khazraj. Kalbi, *Jamharah*, 185, 186; Ibn Hazm, *Jamharah*, 347–52.

[1738] **Ibn Ḥumayd—Salamah—Ibn Ishāq:** I have received an account on the authority of some of our Medinese scholars: The Banū Ḥanifah brought Musaylimah to the Messenger of God, veiling him with a garment, while the Messenger of God was seated among his companions, holding a palm branch with some leaves on its upper end. When he approached the Messenger of God while being veiled with garments, he spoke to him [and asked]<sup>650</sup> [for a gift]. The Messenger of God replied, "If you had asked me for this palm branch which I hold, I would not have given it to you."

**Ibn Ḥumayd—Salamah—Ibn Ishāq—a shaykh of the Banū Ḥanifah from the people of al-Yamāmah.**<sup>651</sup> The story of Musaylimah differs from the one mentioned before. [This shaykh] alleged that the deputation of the Banū Ḥanifah came to the Messenger of God and left Musaylimah behind with their baggage. When they embraced Islam, they mentioned to the Prophet where he was, saying, "O Messenger of God, we have left behind a companion of ours to guard our camels and baggage." The Messenger of God ordered for him the same as he had ordered for them, saying, "His position, guarding the property of his companions, is not worse than yours." This is what the Messenger of God meant.

Then they left the Messenger of God and brought Musaylimah what the Prophet had given him.<sup>652</sup> When they reached al-Yamāmah, Musaylimah (the enemy of God) apostatized, posed as a prophet, and played the liar, saying, "I have been made a partner with him [i.e., Muḥammad] in the affair." He then said to his deputation, "Did not the Messenger of God say to you when you mentioned me to him that my position is no worse than yours? What could it mean except that he knew I have been made his associate?"<sup>653</sup> Then he began to speak in rhyming speech (*saj'*)<sup>654</sup> and in imitation of the Qur'ān: "God has bestowed favors upon the pregnant woman; He has brought forth from her a living being

650. Addition from Hisch., Ibn Ishāq.

651. See Ṭabarī, above, I, 1702, n. 407.

652. Ibn Sa'd adds: Musaylimah said, "The Prophet knows that after him the authority belongs to me."

653. He is said to have proposed sharing power over Arabia. See Ṭabarī, below, I, 1749.

654. It was used for expressing an oracle. Fahd, *Divination*, 151–53.

that moves from between the bowels and peritoneum.<sup>655</sup> He rid them of the burden of prayer, and permitted them to drink wine and fornicate and so forth, [yet]<sup>656</sup> he acknowledged the Messenger of God as a prophet. The Banū Hanifah agreed with him on that. God knows best what the truth was.

Abū Ja'far [al-Tabarī]: In this year, the deputation of Kindah headed by al-Ash'ath b. Qays al-Kindī arrived.<sup>657</sup>

Ibn Ḥumayd—Salamah—Ibn Ishāq—Ibn Shihāb al-Zuhri: Al-Ash'ath b. Qays came to the Messenger of God with sixty<sup>658</sup> riders from Kindah, and went to him in his mosque. They had combed their locks and darkened their eyelids with kohl, and were wearing striped robes (of the Yemeni fabric) bordered with silk. When they entered, the Messenger of God asked, 'Have you not embraced Islam?' "Yes, indeed," they answered. "Why, then, is this silk hanging round your necks?" he asked. So they tore it off and threw it away. Then al-Ash'ath said, "O Messenger of God, we are the sons of those who eat bitter herbs and so are you."<sup>659</sup> He smiled and said, "Ascribe this ancestry to al-'Abbās b. 'Abd al-Muṭṭalib and Rabī'ah b. al-Hārith." Both were merchants. When they traveled in Arab lands and were asked who they were, they would reply that they were sons of those who ate bitter herbs, and were proud of that because Kindah were kings. Then the Messenger of God said, "We are the sons of al-Nadr b. Kinānah. We neither follow our mother's [line of descent] nor disown our father's." Al-Ash'ath b. Qays said, "Do you know, O men of Kindah, by God, if I hear a man saying [such a thing] after today, I will thrash him with the prescribed punishment of eighty strokes."<sup>660</sup>

---

655. He followed the *kāhin* style of rhymed prose and looked to the Heaven for revelation, and preached in the name of *al-Rahmān*. See Serjeant, 'Early Arabic Prose,' 127–28.

656. Addition from Hisch., Ibn Ishāq.

657. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, II/2, 64, states that they were ten odd, while Ibn al-Athīr, *Kāmil*, 298, states that they were sixty.

658. Hisch., Ibn Ishāq: Eighty.

659. Ibn Shabbah (*Ta'rikh*, II, 547): "O Messenger of God, we think that you are from us [i.e., having the same ancestry]." The Messenger of God replied, "We are the sons. . . ."

660. Hisch., Ibn Ishāq (*Sirah*, IV, 232–33): "Are you finished, O men of Kindah? By God, if I hear a man saying [such a thing], I will thrash him with eighty

Al-Wāqidi: In this year, the deputation of Muḥārib<sup>661</sup> came.

In this year, the deputation of al-Rahāwiyyūn<sup>662</sup> came.

[1740] In this year, the deputation of al-Āqib and al-Sayyid<sup>663</sup> from Najrān came, and the Messenger of God wrote a peace treaty for them.<sup>664</sup>

In this year, the deputation of 'Abs<sup>665</sup> came.

In this year, the deputation of Ṣadīf<sup>666</sup> arrived and rendered their full [homage] to the Messenger of God at the Farewell Pilgrimage.

In this year, 'Adī b. Ḥātim al-Tā'i<sup>667</sup> came in [the month of] Sha'bān.

In this year, Abū 'Āmir al-Rāhib died at the court of Heraclius [the Byzantine emperor], so Kinānah b. 'Abd Yālīl and 'Alqamah b. 'Ulāthah disputed about his inheritance. [Heraclius] decided in favor of Kinānah b. 'Abd Yālīl, saying that both were city dwellers while 'Alqamah b. 'Ulāthah was a tent dweller.

In this year, the deputation of Khawlān<sup>668</sup> came. They were ten people.

Ibn Ḥumayd—Salamah—Ibn Ishaq—Iyāzīd b. Abī Ḥabīb:<sup>669</sup> During the truce of al-Hudaybiyah<sup>670</sup> and before [the conquest of]

strokes." Ibn Hishām adds a long note stating that al-Ash'ath b. Qays was, from his mother's side, a descendant of "the eater of bitter herbs."

661. A branch of 'Abd al-Qays. Ibn Hazm, *Jamharah*, 297. See also Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, I/2, 43; they were ten; Ibn al-Athir, *Kāmil*, II, 298.

662. A clan of Madhhij, a South Arabian tribe. Ibn Hazm, *Jamharah*, 412–13. See also Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, I/2, 76; they were fifteen; Ibn al-Athir, *Kāmil*, II, 298.

663. Al-Āqib, whose name was 'Abd al-Masīh al-Kindī, was the head of the delegation. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, I/2, 84–85; Ibn al-Athir, *Kāmil*, II, 293–95.

664. The treaty is reproduced by Hamidullāh, *Majmū'ah*, 140–58.

665. A branch of Ghāṭafān (Qays 'Aylān). Kalbī, *Jamharah*, 92, 132; Ibn Hazm, *Jamharah*, 250–52. See also Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, I/2, 41–42; Ibn al-Athir, *Kāmil*, II, 298.

666. A branch of Ḥadrāmawt. Ibn Hazm, *Jamharah*, 461. See also Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, I/2, 64–65; Ibn al-Athir, *Kāmil*, II, 298.

667. See Tabarī, above, I, 1706.

668. A South Arabian tribe of great antiquity. After the death of the Prophet, they at first joined the revolt against Medina, but were brought back to Islam by an expeditionary force. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, I/2, 61; Ibn al-Athir, *Kāmil*, II, 298; *EP*<sup>2</sup>, s.v. Khawlān.

669. His name was Suwayd al-Azdi, and he died in 128/745–46. Ibn Hajar, *Tahdhīb*, XI, 318–19.

670. It is known after the village situated on the edge of the *haram* (sacred territory) of Mecca where the truce was negotiated and signed. *EP*<sup>2</sup>, s.v. al-Hudaybiya.

**Khaybar,**<sup>671</sup> Rifa'ah b. Zayd al-Judhāmī<sup>672</sup> al-Dubaybī came to the Messenger of God, presented him a slave, and embraced Islam. He became a good Muslim, and the Messenger of God gave him a letter addressed to his people. In it was written: "In the name of God, the Compassionate, the Merciful. This is a letter from Muhammad, the Messenger of God, to Rifa'ah b. Zayd. I have sent him to his people in general and those who have joined them [in Islam] to invite others to God and His Messenger. Whoever responds belongs to the party of God and His Messenger, and whoever turns away will have two months' truce."<sup>673</sup> When Rifa'ah came to his people they responded and embraced Islam. Then they went to al-Harrah (the volcanic tract, lava field),<sup>674</sup> the Harrah of al-Rajlā,<sup>675</sup> and camped there.

Ibn Humayd—Salamah—Ibn Ishāq—one who could be trusted from the men of Judhām who were knowledgeable: When Rifa'ah b. Zayd came [to his people]<sup>676</sup> with the Messenger of God's letter inviting them to Islam, they responded. Soon [the following incident happened]. When Dihyah b. Khalīfah al-Kalbī, who was returning from Caesar,<sup>677</sup> the Byzantine king,<sup>678</sup> [to whom he] was sent by the Messenger of God with some of his merchandise,<sup>679</sup>

[1741]

671. A famous oasis and settlement about 150 km from Medina, which owes its renown to the events which took place during its conquest in the year 7/628–29. *EP*, s.v. Khaybar. For its topography and historical geography, see Doughty, *Travels*, II, 77ff.; Philby, *Midian*, 31ff.; Ḥamidullāh, *Battlefields*, 48–52; Jāsir, *Shimāl*, 217ff.; Al-Wohaibi, *Hijaz*, 113–19.

672. Judhām is an Arab tribe which claims descent from Kahlān b. Sabā' of Yemen. They had settled in pre-Islamic times on the borders of Byzantine Syria and Palestine. *EP*, s.v. Djudhām.

673. Wāqidi, *Maghāzī*, II, 557; Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, I/2, 82–83. See also Ḥamidul-lāh, *Majmū'ah*, 233–34.

674. Doughty, *Travels*, glossary of Arabic words.

675. A place in the Judhām country. Bakrī, *Mu'jam*, II, 436; Yāqūt, *Mu'jam*, II, 246.

676. Addition from Hisch., Ibn Ishāq.

677. The mission of Dihyah must have been in the summer of 6/627, since a punitive expedition to punish the Judhām plunderers was sent around October 627. Ibn Sa'd (*Tabaqāt*, I/2, 16; IV/1, 184–85), on the other hand, states that Dihyah was sent by the Prophet in the year 7/628–29 inviting the Byzantine king to Islam. See also Ḥamidullāh, *Majmū'ah*, 83–86.

It is one of the six embassies sent by the Prophet to the rulers of the surrounding countries inviting them to embrace Islam. This story is not accepted by the scholars as it stands; see Buhl, *Leben*, 294–98; Caetani, *Annali*, I, 725–39; Watt, *Muhammad at Medina*, 43–44, 345.

678. Probably the Byzantine governor nearest to Arabia.

679. Probably the Byzantine presents to Muhammad.

reached a valley called Shanār,<sup>680</sup> al-Hunayd b. 'Uṣ<sup>681</sup> and his son 'Uṣ b. al-Hunayd al-Dulay'i, a clan of Judhām, attacked him and seized everything that he had. This news reached some people of the Banū Dubayb, the kinsfolk of Rifā'ah who had embraced Islam. They responded and went after al-Hunayd and his son; al-Nu'mān b. Abī Jī'āl of the Banū Dubayb was among them. When they encountered them, a skirmish followed. On that day, Qurrah b. Ashqar al-Difārī, who traced his ancestry from the clan of al-Dulay', said, "I am the son of Lubnā." He shot al-Nu'mān b. Abī Jī'āl with an arrow, hitting him in his knee, saying, "Take it, I am the son of Lubnā." He had a mother who was called Lubnā. Ḥassān b. Mallah al-Dubaybī had been a friend of Dihyah b. Khalifah al-Kalbī before that [incident] and had taught him the *Umm al-Kitāb* [i.e., the first chapter of the Qur'ān]. They rescued what was in the hands of al-Hunayd and his son 'Uṣ and restored it to Dihyah. Then Dihyah left and came to the Messenger of God, informed him what had happened, and sought that he be allowed to kill al-Hunayd and his son.

The Messenger of God sent Zayd b. Ḥārithah with a force against them, which was what provoked the raid of Zayd on Ju-dhām. All of Ghaṭafān of Judhām, Wā'il,<sup>682</sup> those of Salāmān, and Sa'd b. Hudhaym<sup>683</sup> had set out when Rifā'ah b. Zayd came with the Messenger of God's letter and camped in al-Harrah (the volcanic tract) of al-Rajlā', while Rifā'ah b. Zayd was in Kurā' Rabbah<sup>684</sup> with some people of the Banū al-Dubayb, not knowing [what had happened]. At the same time, the rest of the Banū al-Dubayb were in a valley [of Madān]<sup>685</sup> in the region of the volcanic tract where it stretches to the east.

Zayd b. Ḥārithah's army approached from the direction of al-Awlāj<sup>686</sup> and raided al-Faḍāfiq<sup>687</sup> from the direction of the vol-

<sup>680.</sup> Ibn Sa'd (*Tabaqāt*, II/1, 65–66): Reached [a place called] Ḥismā. See also Bakrī, *Mu'jam*, II, 446–48.

<sup>681.</sup> Ibn Sa'd: B. Ārid, and his son 'Ārid.

<sup>682.</sup> A clan of Judhām. Kalbī, *Jamharah*, 245.

<sup>683.</sup> A clan of Balī. *Ibid.*, 330.

<sup>684.</sup> A place in the Judhām country. Bakrī, *Mu'jam*, IV, 1122.

<sup>685.</sup> Addition from Hisch., Ibn Ishāq.

<sup>686.</sup> Yāqūt, *Mu'jam*, I, 282.

<sup>687.</sup> Hisch., Ibn Ishāq: Al-Māqiṣ. They are place names, see Bakrī, *Mu'jam*, III, 1025.

canic tract. They rounded up the cattle and men they found, and killed al-Hunayd and his son and two men from the Banū al-Aḥnaf<sup>688</sup> and one from the Banū Khaṣīb.<sup>689</sup> When the Banū al-Dubayb and the army, who were in the flat plain of Madān,<sup>690</sup> heard about [the raid], Ḥassān b. Mallah, Unayf b. Mallah, and Abū Zayd b. ‘Amr rode to them. Ḥassān rode on Suwayd b. Zayd's horse called al-‘Ajājah, and Unayf on Mallah's horse called Righāl, and Abū Zayd on his own horse called Shamir. They went on until they approached the army, at which time Abū Zayd<sup>691</sup> said to Unayf b. Mallah, "Hold back from us and leave, for we are afraid of your tongue." So he left and held himself back. The two had hardly left him when his horse began to scrape the ground and jump. He said [to the horse], "I am more withholding from the two men than you are from the two horses," and he slackened the reins until he overtook them. They said to him, "If you are going to do what you have done, then spare us your tongue and don't bring us bad luck today." They agreed among themselves that only Ḥassān b. Mallah should speak. Now they had a word which they learned from one another in the pre-Islamic days. If someone wanted to strike with his sword he said "*thūrī*".<sup>692</sup> When they approached the army, the men came running to them and Ḥassān told them that they were Muslims. The first man to meet them was riding a deep black horse with his lance stretched out as if he had fixed it on the withers of his horse, and was saying, "Forward, overtake," while he advanced, leading the others. Unayf said "*thūrī*," and Ḥassān told him to take it easy. When they stood before Zayd b. Ḥārithah, Ḥassān said, "We are Muslims." Zayd replied, "Then recite the *Umm al-Kitāb*." When Ḥassān recited it, Zayd b. Ḥārithah said, "Proclaim to the army that God has forbidden us their land except from those who were unfaithful to their covenant."

Ḥassān b. Mallah's sister, the wife of Abū Wabr b. ‘Adī b. Umayyah b. al-Dubayb, was among the prisoners. Zayd told him

[1743]

688. Hisch., Ibn Hishām: Al-Aḥnaf.

689. Both Banū Aḥnaf and Banū Khaṣīb are clans of Judhām. Kalbī, *Jamharah*,

<sup>245.</sup>

690. Bakrī, *Mu'jam*, IV, 1200 (Mudān); Yāqūt, *Mu'jam*, V, 74.

691. Addition in Hisch., Ibn Ishāq: And Ḥassān.

692. Addition in Hisch., Ibn Ishāq: Or *būrī*.

to take her and she clung to his waist. Umm al-Fazr of al-Dulay' said, "Are you going away with your daughters and leaving behind your mothers?" One of the Banū Khaṣib said, "She is from the Banū al-Dubayb and their tongues cast spells all day long." Someone from the army heard that and told Zayd b. Ḥārithah about it, so he ordered that the hands of Ḥassān's sister be loosed from his waist and told her to sit with the daughters of her uncle until God decided about them. So, they [i.e., Ḥassān's party] went back and [Zayd] forbade the army to go down into the valley whence they had come. They [i.e., Ḥassān's party] passed the night with their people and milked the camels of Suwayd b. Zayd at nightfall. After they had drunk their night draught of milk, they rode off to Rifā'ah b. Zayd (among those who went were Abū Zayd b. 'Amr, Abū Shammās b. 'Amr, Suwayd b. Zayd, Ba'jah b. Zayd, Bardha' b. Zayd, Tha'labah b. 'Amr,<sup>693</sup> Makhrabah<sup>694</sup> b. 'Adī, Unayf b. Mallah, and Ḥassān b. Mallah), until they came to Rifā'ah b. Zayd in the morning in Kurā' Rabbah in the plain of the volcanic tract by a well there in Harrat Laylā.<sup>695</sup> Ḥassān b. Mallah said to him, "You sit milking goats while the women of Judhām are dragged off as prisoners. The letter which you have brought with you has deceived them." Rifā'ah asked for his camel and began to saddle it while reciting:

"Are you alive or do you call the living?"

In the early morning, they and he, with Umayyah b. Ḍafārah, the brother of the slain Khaṣibi, left the plain of the volcanic tract and journeyed for three nights to the plains of Medina. When they entered the city and arrived at the mosque, a man looked at them and said, "Don't make your camels kneel—otherwise their legs will be cut off." So they dismounted while the camels were standing. When they came to the Messenger of God, he saw them and waved them with his hand to advance [toward him] from behind the people. As Rifā'ah began to speak, a man [from the gathering] got up and said, "O Prophet of God, these men are sorcerers," and repeated it twice. Rifā'ah replied, "May God forgive him who does not treat us well today." Then he handed over the letter to the

693. Hisch., Ibn Isḥāq: Zayd.

694. Hisch., Ibn Isḥāq: Mukharribah.

695. Bakrī, *Mu'jam*, II, 436; Yāqūt, *Mu'jam*, II, 247–48.

Messenger of God which he had written for him, saying, "It falls short of your [dignity], O Messenger of God; it was written long ago but its violation is very recent." The Messenger of God asked a young man to read it openly. When he had read it, he asked what had happened. After they had told him the news, he said, "What am I to do about the slain?" and repeated it three times. Rifa'ah replied, "You, O Messenger of God, know best. We do not make unlawful what you consider to be lawful and we do not make lawful what you consider to be unlawful." Abū Zayd b. 'Amr said, "Release, O Messenger of God, those who are alive and overlook those who are dead." He answered, "Abū Zayd spoke the truth. O 'Alī, ride with them." 'Alī replied, "O Messenger of God, Zayd will not obey me." He replied, "Take [this] sword of mine," and gave him his sword. Then 'Alī told him that he did not have a beast to ride. The Messenger of God mounted him on a camel called al-Mikhāl belonging to Tha'labah b. 'Amr, and they departed. Suddenly a messenger from Zayd b. Ḥāritah appeared on a camel of Abū Wabr called al-Shamir. They dismounted from him and he asked 'Alī, "What have I done?" 'Alī replied, "It is their property, they recognized it and took it back." They continued until they met the army at Fayfā' al-Fahlatayn<sup>696</sup> and took back the property which was in their possession, even to a woman's saddle cloth from beneath a saddle.<sup>697</sup>

### *The Deputation of the Banū 'Āmir b. Sa'ṣa'ah<sup>698</sup>*

Ibn Ḥumayd—Salamah—Ibn Ishāq—'Āsim b. 'Umar b. Qatādah: The deputation of the Banū 'Āmir came to the Messenger of God, and among them were 'Āmir b. al-Ṭufayl, Arbad b. Qays b. Mālik<sup>699</sup> b. Ja'far, and Jabbār b. Sulmā<sup>700</sup> b. Mālik b. Ja'far. These three were the chiefs and mischief-makers (*shayāṭin*) of the tribe. 'Āmir b. al-Ṭufayl<sup>701</sup> came to the Messenger of God intending to

696. Yāqūt, *Mu'jam*, IV, 237.

697. Ibn Ishāq, *Sīrah*, IV, 264–65, cites a poem of Abū Jī'āl.

698. A branch of Hawāzīn. Kalbi, *Jamharah*, 93; Ibn Hazm, *Jamharah*, 272–73.

699. Hisch., Ibn Ishāq: Jaz' b. Khālid b. Ja'far. Ibn Sa'd: Arbad b. Rabi'ah b. Mālik b. Ja'far.

700. Ibn Ishāq: Salmā.

701. The enemy of God: Addition in Ibn Ishāq. He was responsible for the massacre of the Muslim deputation at Bi'r Ma'ünah. Ibn Hishām, *Sīrah*, III, 193 ff.; Lings, *Muhammad*, 322–23.

act perfidiously. His people had urged him to embrace Islam because others had embraced it, but he said, "By God, I have sworn that I would not cease [to attain power] until the Arabs follow me. Am I to follow the footsteps of this youth from Quraysh?" Then he said to Arbad, "When we<sup>702</sup> come to the man, I will divert his attention from you, and as I do that, cleave him with the sword." When they came to the Messenger of God, 'Āmir b. al-Tufayl said, "O Muḥammad, can I [talk to you] privately?"<sup>703</sup> He replied, "No, by God, [I will not talk to you] until you believe in God alone." ['Āmir b. al-Tufayl] repeated his request for privacy and went on talking to him, expecting that Arbad would act as he had told him, but Arbad did not return a word in reply. When 'Āmir saw that Arbad did not respond, he again repeated his request and the Messenger of God gave him the same reply. When the Messenger of God refused, he said, "Then, by God, I will fill the land with red horses<sup>704</sup> and men against you." When he turned away, the Messenger of God said, "O God, protect me from 'Āmir b. al-Tufayl."<sup>705</sup> On their return, 'Āmir said to Arbad, "Woe to you, Arbad! What happened to that with which I had charged you? By God, there was no man on the face of the earth whom I feared more than you, but by God, I shall never fear you after today." "May you have no father, don't be hasty with me," Arbad replied, "By God, whenever I tried to do what you had asked me to do, you got in my way so that I could not see anything but you. Was I to strike you with the sword?" 'Āmir b. al-Tufayl said:<sup>706</sup>

702. As in Ibn Ishāq. Text: I.

703. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, I/2, 51–52, gives a different version. He states: 'Āmir asked, "What would I get, O Muḥammad, if I accept Islam?" "You have the same rights and obligations as the Muslims," the Prophet replied. He asked, "Would you invest me with authority after you?" "That is neither for you nor for your people," the Prophet answered. He asked, "Would you grant me [authority] over tent dwellers and [you] exercise [authority] over city dwellers?" "No," the Prophet replied, "but I would appoint you as commander of the cavalry, because you are a warrior." He said, "Then, by God, I will fill . . ." Cf. Ibn Shabbah, *Ta'rikh*, II, 515–21, for a similar version. Ibn al-Athīr's (*Kāmil*, II, 298–99) report is similar to that of al-Tabārī.

704. Hisch., Ibn Ishāq, and Ibn Shabbah (according to one report): Horses.

705. Ibn Sa'd adds: Give guidance to the Banū 'Āmir and spare Islam of 'Āmir b. al-Tufayl! Ibn Shabbah: O God, if you cannot guide 'Āmir, then protect me from him!

706. The following verses are omitted from Hisch., Ibn Ishāq.

The Messenger sent what you see, as if  
we were intending to raid the troops of horsemen.  
Our horses became lean while bringing us to Medina,  
and they killed the *Anṣār* in their midst.

While they were on their way back to their country, God afflicted 'Āmir b. al-Tufayl's neck with a fatal disease [a tumor] and killed him while he was in the house of a woman from the Banū Salūl.<sup>707</sup> He began to say, "O Banū 'Amir, a lump like the lump of a young camel, and death<sup>708</sup> in the house of a woman from the Banū Salūl!" When they buried him, his companions left for the country of the Banū 'Amir. When they arrived there, their people came to them and asked Arbad what had happened. He replied, "Nothing, by God. He [i.e., Muhammad] called on us to worship something. I wish he were near me now, and I would shoot him with this arrow of mine and kill him." A day or two after he had uttered those words, he went out with his camel to sell<sup>709</sup> it, and God sent a thunderbolt which scorched him and his camel.<sup>710</sup> Arbad b. Qays was brother of Labid b. Rabi'ah by the same mother.

The deputation of Tayyi' came to the Messenger of God and talked to him, and he proposed Islam to them. Their leader, Zayd al-Khayl,<sup>711</sup> was among them.<sup>712</sup> They embraced Islam and became good Muslims. [1748]

Ibn Ḥumayd—Salamah—Ibn Ishāq—some men of Tayyi': The Messenger of God said, 'Every Arab man that has been spoken of to me in the highest terms has fallen short of what was said about him after I met him except Zayd al-Khayl. Indeed, all that was

707. Balādhuri, *Ansāb*, I, 282, states that he died in 5/626–27. The Banū Salūl was a clan related to the Banū 'Amir b. Sa'īd who were noted for their meanness. Ibn Hazm, *Jamharah*, 271–72.

708. And death: Omitted from Ibn Ishāq. Ibn Hishām: A lump like the lump of a camel, and death in a Salūlī house. 'Āmir's saying is used proverbially where one of the two things is more wicked than the other. Maydāni, *al-Amthāl*, II, 57–58.

709. Ibn Ishāq: With his camel behind him. Balādhuri, *Ansāb*, I, 282.

710. Ibn Hishām cites some Qur'ānic verses (13:9–14) revealed concerning Amir and Arbad. Ibn Ishāq, *Sīrah*, IV, 215–19, quotes elegies of Labid b. Rabi'ah for the death of Arbad.

711. *Al-Khayl* means horses, cavalry.

712. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, I/2, 59–60, states that they were fifteen men; Ibn al-Athīr, *Kāmil*, II, 299.

said about him does not render full justice [to all his attainments]." Then [the Prophet] named him Zayd al-Khayr,<sup>713</sup> granted him Fayd<sup>714</sup> and some lands with it, and wrote a document for him to that effect. As he left, returning to his people, the Messenger of God said that he hoped Zayd would escape the fever of Medina. The Messenger of God called it something other than fever and other than *umm mildam*,<sup>715</sup> but [the reporter] could not ascertain which. After Zayd had reached one of the watering places in Najd<sup>716</sup> called Fardah,<sup>717</sup> he was struck with the fever and died there. When he felt that his end was near he said:

Are my kinsfolk setting out eastward tomorrow,  
while I am to be left in a house in Fardah of Najd?  
Oftentimes if I fell sick, women would visit me,  
not worn out, but tired by the journey.

When he died, his wife took the documents granted to him by the Messenger of God and burnt them<sup>718</sup> in the fire.

In this year, Musaylimah wrote to the Messenger of God alleging that he was his associate in prophethood.

[1749] Ibn Ḥumayd—Salamah—Ibn Ishāq—‘Abdallāh b. Abī Bakr: Musaylimah b. Ḥabib, the arch-liar wrote to the Messenger of God:<sup>719</sup> "From Musaylimah the Messenger of God to Muḥammad the Messenger of God. Peace be upon you. Indeed, I have been made a partner with you in authority. To us belongs half of the land and to Quraysh the other half, but Quraysh are a transgressing people."<sup>720</sup> This letter was brought to the Messenger of God by two couriers.

Ibn Ḥumayd—Salamah—Ibn Ishāq—a Shaykh of Ashja‘ī. Ibn Ḥumayd states: As for ‘Alī b. Mujahid,<sup>721</sup> he reports from Abū

713. *Al-Khayr* means good, excellent.

714. A place name. Bakrī, *Mu’jam*, III, 1032–35; Yāqūt, *Mu’jam*, IV, 282–83.

715. A kind of fever. Ibn Manzūr, *Lisān*, s.v. l-d-m.

716. The highlands of Arabia, above the coastal plain, the upper part of which is formed by the Tihāmah and the Yemen and the lower by Syria and Iraq. *EI*<sup>1</sup>, s.v. Nedjīd; Musil, *Northern Negd* {for its topography}.

717. A place name. Bakrī, *Mu’jam*, III, 1017–18; Yāqūt, *Mu’jam*, IV, 248–49.

718. Ibn Sa’d: Tore them into pieces.

719. See Hamīdullāh, *Majmū’ah*, 256–57.

720. Ibn Shabbah (*Ta’rikh*, II, 572): Because [Quraysh] are just people.

721. Died after 182/798. Ibn Ḥajar, *Tahdhīb*, VII, 377–78.

Mālik al-Ashja'i<sup>722</sup>—Salamah b. Nu'aym b. Mas'ūd al-Ashja'i<sup>723</sup>—his father Nu'aym:<sup>724</sup> I heard the Messenger of God saying to the two couriers after they had read Musaylimah's letter, "What do you say about it?" They replied that their answer was what [Musaylimah] had said. "By God," he replied, "were it not that messengers are not to be killed I would have beheaded you."<sup>725</sup> Then he wrote to Musaylimah:<sup>726</sup> "In the name of God, the Compassionate, the Merciful. From Muḥammad, the Messenger of God, to Musaylimah the arch-liar. 'Peace be upon him who follows [God's] guidance.'<sup>727</sup> Now then: 'Surely the earth belongs to God, who bequeaths it to whom He will among His servants. The ultimate issue is to the God-fearing.'<sup>728</sup> This was at the end of the year 10/632.

Abū Ja'far [al-Ṭabarī]: It is said that the pretension of Musaylimah and of those who falsely alleged prophethood during the time of the Prophet actually took place after the Prophet had returned from his pilgrimage called the "Farewell Pilgrimage" and during the illness in which he died.<sup>729</sup>

'Ubaydallāh b. Sa'īd al-Zuhri<sup>730</sup>—his uncle Ya'qūb b. Ibrāhim<sup>731</sup>—Sayf b. 'Umar,<sup>732</sup> Al-Sari<sup>733</sup> wrote about it to me [i.e., al-Ṭabarī], saying that he had received an account on the authority of Shu'ayb b. Ibrāhīm al-Tamīmī—Sayf b. 'Umar al-Tamīmī al-Usayyidi—'Abdallāh b. Sa'īd b. Thābit b. al-Jidh' al-Anṣārī—'Abdallāh b. Ḥunayn,<sup>734</sup> the Messenger of God's freedman—Abū

[1750]

722. His name is Sa'd b. Tāriq al-Kūfi, and he died ca. 140/757–58. *Ibid.*, III, 472–73.

723. He was a companion of the Prophet. *Ibid.*, IV, 159.

724. Nu'aym b. Mas'ūd al-Ashja'i died during 'Uthmān's caliphate (23–35/644–56), or at the Battle of the Camel. *Ibid.*, X, 466.

725. Ibn Shabbah gives a different version.

726. See Hamidullāh, *Majmū'ah*, 257.

727. *Qu'ān* 20:47.

728. *Ibid.*, 7:128.

729. See Ibn al-Āthir, *Kāmil*, II, 299–300.

730. 'Ubaydallāh b. Sa'd [not Sa'id] al-Zuhri, a great-grandson of 'Abd al-Rahmān b. 'Awf, died in 260/873–74. Ibn Hajar, *Tahdhīb*, VI, 15–16.

731. Ya'qūb b. Ibrāhīm al-Zuhri died in 208/823–24. *Ibid.*, XI, 380–81.

732. Sayf b. 'Umar al-Tamīmī al-Kūfi, who represents the Iraqi historical school, died in 180/796. *Ibid.*, IV, 295–96; Duri, *Rise*, 7, 46–47, 140, 143, 144, 154.

733. Al-Sari b. Ismā'il al-Hamdānī al-Kūfi. Ibn Hajar, *Tahdhīb*, III, 459–60.

734. Died during the reign of Yazid II (101–5/720–24). *Ibid.*, V, 193–94.

Muwayhibah,<sup>735</sup> the Messenger of God's freedman: When the Prophet returned to Medina after performing the Pilgrimage of Completion [or Perfection of Religion] (*hajjat al-tamām*),<sup>736</sup> he began to have a complaint of illness. As travel was allowed [after the pilgrimage], the news of the Prophet's illness spread; so both al-Aswad<sup>737</sup> and Musaylimah leapt at [the opportunity and claimed prophethood for themselves]—the former in the Yemen and the latter in al-Yamāmah, and their news reached the Prophet. After the Prophet had recovered, Tulayḥah<sup>738</sup> leapt at [the opportunity and claimed prophethood] in the land of the Banū Asad. Then in Muharram the Prophet complained of the pain from which he died.

**Abū Ja'far [al-Ṭabarī]:** The Messenger of God dispersed his representatives to every land where Islam had entered to collect the alms (*al-ṣadaqāt*).

Ibn Humayd—Salamah—Ibn Ishāq—‘Abdallāh b. Abī Bakr: The Messenger of God sent out his officials and representatives to every district wherein Islam had set foot to collect the alms. He sent al-Muhājir b. Abī Umayyah b. al-Mughīrah to Ṣan‘ā,<sup>739</sup> and al-‘Ansī rebelled against him while he was there. He sent Ziyād b. Labid, a brother of the Banū Bayādah al-Anṣārī, to Ḥadramawt. He sent ‘Adī b. Hātim to collect the alms from Tayyi’ and Asad. He sent Mālik b. Nuwayrah to the Banū Ḥanẓalah. He divided [the task of collecting] the alms from the Banū Sa‘d between two of their own men: [Zibriqān b. Badr and Qays b. ‘Āsim, each in charge of a district].<sup>740</sup> He sent al-‘Alā’ b. al-Ḥadramī to al-Bahrayn, and ‘Ali b. Abī Tālib to Najrān to collect their alms and bring their poll tax to him.

735. Ibn Sa‘d, *Tabaqāt*, I/2, 180.

736. It was during this pilgrimage that the verse “Today I have perfected your religion, and completed My favor toward you, and have consented to grant you Islām as a religion,” (Qur’ān 5:3) was revealed. Ibn Sa‘d, *Tabaqāt*, II/1, 135. See Tabari, below, I, 1794.

737. Al-Aswad b. Ka‘b al-‘Ansī, from Madhīj, was a leader of the first *riddah* in the Yemen. His occupation of Ṣan‘ā’ lasted only a month or two, for he is said to have died before the Prophet. *EI*<sup>2</sup>, s.v. al-Aswad.

738. Tulayḥah b. Khuwaylid, one of the tribal leaders, who headed the *riddah* as a prophet, gained the support of the Banū Fazārah and an important section of Tayyi’ and joined the revolt in Central Arabia. *EI*<sup>1</sup>, s.v. Tulaiḥa.

739. The capital city of Yemen. *EI*<sup>1</sup>, s.v. Ṣan‘ā’.

740. Addition from Hisch., Ibn Ishāq and Ibn al-Athīr (*Kāmil*, II, 301).

When the month of Dhū al-Qa'dah started this year, that is, the year 10/632, the Prophet made preparations for the pilgrimage and ordered the people to get ready.

Ibn Humayd—Salamah—Ibn Ishāq—'Abd al-Rahmān b. Qāsim<sup>741</sup>—his father<sup>742</sup>—'Ā'ishah the Prophet's wife:<sup>743</sup> The Prophet departed for the pilgrimage on the twenty-fifth of Dhū al-Qa'dah.<sup>744</sup> Neither he nor the people talked of anything but the pilgrimage, until when he was in Sarif<sup>745</sup> and had driven with him the sacrificial animals as some nobles had also done, he ordered the people to remove their pilgrim garments, except for those who had brought the sacrificial animals [with them].<sup>746</sup> That day my menses started. He called on me while I was weeping and said, "What is the matter with you, O 'Ā'ishah? Are you in your menses?" "Yes," I replied, "I wished I had not come with you on this journey this year." "Don't do that," he said, "Don't say that, for you can carry out [all the rites] performed by a pilgrim except that you will not circumambulate the Ka'bah." The Messenger of God entered Mecca and his wives and everyone who did not have a sacrificial animal with him took off the pilgrim

741. Died ca. 126/743–44. Ibn Hajar, *Tahdhīb*, VI, 254–55.

742. Qāsim b. Muḥammad b. Abī Bakr al-Ṣiddiq died ca. 106/724–25. *Ibid.*, VIII, 333–35.

743. See Tabarī, below, I, 1767; *EP*, s.v. 'Ā'ishah bint Abi Bakr.

744. Ibn Ḥishām adds: The Prophet appointed Abū Dujānah al-Sā'idi—others say Sibā' b. 'Urfūtah al-Ghifārī—over Medina.

745. About six miles from Mecca. Ḥarbi, *Manāsik*, 465–66; Bakrī, *Mu'jam*, III, 735–36.

746. Those without the sacrificial animals should be content with the 'umrah, because those who perform the pilgrimage must sacrifice an animal.

Before the pilgrim arrives in Mecca, he puts on the *ihrām*. He is then *muhrim*, in a state of holiness. The rites on arrival at Mecca are the same for all, for the *hajj* is in a way an 'umrah, which is a rite of visiting the Ka'bah and the Holy Places around it. The 'umrah consists of circumambulating the Ka'bah seven times (*tawāfi*), praying two *rak'ahs* facing the *Maqām Ibrāhim* and the Ka'bah, and walking [fast] (*sa'y*) seven times between Ṣafā and Marwah. What follows after it depends on the intention of the pilgrim made at the time of assuming the *ihrām*. If he intended to perform either the *hajj* alone (*ifrād*), or the 'umrah and the *hajj* together (*qirā'a*), then in neither case does he relinquish the state of holiness after having performed the rites of arrival. If he wants to perform the 'umrah first and then to enjoy the freedom of a normal life (*tamattu'*), not resuming the state of holiness again until the last minute (i.e., on the eighth of Dhū al-Hijjah), he deconsecrates himself by having a few locks of hair cut off. In this case, he will have to offer a sacrifice within the sacred territory within a specified period. See *EP*, s.v. Hadidj, Fahd, *Panthéon*, 203ff . . .

garment. On the day of sacrifice, beef<sup>747</sup> was brought to me and put in my house. When I asked what it was, they said that the Messenger of God had sacrificed some cows on behalf of his wives. On the night of *haṣbah*,<sup>748</sup> he sent me with my brother 'Abd al-Rahmān b. Abī Bakr to perform the '*umrah* from al-Tanīm<sup>749</sup> in place of the '*umrah* which I had missed.<sup>750</sup>

Ibn Ḥumayd—Salamah—Ibn Isḥāq—Ibn Abī Najīḥ:<sup>751</sup> The Messenger of God had sent 'Ali b. Abī Ṭālib to Najarān and met him in Mecca while he was still in a state of *iḥrām*. [When he arrived,] 'Ali went into Fāṭimah,<sup>752</sup> the Messenger of God's daughter, and found that she was not in her pilgrim garments and was prepared [to receive him]. He asked her, "What is the matter with you, O daughter of the Messenger of God?" She replied, "The Messenger of God ordered us to remove the pilgrim garments, so we did." Then he went to the Messenger of God. After he had finished reporting about his journey, the Messenger of God told him to go and circumambulate the Ka'bah and remove the pilgrim garments as his companions had done. He replied, "O Messenger of God, I have decided to sacrifice an animal as you did." He said, "Remove the pilgrim garments as your companions have done." 'Ali replied, "O Messenger of God, when I put on the pilgrim garments I said, 'O God, I will invoke your name over a

747. Hisch., Ibn Isḥāq: A large portion of beef.

748. It is the following day of the last throwing of pebbles in the valley of Minā, or the night after the days called *Ayyām al-tashriq*, that is, the fourteenth night of Dhū al-Hijjah. Lane, *Lexicon*, s.v. h-ṣ-b.

749. A place about four miles from Mecca. Ḥarbi, *Manāsik*, 467; Bakri, *Mu'jam*, I, 321; Yaqūt, *Mu'jam*, II, 49–50.

750. Ibn Isḥāq adds: When the Messenger of God ordered his wives to remove the pilgrim garments, they asked him, "What prevents you, O Messenger of God, from doing the same with us?" "I have sent my sacrificial animals and have matted my hair (*labbada sha'arahu*, means the pilgrim, in the state of holiness, puts upon his head some kind of gum so that his hair become compacted together and might not become shaggy, Lane, *Lexicon*, s.v. l-b-d)," the Prophet replied, "so I shall not be free from the *iḥrām* until I sacrifice my animals."

Wāqidi, *Maghāzi*, III, 1092, also states that the Prophet performed both the '*umrah* and the *hajj* together. For a different opinion, see Balādhuri, *Ansāb*, I, 369.

751. 'Abdallāh b. Abī Najīḥ died in Mecca in 132/749–50. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqaṭ*, V, 355; Ibn Hajar, *Tahdhib*, VI, 54–55.

752. Fāṭimah, daughter of the Prophet and Khadijah, wife of 'Ali, mother of Hasan and Husayn, was the only daughter of the Prophet to have survived him by six months and to enjoy great renown. El², s.v. Fāṭima. See Ṭabarī, below, I, 1767, 1825.

sacrifice as your servant and Messenger does.''" [The Prophet] asked ['Ali] whether he had a sacrificial animal, and when he replied that he did not have one, the Messenger of God made him a partner in his sacrificial animal. 'Ali retained his pilgrim garments with the Messenger of God until both of them had completed the pilgrimage and the Messenger of God slaughtered the animals on behalf of them both.<sup>753</sup>

Ibn Ḥumayd—Salamah—Ibn Ishāq—Yahyā b. 'Abdallāh b. 'Abd al-Rāḥmān b. Abī 'Amrah<sup>754</sup>—Yazid b. Ṭalḥah b. Yazid b. Rukānah: When 'Ali b. Abī Ṭālib came from the Yemen to meet the Messenger of God in Mecca, he hurried to him and left one of his companions in charge of his army. That man dressed some of the men<sup>755</sup> in the army with linen clothes that were entrusted to 'Ali b. Abī Ṭālib. When the army approached [Mecca], he went out to receive them and found that they were dressed in the linen clothing. "Woe to you," he said, "what is this?" "I dressed them so that they might look handsome when they came to the people," the man replied. 'Ali asked him to remove [the clothing] before he came to the Messenger of God. He did so and returned them to the booty, but the army expressed resentment at their treatment.

Ibn Ḥumayd—Salamah—Muhammad b. Ishāq—'Abdallāh b. 'Abd al-Rāḥmān b. Ma'mar b. Hazm<sup>756</sup>—Sulaymān b. Muham-mad b. Ka'b b. 'Ujrah—his paternal aunt Zaynab bt. Ka'b b. 'Ujrah who was married to Abū Sa'id al-Khudrī—Abū Sa'id [al-Khudrī]: When the people [i.e., the army] complained [about the behavior] of 'Ali b. Abī Ṭālib, the Messenger of God stood up to address us, and I heard him say, "O people, do not complain of 'Ali. By God, he is too tough in the matters of God or in the way of God [to be blamed]."<sup>757</sup>

[1753]

753. Balādhurī, *Ansāb*, I, 370, states that the Prophet had brought with him a hundred camels, sixty of which he sacrificed himself and 'Ali the remainder. Gaudefroy-Demombynes, *Mahomet*, 200, considers the above report, without any reason, a Shī'i legend.

754. Ibn Hajar, *Tahdhīb*, XI, 241–42.

755. Ibn Ishāq: Every man.

756. He was *qādi* of Medina during the reign of 'Umar b. 'Abd al-'Aziz (99–101/717–20). Ibn Hajar, *Tahdhīb*, V, 297.

757. Addition from Ibn Ishāq. See also Ibn al-Athīr, *Kāmil*, II, 301; Lings, *Muhammad*, 335.

Ibn Ḥumayd—Salamah—Ibn Ishāq—‘Abdallāh b. Abī Najīḥ: Then the Messenger of God proceeded to perform his pilgrimage, showing the people its rites and teaching them its customs.<sup>758</sup> Then he addressed them in a speech and elucidated [certain things]. After he had praised and glorified God, he said, “O people, listen to my words. I do not know whether I shall ever meet you again in this place after this year. O people, your blood and your property are sacrosanct until you meet your Lord, just as this day and this month of yours are sacred. Surely you will meet your Lord and He will question you about your deeds. I have [already] made this known. ‘Let he who has a pledge return it to the one who entrusted him with it,’<sup>759</sup> all usury is abolished,<sup>760</sup> but ‘your capital belongs to you. Wrong not and you shall not be wronged.’<sup>761</sup> God has decreed that there will be no usury, and the usury of ‘Abbās b. ‘Abd al-Muṭṭalib is abolished, all of it.<sup>762</sup> All blood shed in the pre-Islamic days is to be left unavenged. The first such claim I revoke is that of Ibn Rabi‘ah<sup>763</sup> b. al-Ḥārith b. ‘Abd al-Muṭṭalib,<sup>764</sup> who was nursed among the Banū Layth<sup>765</sup> and was slain by the Banū Hudhayl. His is the first blood shed in the pre-Islamic days with which I shall set an example. O people, indeed Satan despairs of ever being worshipped in this land of yours. He will be pleased, however, if he is obeyed in a thing other than that, in matters you minimize. So beware of him in your religion, O people, ‘Intercalating a month is an increase of disbelief whereby the unbelievers go astray; one year they make it profane, and hallow it another, [in order] to agree with the number that God has hallowed, and so profane what God has hallowed, and hallow what God has made profane.’<sup>766</sup> Time has completed its cycle [and is] as

758. For details, see Wāqidī, *Maghāzī*, III, 1097–1102; Lings, *Muhammad*, 332–35.

759. Qur‘ān 2:283; 4:58.

760. *Ibid.*, 2:279.

761. *Ibid.*

762. Wāqidī (*Maghāzī*, 1103): All the usury of pre-Islamic days is abolished. The first such usury I abolish is that of al-‘Abbās b. ‘Abd al-Muṭṭalib.

763. Wāqidī (*Maghāzī*, III, 1103, 1111): Iyās b. Rabi‘ah. Ḥamidullāh (*Majmū‘ah*, 307); ‘Āmir b. Rabi‘ah.

764. It was Rabi‘ah’s infant son Ādām who was killed in pre-Islamic days. Ibn Sa‘d, *Tabaqāt*, IV/1, 32; Ibn Hajar, *Tahdhīb*, III, 254.

765. Wāqidī: The Banū Sa‘d.

766. Qur‘ān 9:37. For the Islamic calendar, see Ryckmans, *Religions*, 13; Gaudefroy-Demombynes, *Mahomet*, 547–48.

it was on the day that God created the heavens and the earth. 'The number of the months with God is twelve: [they were] in the Book of God on the day He created the heavens and the earth. Four of them are sacred,'<sup>767</sup> the three consecutive [months]<sup>768</sup> and the Rajab, [which is called the month of]<sup>769</sup> Muḍar,<sup>770</sup> which is between Jumādā [II] and Sha'bān.'<sup>771</sup>

"Now then, O people, you have a right over your wives and they have a right over you. You have [the right] that they should not cause anyone of whom you dislike to tread your beds; and that they should not commit any open indecency (*fāḥishah*).<sup>772</sup> If they do, then God permits you to shut them in separate rooms and to beat them, but not severely. If they abstain from [evil], they have the right to their food and clothing in accordance with custom (*bi'l-ma'rūf*). Treat women well, for they are [like] domestic animals ('awān<sup>in</sup>) with you and do not possess anything for themselves. You have taken them only as a trust from God, and you have made the enjoyment of their persons lawful by the word of God, so understand and listen to my words, O people. I have conveyed the Message, and have left you with something which, if you hold fast to it, you will never go astray: that is, the Book of God and the *sunnah* of His Prophet.<sup>773</sup> Listen to my words, O people, for I have conveyed the Message and understand [it]. Know for certain that every Muslim is a brother of another Muslim, and that all Muslims are brethren. It is not lawful for a person [to take] from his brother except that which he has given him willingly, so do not wrong yourselves. O God, have I not

[1755]

767. Qur'ān 9:36.

768. Wāqidi (*Maghāzi*, III, 1112) adds: Dhū al-Qa'dah, Dhū al-Hijjah, and Muharram. [It is in the Prophet's address on the Day of Sacrifice.]

769. Addition from Wāqidi.

770. It was so called because Muḍar used to treat it as sacred with the utmost dignity. Ibn Manzūr, *Lisān*, s.v. r-j-b.

771. Wāqidi adds: The month [consists of] twenty-nine and thirty days.

772. It means an immoral act or a sexual offense. It seems that the pre-Islamic Arabs cared little for adultery, provided it was not performed openly. The Prophet's prohibiting a man, long absent from his home, to return to his family at night, is corroborated by Ibn Mujāhir, *Ta'rīkh*, I, 26. It also concurs with the confinement prescribed in the Qur'ān 4:15, but it contravenes the punishment prescribed in the Qur'ān 24:2. Philby, *Sheba's Daughters*, 46; idem, *Arabian Highlands*, 28; Serjeant, "Translation," 9; idem, "Early Arabic Prose," 121-22. See Tabārī, below, I, 1821, n. 1321.

773. The *sunnah* of His Prophet: Omitted from Wāqidi.

conveyed the message?" It was reported [to me]<sup>774</sup> that the people said, "O God, yes," and the Messenger of God said, "O God, bear witness."<sup>775</sup>

Ibn Ḥumayd—Salamah—Muhammad b. Ishāq—Yahyā b. 'Abbād b. 'Abdallāh b. al-Zubayr<sup>776</sup>—his father 'Abbād:<sup>777</sup> The man who used to repeat the Messenger of God's words loudly to the people when he was on 'Arafah was Rabi'ah b. Umayyah b. Khalaf. The Messenger of God would say to him. "Say: O people, the Messenger of God says, do you know what month this is?" and they would say, "The sacred month." Then he would say, "Say to them: God has made your blood and your property sacrosanct until you meet your Lord, like the sanctity of this month of yours." Then he said [to him], "Say: the Messenger of God says, O people, do you know what land this is?" Rabi'ah would call out loudly and they would say, "The Holy Land." He would say, "Say: God has hallowed your blood and your property until you meet your Lord like the sanctity of this land of yours." Then he said, "Say: O people, do you know what day this is?" Rabi'ah repeated [this] to them and they said, "The day of the Greater Pilgrimage." He said, "Say: God has made your blood and your property sacrosanct until you meet your Lord like the sanctity of this day of yours."<sup>778</sup>

Ibn Ḥumayd—Salamah—Muhammad b. Ishāq—'Abdallāh b. Abī Najīḥ: When the Messenger of God stood on 'Arafah he said, "This station is for the mountain that is above it, so all of 'Arafah is a station." When he stood on Quzah on the morning of al-Muzdalifah he said, "This station and all of al-Muzdalifah is a

774. Addition from Ibn Ishāq.

775. In his "L'allocation," Blachère has shown that this address deals with certain general problems, probably paraphrased from the Prophet's sayings on different occasions. The versions of Ibn Ishāq, Wāqidī, Ibn Sa'd, and Tabarī are, more or less, consistent in content. Blachère has pointed out seventeen themes in this address. See also Ḥamidullāh, Majmū'ah, 306-9.

776. Ibn Hajar, *Tahdhīb*, XI, 234-35.

777. *Ibid.*, V, 98.

778. Ibn Ishāq adds [with a different *isnād*]: "O people, God has given everyone his due. Testamentary bequests to an heir are not permitted. The child belongs to the bed and the adulterer must be stoned. He who claims as father him who is not his father, or a client claims a master (*mawlā*) who is not his master, is cursed by God, the angels, and the mankind. Neither repentance (*sarf*) nor ransom ('adl) shall be accepted from him by God." Lane, *Lexicon*, s.v. 'd-l; s-r-f.

[1756]

station." Then when he had slaughtered [the sacrificial animals] in the slaughtering place [in Minā]<sup>779</sup> he said, "This slaughtering place and all of Minā is a slaughtering place." The Messenger of God completed the pilgrimage, showed the people its rites, and taught them what was required of them for their pilgrimage, [including] the stations, the throwing of pebbles,<sup>780</sup> the circumambulation of the Ka'bah, and what God had permitted them [to do] and what He had forbidden them [from doing]. It was the Farewell Pilgrimage (*hajjat al-wadā'*)<sup>781</sup> and the Pilgrimage for Conveying the Message (*hajjat al-balāgh*),<sup>782</sup> because the Messenger of God did not make any pilgrimage after that.

**Abū Ja'far [al-Tabarī]:** The military expeditions (*ghazawāt*)<sup>783</sup> in which the Messenger of God personally participated were twenty-six. Some say that they were twenty-seven. Those who maintain the number as twenty-six count the Prophet's expedition to Khaybar and the expedition from there to Wādi al-Qurā<sup>784</sup> as one, because after accomplishing the victory he did not return from Khaybar to his abode but marched from there to Wādi al-Qurā. Those who say that [the expeditions] were twenty-seven

779. Quzah, Muzdalifah, and Minā are sacred places visited by the pilgrim during the pilgrimage. Minā is a place in the hills east of Mecca on the road from it to 'Arafah. Muzdalifah is a place halfway between Minā and 'Arafah where the pilgrims returning from 'Arafah spend the night. see *EP*, s.v. Hadjdj; *EI*<sup>1</sup>, s.v. Minā, Muzdalifa.

780. For its interpretation, see Fahd, *Divination*, 188–95.

781. It is so called because the Prophet bade farewell to the people and died shortly thereafter. Balādhurī, *Ansāb*, I, 368; Mas'ūdi, *Tanbih*, 240.

782. Mas'ūdi, *Tanbih*, 240, states that it is so called because the Prophet announced that time had completed its cycle and was as it had been on the day that God created the heavens and the earth. [Probably, he implies the cancellation of intercalating a month.]

Ibn Sa'd states that the Muslims call this pilgrimage the *hajjat al-islām*. It was probably so-called because the Ka'bah and other sacred precincts were now purified of all pagan presence and heathen rites. It was made clear that all rites were now dedicated to Allāh and to His worship. The Prophet had taken every opportunity to free the rites from their pagan associations. His performance of the rites during this pilgrimage became a *sunnah* to be followed by the faithful. Cf. Wāqidi, *Maghāzi*, III, 1089; Balādhurī, *Ansāb*, I, 368, See Tabarī, below, I, 1794.

783. See above, n. 432.

784. An ancient town and a prosperous region in the northern Hijāz on the old trading route from South Arabia to Syria, where the Egyptian and Syrian pilgrim caravans to Mecca also converge. It is now called al-'Ulā. *EI*<sup>1</sup>, s.v. Wādi l-Kurā; Al-Wohaibi, *Hijaz*, 293–300, 315ff.

count the Khaybar expedition as one and the Wādī al-Qurā expedition as another, making the number as twenty-seven.

Ibn Ḥumayd—Salamah—Muhammad b. Ishaq—‘Abdallāh b. Abī Bakr: The total number of military expeditions in which the Messenger of God personally took part were twenty-six.<sup>785</sup> The raid on Waddān,<sup>786</sup> which is the expedition of al-Abwā’,<sup>787</sup> was the first, [followed by] the expedition of Buwāt<sup>788</sup> in the direction of Raḍwā.<sup>789</sup> Then [the following]: the expedition of al-‘Ushayrah,<sup>790</sup> in the valley of Yanbu’;<sup>791</sup> the first expedition at Badr in pursuit of Kurz b. Jābir; the [great]<sup>792</sup> battle of Badr in which the chiefs of Quraysh and their nobles were slain and [many] were captured; the expedition of the Banū Sulaym, [which continued] until he reached their watering place al-Kudr,<sup>793</sup> the expedition of al-Sawīq in pursuit of Abū Sufyān until he reached Qarqarat al-Kudr; the expedition of Ghāṭafān toward Najd, which is the expedition of Dhū Amarr,<sup>794</sup> the expedition of Baḥrān,<sup>795</sup> a mine above al-Furu’ in the Hijāz; the expedition of Uhud,<sup>796</sup> the expedition of Ḥamrā’ al-Asad,<sup>797</sup> the expedition of the Banū al-Naḍir,<sup>798</sup> the expedition of Dhāt al-Riqā’ of Nakhl,<sup>799</sup> another expedition at Badr; the expedition of Dūmat al-Jandal;<sup>800</sup> the ex-

[1757] 785. Hisch., Ibn Ishaq: Twenty-seven. For details, see Ibn Hishām, *Sīrah*, Wāqidi, *Maghāzī*, and Ibn Sa’d, *Tabaqāt*. Balādhuri, *Ansāb*, I, 287–371; Watt, *Muhammad at Medina*, 339–43.

786. A settlement about eight miles from al-Abwā’. Al-Wohāibi, *Hijaz*, 290–92.

787. A place name on the route between Medina and Mecca where the Prophet’s mother was buried. Ḥarbī, *Manāsik*, 453–56; Al-Wohāibi, *Hijaz*, 35–40.

788. A mountain in the direction of Raḍwā. Bakrī, *Mu’jam*, I, 283; Yāqūt, *Mu’jam*, I, 503.

789. A chain of the Tihāmah mountains about seven *marāhil* from Medina. Bakrī, *Mu’jam*, II, 655–59; Yāqūt, *Mu’jam*, III, 51.

790. A place between Mecca and Medina in the direction of Yanbu’. Yāqūt, *Mu’jam*, IV, 127.

791. A place near Raḍwā. Bakrī, *Mu’jam*, IV, 1402; Yāqūt, *Mu’jam*, V, 449–50.

792. Addition from Hisch., Ibn Ishaq.

793. Bakrī, *Mu’jam*, IV, 1119; Yāqūt, *Mu’jam*, IV, 441–42.

794. A place in Najd. Bakrī, *Mu’jam*, I, 192–93; Yāqūt, *Mu’jam*, I, 252–53.

795. About four nights’ journey from Medina. Bakrī, *Mu’jam*, I, 228; III, 1020–21; Yāqūt, *Mu’jam*, IV, 252.

796. See Tabarī, above, I, 1661, n. 74.

797. A place about 16 km from Medina. Bakrī, *Mu’jam*, II, 468; Yāqūt, *Mu’jam*, II, 301.

798. One of the three Jewish tribes settled in Medina. *ShEI*, s.v. Naḍir.

799. A place about three days’ journey from Medina. Bakrī, *Mu’jam*, II, 664–65; Yāqūt, *Mu’jam*, III, 56.

800. See Tabarī, above I, 1702, n. 412.

pedition of al-Khandaq<sup>801</sup> [the siege of Medina]; the expedition of the Banū Qurayzah,<sup>802</sup> the expedition of the Banū Liḥyān of Hudhayl,<sup>803</sup> the expedition of Dhū Qarad,<sup>804</sup> the expedition of the Banū al-Muṣṭaliq of Khuzā'ah;<sup>805</sup> the expedition of al-Hudaybiyah, during which he did not intend to fight but the polytheists blocked the passage [to Mecca for the lesser pilgrimage]; the expedition of Khaybar; he performed the lesser pilgrimage, the Lesser Pilgrimage of Fulfillment ('umrat al-qadā');<sup>806</sup> the Expedition of the Conquest (the conquest of Mecca); the expedition of Hunayn; the expedition of al-Tā'if; the expedition of Tabūk. He actually fought in nine of them: Badr, Uhud, al-Khandaq, Qurayzah, al-Muṣṭaliq, Khaybar, the conquest of Mecca, Hunayn, and al-Tā'if.

Al-Ḥārith<sup>807</sup>—Ibn Sa'd<sup>808</sup>—Muhammad b. 'Umar—Muhammad b. Yahyā b. Sahl b. Abī Ḥathmah—his father—his grandfather.<sup>809</sup> The Messenger of God carried out twenty-six expeditions. Then he cited a report similar to that of Ibn Ḥumayd on the authority of Salamah [as cited above].

Muhammad b. 'Umar: The Messenger of God's expeditions are well-known and [their number is] agreed upon. No one disputes about their number, which is twenty-seven, but the authorities differ among themselves with regard to their sequence.

Al-Ḥārith—Ibn Sa'd—Muhammad b. 'Umar—Mu'ādh b.

801. Khandaq means a ditch, a trench. It is applied to the "Expedition of the Khandaq," because the Muslims foiled a Meccan attempt to storm Medina by digging a trench at those parts of the city which were open to attack by cavalry. *E1<sup>2</sup>*, s.v. *Khandaq*.

802. One of the three Jewish tribes of Medina. *E1<sup>2</sup>*, s.v. *Kurayza*.

803. Kalbī, *Jamharah*, 58.

804. A well about two nights' journey from Medina toward Khaybar. Yāqūt, *Mu'jam*, IV, 321–22. It is also known as the "Expedition of al-Ghabāh."

805. Kalbī, *Jamharah*, 196. It is also called the "Expedition of al-Muraysī," after the name of a well.

806. So-called because in the previous year when the Prophet left Medina intending to make the lesser pilgrimage, the Quraysh blocked his way, and subsequent negotiations resulted in the truce of Hudaybiyah. His intention was, however, fulfilled the following year when he made the lesser pilgrimage.

807. See Ṭabarī, above, I, 1721, n. 545.

808. Muhammad b. Sa'd al-'Awfi died in 276/888. Khaṭīb, *Ta'rīkh*, V, 322–23.

809. Sahl b. Abī Ḥathmah, a companion of the Prophet, died during the early part of Mu'awiyah's reign (41–60/661–80). Ibn Ḥajar, *Tahdhīb*, IV, 248–49, IX, 199, states that Muhammad b. Sahl b. Abī Ḥathmah and Muhammad b. Sulaymān b. Abī Ḥathmah transmitted from him.

Muhammad al-Anṣārī<sup>810</sup>—Muhammad b. Thābit al-Anṣārī<sup>811</sup> Ibn ‘Umar was asked how many expeditions the Messenger of God carried out and he said, “Twenty-seven campaigns.” Then it was said to him, “In how many did you participate with him?” He replied, “Twenty-one; the first was al-Khandaq and I missed six. I was eager to take part and offered myself to the Prophet for all of them, but he turned me down and did not permit me [to take part] until al-Khandaq.”

[1758] Al-Wāqidi states that the Messenger of God fought in eleven expeditions. He mentioned nine of them, which I have reported on the authority of Ibn Ishāq, enumerating with them the expedition of Wādī al-Qurā. He stated that he fought there with his slave Mid’am, who was shot by an arrow and killed. Al-Wāqidī [also] states that he fought on the day of al-Ghābah and that some of the polytheists as well as Muhriz b. Naḍlah were killed on that day.

*Disagreement about the Number of the Armies  
and the Raiding Parties (Sarāyā) Sent  
by the Messenger of God<sup>812</sup>*

Muhammad b. Humayd—Salamah—Muhammad b. Ishāq—‘Abdallāh b. Abī Bakr: The armies and the raiding parties sent by the Messenger of God between the time he came to Medina and the time in which he died number thirty-five.<sup>813</sup> The expedition of ‘Ubaydah b. al-Hārith to the tribes of Thaniyyat al-Marah,<sup>814</sup> which is a well in the Ḥijāz; the expedition of Ḥamzah b. ‘Abd al-Muṭṭalib to the coast in the direction of al-‘Iṣ<sup>815</sup> (some people date Ḥamzah’s expedition before that of ‘Ubaydah’s); the expedition of Sa’d b. Abī Waqqāṣ to al-Kharrār<sup>816</sup> in the Ḥijāz; the expedition of

810. Ibid., X, 193–94.

811. Ibid., IX, 84.

812. See above, n. 432. Watt, *Muhammad at Medina*, 339–43, has given a comprehensive list of those expeditions.

813. Hisch, Ibn Ishāq: Thirty-eight. Ibn al-Athir (*Kāmil*, II, 304) states: It is said thirty-five, or forty-eight. For details, see Ibn Hishām, *Sīrah*; Wāqidi, *Maghāzi*; Ibn Sa’d, *Tabaqāt*; Balādhuri, *Ansāb*, I, 371–84, lists about sixty.

814. A valley in the Tihāmah. Bakri, *Mu’jam*, II, 612–13; IV, 1209.

815. A valley containing several villages on the Red Sea. Al-Wohaibi, *Hijaz*, 81–83.

816. A watering place of the Banū Ḱamrah. Bakri, *Mu’jam*, II, 492.

'Abdallāh b. Jahsh to Nakhlah;<sup>817</sup> the expedition of Zayd b. Hārithah to al-Qardah,<sup>818</sup> one of the wells in Najd;<sup>819</sup> the expedition of Marthad b. Abī Marthad al-Ghanawī to al-Rajī<sup>820</sup> the expedition of al-Mundhir b. 'Amr to Bi'r Ma'ūnah;<sup>821</sup> the expedition of Abū 'Ubaydah b. al-Jarrāh to Dhū al-Qaṣṣah<sup>822</sup> on the way to Iraq; the expedition of 'Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb to Turabah<sup>823</sup> in the country of the Banū 'Āmir; the expedition of 'Ali b. Abī Ṭālib to the Yemen; the expedition of Ghālib b. 'Abdallāh al-Kalbī, the Kalb of Layth, to al-Kadid,<sup>824</sup> [where] he inflicted losses on the Banū al-Mulawwah; the expedition of 'Ali b. Abī Ṭālib to the Banū 'Abdallāh b. Sa'd, the inhabitants of Fadak;<sup>825</sup> the expedition of Ibn Abī al-'Awjā' al-Sulamī to the land of the Banū Sulaym where he and all of his companions were killed; the expedition of 'Ukkāshah b. Miḥṣan to al-Ghamrah,<sup>826</sup> the expedition of Abū Salamah b. 'Abd al-Asad to Qaṭan,<sup>827</sup> one of the wells of the Banū Asad toward Najd, where Mas'ūd b. 'Urwah was killed; the expedition of Muḥammad b. Maslamah, a brother of the Banū al-Hārith, to al-Quraṭā<sup>828</sup> of Hawāzin; the expedition of Bashir b. Sa'd to the Banū Murrah in Fadak; another expedition of Bashir b. Sa'd to Yumn<sup>829</sup> and Jināb,<sup>830</sup> [which are] towns in the land of

[1759]

817. A valley, later known as the "Bustān of Ibn 'Āmir," was the last major halt before Mecca on routes from al-Kūfah, al-Baṣrah, Najd, and the Yemen. Al-Wohābi, *Hijaz*, 166–83.

818. Bakrī, *Mu'jam*, III, 1062; it is spelled *al-Qardā*.

819. Addition in Hisch., Ibn Isḥāq; The raid of Muḥammad b. Maslamah on Ka'b b. al-Ashraf.

820. A well of Hudhayl between Mecca and al-Tā'if. Bakrī, *Mu'jam*, II, 641–43; Yāqūt, *Mu'jam*, III, 29.

821. A watering place between Mecca and Medina. Yāqūt, *Mu'jam*, I, 302.

822. Bakrī, *Mu'jam*, III, 1076–77; Yāqūt, *Mu'jam*, IV, 366.

823. Bakrī, *Mu'jam*, I, 308–9.

824. A place between Mecca and Medina. Ibid., IV, 1119.

825. An ancient town in the northern Ḥijāz, near Khaybar, which was a colony of Jewish agriculturists. It owes its fame in Islamic history to the fact that its surrender was obtained through an agreement between the Prophet and its inhabitants, and that it gave rise to a disagreement between Fātimah and Abū Bakr. It is now known as al-Hā'iṭ. El<sup>2</sup>, s.v. Fadak. For its historical geography, see Jāsir, *Shimāl*, 295ff., 510. See Tabarī, below, I, 1825, n. 1355.

826. A well near Medina, in the direction of Najd. Yāqūt, *Mu'jam*, IV, 212.

827. Bakrī, *Mu'jam*, III, 1083–84.

828. A clan of the Banū Bakr of Kilāb. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, II/1, 56; Ibn Ḥazm, *Jamharah*, 282.

829. Yumn or Yamn is a well of Ghaṭafān. Yāqūt, *Mu'jam*, V, 449.

830. Bakrī, *Mu'jam*, II, 395–96; Yāqūt, *Mu'jam*, II, 164.

Khaybar [it is said that Yumn and Jabār<sup>831</sup> are lands in the land of Khaybar]; the expedition of Zayd b. Ḥārithah to al-Jamūm<sup>832</sup> in the land of the Banū Sulaym; another expedition of Zayd b. Ḥārithah to Judhām in the land of Hismā<sup>833</sup> (its report has been cited before); another expedition of Zayd b. Ḥārithah to Wādi al-Qurā, where he encountered the Banū Fazārah; the expedition of 'Abdallāh b. Rawāḥah to Khaybar twice,<sup>834</sup> on one occasion of which God killed Yusayr b. Rizām.

It is reported about Yusayr b. Rizām, the Jew, that he was gathering Ghāṭāfān in Khaybar to attack the Messenger of God, so the latter sent 'Abdallāh b. Rawāḥah with a number of his companions, among whom were 'Abdallāh b. Unays, an ally of the Banū Salamah. When they came to him they spoke to him, made promises, treated him nicely, and said, "If you come to the Messenger of God he will give you an assignment and honor you."

[1760] They continued [urging him] until he went with them, accompanied by a number of Jews. 'Abdallāh b. Unays mounted him on his camel and rode behind him. When he was in al-Qarqarah,<sup>835</sup> about six miles from Khaybar, Yusayr b. Rizām regretted going to the Messenger of God. 'Abdallāh b. Unays perceived his intention as he was getting ready to draw his sword, so he leapt at him and struck him with his sword, severing his leg. Yusayr hit him with a stick (with a crooked head) of *shawḥat*<sup>836</sup> wood which was in his hand, aiming at his head. God killed Yusayr, and each one of the Messenger of God's companions fell upon their Jewish travelling companions and killed them, except for one person who escaped on his mount.<sup>837</sup> When 'Abdallāh b. Unays came to the Messenger of God the Prophet spat on his head wound, and it did not fester or hurt him.

The expedition of 'Abdallāh b. 'Atīk to Khaybar where he killed

831. Jubār: in Bakrī, *Mu'jam*, II, 363; and Yāqūt, *Mu'jam*, II, 98.

832. Bakrī, *Mu'jam*, II, 394.

833. It is after Wādi al-Qurā. Yāqūt, *Mu'jam*, II, 258–59.

834. The following report forms a separate account in Ibn Ishāq and is not included in the summary.

835. It is Qarqarat al-Kudr. Bakrī, *Mu'jam*, III, 1065–66.

836. A species of tree in the Sarāt mountains from which bows are made. The name varies according to the excellence of the place of growth, and *shawḥat* is that which grows on the lowest part of the mountain. Lane, *Lexicon*, s.v. sh-h-t.

837. Hisch., Ibn Ishāq: On his foot.

Abū Rāfi'. Between the battles of Badr and Uhud, the Messenger of God sent Muḥammad b. Maslamah with his companions to Ka'b b. al-Ashraf, and they killed him. The Messenger of God sent 'Abdallāh b. Unays to Khālid b. Sufyān b. Nubayḥ al-Hudhalī while he was in Nakhlah or 'Uranah<sup>838</sup> preparing to attack the Messenger of God and killed him.

Ibn Ḥumayd—Salamah—Muḥammad b. Ishāq—Muḥammad b. Ja'far b. al-Zubayr<sup>839</sup>—'Abdallāh b. Unays.<sup>840</sup> The Messenger of God called me and said, "It has reached me that Khālid b. Sufyān b. Nubayḥ al-Hudhalī is gathering a force to attack me. He is either in Nakhlah or 'Uranah, so go to him and kill him." I replied, "O Messenger of God, describe him to me so that I might know him." He said, "When you see him he will remind you of Satan. [A sure] sign between you and him is that when you see him you will feel a shudder." I went out, girding on my sword, until I came to him while he was in howdah with the women, seeking a halting place for them at the time for afternoon prayer. When I saw him I found him to be as the Messenger of God had described. I advanced toward him, but fearing that there might be acrimony between me and him which would distract me from the prayer, I prayed, making gestures with my head as I walked toward him. When I got to him he asked who I was, and I replied, "An Arab who has come to you because he has heard about you and your gathering [a force] against this fellow [i.e., Muḥammad]." He said, "Yes, I am doing that." I walked a short distance with him and when it was feasible for me I struck him with my sword and killed him. Then I departed, leaving his women to throw themselves at him. When I came to the Messenger of God and greeted him, he looked at me and asked, "Is the objective accomplished?" I replied, "I have killed him." "You have said the truth," he replied. Then he stood up and went<sup>841</sup> into his house and gave me a stick, saying, "Keep this stick with you O 'Abdallāh b. Unays." When I went out with it the people asked me what that stick was. I told them that the Messenger of God had given it to me and asked me to keep it with me. They told me to go back

[1761]

838. Bakrī, *Mu'jam*, III, 935.

839. He died between 110/728–29 and 120/738. Ibn Hajar, *Tahdhīb*, IX, 93.

840. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, II/1, 35–36; Ibn Hajar, *Tahdhīb*, V, 151.

841. Ibn Ishāq: And took me to his house.

to him and ask him the reason for that. So I went back to him and said, "O Messenger of God, why did you give me this stick?" He replied, "[As a] sign between me and you on the day of resurrection. There will be a few men at that time who will carry sticks tied to their waists (*al-mutakhaṣṣirūn*)."<sup>842</sup> 'Abdallāh, therefore, fastened the stick to his sword, where it remained with him until his death, when he ordered that it should be fastened to his body with the shroud and buried with him.

(Now the report goes back to 'Abdallāh b. Abī Bakr who states:) The expedition of Zayd b. Hārithah, Ja'far b. Abī Ṭālib, and 'Abdallāh b. Rawāḥah to Mu'tah<sup>843</sup> in the land of Syria,<sup>843</sup> the expedition of Ka'b b. 'Umayr al-Ghifārī to Dhāt Aṭlāḥ<sup>844</sup> in the land of Syria, where he and his companions were killed; the expedition of 'Uyaynah b. Hiṣn to the Banū al-'Anbar of the Banū Tamīm. It is reported by them that the Messenger of God sent 'Uyaynah to them, who raided them, killed some of their people, and took the others captive.

Ibn Ḥumayd—Salamah—Ibn Ishāq—'Āsim b. 'Umar b. Qatādah: 'Ā'ishah said to the Messenger of God, "O Messenger of God, I must free a slave of the sons of Ismā'il." He replied, "These captives of the Banū al-'Anbar are coming now. We will give you one, and you can set him free." Ibn Ishāq states: When their captives were brought to the Messenger of God, a deputation of the Banū Tamīm rode with them until they arrived before the Messenger of God. Among them were Rabī'ah b. Rufay', Sabrah b. 'Amr, al-Qa'qā' b. Ma'bad, Wardān b. Muhriz, Qays b. 'Āsim, Mālik b. 'Amr, al-Aqra' b. Hābis, Ḥanżalah b. Dārim, and Firās b. Hābis.<sup>845</sup> Among their women who were taken captive on that day were Asmā' bt. Mālik, Ka's bt. Aṛi, Najwah bt. Nahd, Jumay'ah bt. Qays, and 'Amrah bt. Maṭar.

(The report goes back to 'Abdallāh b. Abī Bakr, who states:) The expedition of Ghālib b. 'Abdallāh al-Kalbī, the Kalb of Layth, to the land of the Banū Murrah, in which Mirdās b. Nahik, an ally of

842. A village near Syria. Yāqūt, *Mu'jam*, V, 219–20.

843. Ibn Ishāq adds: In which all were killed.

844. A place after Wādi al-Qurā. Yāqūt, *Mu'jam*, I, 218.

845. Addition in Hisch., Ibn Ishāq: They spoke to the Messenger of God about the captives. [The Prophet] liberated some and accepted ransom for others. 'Abdallāh b. Wahb, his two brothers, Shaddād b. Firās, and Ḥanżalah b. Dārim were among the Banū al-'Anbar who were killed that day.

theirs from al-Huraqah of Juhaynah, was killed by Usāmah b. Zayd and a man of the *Anṣār*.<sup>846</sup> It is he about whom the Prophet said to Usāmah, "Who will absolve you [from ignoring] the *shahādah*?" The expedition of 'Amr b. al-Āṣ to Dhāt al-Salāsil,<sup>847</sup> the expedition of Ibn Abī Ḥadrād and his companions to the valley of Idām,<sup>848</sup> another expedition of Ibn Abī Ḥadrād al-Aslāmī to al-Ghābah,<sup>849</sup> the expedition of 'Abd al-Rahmān b. 'Awf. The Messenger of God sent an army to the seashore commanded by Abū 'Ubaydah b. al-Jarrāḥ, which was the expedition of al-Khabaṭ.

Al-Ḥārith b. Muḥammad—Ibn Sa'd—Muḥammad b. 'Umar: The armies and the raiding parties sent by the Messenger of God were forty-eight.

Al-Wāqidī states: In this year, in [the month of] Ramadān, Jarir b. 'Abdallāh al-Bajalī came to the Messenger of God accepting Islam, so he sent him to *Dhū al-Khalāṣah* [an idol],<sup>850</sup> which he demolished.

In this year, Wabar b. Yuhannas came to the descendants of the Persian soldiers (*al-abnā'*) living in the Yemen, inviting them to Islam. He stayed with the daughters of al-Nu'mān b. Buzurj [Buzurg], who embraced Islam. He sent word to Fayrūz al-Daylāmī, who embraced Islam, and [he also sent word] to Markabūd and his son 'Aṭā', as well as to Wahb b. Munabbih.<sup>851</sup> Wahb b. Munabbih and 'Aṭā' b. Markabūd were the first to collect (*jama'a*) the Qur'ān in Ṣan'ā'.

846. Ibn Ishāq: Usāmah said: When I and a man from the *Anṣār* overtook him and attacked him with our weapons, he pronounced the *shahādah*, but we did not stay our hands and killed him. When we came to the Messenger of God we told him what had happened and he said, 'Who will absolve you [from ignoring] the *shahādah*?"

847. A watering place in the Judhām country. Bakri, *Mu'jam*, III, 744.

848. It is near Medina. Ibid., I, 165–66.

849. It is near Medina. Ibid., II, 521–24; III, 989. See above, n. 804.

850. A sacred stone worshiped by the tribes of Daws, Khath'am, Bajila, the Azd of the Sarāt mountains and the Arabs of Tabālah. The sanctuary was in Tabālah at a place called al-'Ablā' between Mecca and the Yemen. As a rallying point for a good many tribes, the sanctuary was called *al-Kā'bah al-Yamāniyyah* in contrast to the Meccan sanctuary, which was called *al-Kā'bah al-Shāmiyyah*.

In the lower part of Mecca there was an idol bearing the name of *al-Khalāṣah*, but it is not certain whether it can be identified with the above divinity. Wellhausen, *Skizzen*, III, 42–45; Lane, *Lexicon*, s.v. kh-l-ṣ; Jásir, *Sarāt*, 338ff.; EI<sup>2</sup>, s.v. Dhu 'l-Khalāṣah.

851. He is probably the ancestor of Wahb b. Munabbih, who died in 114/732 and is known for his accounts of the Yemenite history and tales of the ancient Isra-elites. Duri, *Rise*, passim.

In this year, Bāzān embraced Islam and sent [a messenger] to the Prophet with his acceptance of Islam.

Abū Ja'far [al-Ṭabarī] states: The above report [about the *sarāyā*] is at variance with what is reported by 'Abdallāh b. Abī Bakr [that the *sarāyā* were thirty-five] and those who stated that the Messenger of God's expeditions were twenty-six.

[1764] Abū Kurayb Muḥammad b. al-'Alā'—Yaḥyā b. Ādām<sup>852</sup>—Zuhayr<sup>853</sup>—Abū Ishaq—Zayd b. Arqam:<sup>854</sup> I heard that the Messenger of God carried out nineteen expeditions, and that he made one pilgrimage after he emigrated [to Medina]. He did not make any pilgrimage other than the Farewell Pilgrimage. Ibn Ishaq mentioned a pilgrimage at the time of the conquest of Mecca. Abū Ishaq states: I asked Zayd b. Arqam, "How many expeditions did you take part in with the Messenger of God?" He replied, "Seventeen."

Ibn al-Muthannā—Muhammad b. Ja'far—Shu'bah—Abū Ishaq: 'Abdallāh b. Yazid al-Anṣārī went out with the people to pray for rain. He offered two *rak'ahs* and then prayed for rain. That day I met Zayd b. Arqam. There was only one person between me and him. I asked him, "How many expeditions did the Messenger of God undertake?" "Nineteen," he replied. I asked, "How many did you participate in with him?" "Seventeen," he replied. I asked, "What was the first expedition he carried out?" He said, "Dhāt al-'Usayr, or al-'Ushayr." Al-Wāqidi alleges that [the report] is erroneous.

Al-Ḥārith—Ibn Sa'd—Muhammad b. 'Umar—Isrā'il—Abū Ishaq al-Hamdāni: I asked Zayd b. Arqam, "How many expeditions did you participate in with the Messenger of God?" "Seventeen expeditions," he replied. I asked, "How many expeditions did the Messenger of God carry out?" "Nineteen expeditions," he replied.

Al-Ḥārith—Ibn Sa'd—al-Wāqidi: When I narrated this report to 'Abdallāh b. Ja'far, he said, "This is the chain of narrators for the people of Iraq, who state [the affair] thus. The first expedition in which Zayd b. (al-)Arqam took part was al-Muraysī', while he was still a young boy. He was present in the expedition of Mu'tah as a

852. Died in 203/818–19. Ibn Ḥajar, *Tahdhīb*, XI, 175–76.

853. Zuhayr b. Mu'āwiya died ca. 172/788–89. *Ibid.*, III, 351–52.

854. He was a companion of the Prophet and died in 66/685–86 or 68/687–88. *Ibid.*, III, 394–95.

rear man for 'Abdallāh b. Rawāḥah, and only participated with the Prophet in three or four expeditions." [1765]

That which al-Hārith reported to me is also reported from Makhūl. [This report is received on the authority of] Ibn Sa'd—Ibn 'Umar—Suwayd b. 'Abd al-'Aziz—al-Nu'mān b. al-Mundhir<sup>855</sup>—Makhūl: The Messenger of God carried out eighteen expeditions, out of which he personally fought in eight. The first of them was Badr, then Uhud, then al-Ahzāb, and then Qurayzah.

Al-Wāqidī states: Both of these reports, that of Zayd b. al-Arqam and of Makhūl, are wrong.

### *Report about the Messenger of God's Pilgrimages*

'Abdallāh b. Ziyād—Zayd b. al-Hārith—Sufyān al-Thawrī<sup>856</sup>—Ja'far b. Muḥammad<sup>857</sup>—his father [Muhammad al-Bāqir]—Jābir: The Prophet made three pilgrimages, two before the Emigration and one after. [The latter was also performed] with the lesser pilgrimage ('umrah).<sup>858</sup>

'Abd al-Hamīd b. Bayān<sup>859</sup>—Ishāq b. Yūsuf<sup>860</sup>—Sharīk<sup>861</sup>—Abū Ishāq—Mujaḥid<sup>862</sup>—Ibn 'Umar:<sup>863</sup> The Messenger of God performed two 'umrahs before performing the pilgrimage. When this report reached 'Ā'ishah, she said, "The Messenger of God performed four 'umrahs."<sup>864</sup> 'Abdallāh b. 'Umar knew that. One of [the 'umrahs] was with the pilgrimage."

855. Died in 132/749–50. *Ibid.*, X, 457.

856. Died in 161/777–78. *Ibid.*, IV, 111–15.

857. He is the sixth Shī'i imām, who died in 148/765 in Medina. See *EP*, s.v. Dī'far al-Ṣādik.

858. Some authorities state that he made one pilgrimage before the Emigration, while others state that he made two. Wāqidī (*Maghāzi*, III, 1088–89) considers the report that the Prophet made only one pilgrimage from Medina, known as *hajat al-wadā'*, to be more authentic. See also Ibn Kathīr, *Sīrah*, IV, 429.

859. Bayān: Corrected from Ibn Ḥajar, *Tahdhīb*, VI, 111; he died in 244/858–59. Text: Banān.

860. Died in 195/810–11. *Ibid.*, I, 257.

861. Sharīk b. 'Abdallāh al-Nakha'i al-Kūfi died ca. 177/793–94. *Ibid.*, IV, 333–37.

862. Mujaḥid b. Jabr al-Makkī died ca. 101/719–20. *Ibid.*, X, 42–44.

863. See Tabarī, above, I, 1677, n. 216.

864. They are: 'umrat al-Hudaybiyyah in A.H. 6, 'umrat al-qadā' in A.H. 7, 'umrat al-jī'rānah in A.H. 8, and the 'umrah with the Farewell Pilgrimage in A.H. 10. Wāqidī, *Maghāzi*, III, 1088, enumerates the first three only. Ibn Kathīr, *Sīrah*, IV, 429.

Muhammad b. 'Ali b. al-Hasan b. Shariq: I heard my father saying: I have received an account on the authority of Abū Ḥamzah—Muṭarrif<sup>865</sup>—Abū Ishāq—Mujāhid: I heard Ibn 'Umar saying that the Messenger of God performed three 'umrahs. When [this report] reached 'Ā'ishah, she said that Ibn 'Umar knew that he performed four, and that one of them was combined with the pilgrimage.

[1766] Ibn Ḥumayd—Jarīr<sup>866</sup>—Manṣūr<sup>867</sup>—Mujāhid: Once 'Urwah b. al-Zubayr and I entered the mosque while Ibn 'Umar was sitting near 'Ā'ishah's room. We asked him, "How many 'umrahs did the Prophet perform?" "Four," he replied, "One of them was in Rajab."<sup>868</sup> We disliked contradicting and refuting him, but we heard the noise of 'Ā'ishah in the room cleaning her teeth with the siwāk.<sup>869</sup> 'Urwah b. al-Zubayr said, "O my mother, O Mother of the Faithful, do you not hear what Abū 'Abd al-Rahmān says?" "What does he say?" she asked. He replied, "He says that the Prophet performed four 'umrahs, and that one of them was in Rajab." She replied, "May God treat Abū 'Abd al-Rahmān with mercy! The Prophet did not perform any 'umrah when he was not present, and he did not perform [any] 'umrah in Rajab."

*Report about the Messenger of God's Wives,  
Those Who Survived Him, Those Who Left Him,  
the Reason for Which They Left,  
and Those Who Died before Him*

Al-Ḥārith—Ibn Sa'd—Hishām b. Muḥammad:<sup>870</sup> My father reported to me that the Messenger of God married fifteen women

865. Muṭarrif b. Tarīf al-Ḥārithī died between 133/750–51 and 143/760–61. Ibn Ḥajar, *Tahdhīb*, X, 172–73.

866. Jarīr b. 'Abd al-Ḥamid al-Ḍabbī died in 188/803–4. *Ibid.*, II, 75–77.

867. Manṣūr b. al-Mu'tamir al-Kūfi died in 132/749–50. *Ibid.*, X, 312–15.

868. 'Umrah during the month of Rajab was considered solemn by the Quraysh. Gaudefroy-Demombynes, *Mahomet*, 201.

869. A piece of stick [from a tree called *arāk*] with which the teeth are cleaned, the end of it being made like a brush by chewing it. Lane, *Lexicon*, s.v. s-w-k.

870. Hishām b. Muḥammad b. al-Sā'ib al-Kalbī died in 204/819 or 206/821 in al-Kūfah. Ibn Ḥajar, *Lisān*, VI, 196–97. The *isnād* implied here is: His father—Abū Ṣāliḥ—Ibn 'Abbās. The same *isnād* is cited in Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*. See also *EP*, s.v. Kalbī, Hishām b. Muḥammad.

and consummated his marriage with thirteen. He combined eleven at a time and left behind nine.<sup>871</sup>

He married Khadijah bt. Khuwaylid b. Asad b. 'Abd al-'Uzzā in pre-Islamic days when he was twenty and some years old.<sup>872</sup> She was the first [woman] whom he married. Before that she was married to 'Atiq<sup>873</sup> b. 'Abid b. 'Abdallāh b. 'Umar b. Makhzūm. Her mother was Fātimah bt. Zā'idah b. al-Asamm b. Rawāḥah b. Hajar b. Ma'iṣ b. Lu'ayy. From 'Atiq she gave birth to a girl,<sup>874</sup> after which he died. She was then married to Abū Ḥālah b. Zurārah b. Nabbāsh b. Zurārah b. Ḥabib b. Salāmah b. Ghuzayy b. Jurwah b. Usayyid b. 'Amr b. Tamīm, who was of the Banū 'Abd al-Dār b. Quṣayy. From Abū Ḥālah she gave birth to Hind bt. Abī Ḥālah,<sup>875</sup> after which he died. When the Messenger of God married [Khadijah], she had Hind bt. Abī Ḥālah with her. She bore eight children with the Messenger of God: al-Qāsim, al-Ṭayyib, al-Ṭāhir, 'Abdallāh, Zaynab, Ruqayyah, Umm Kulthūm, and Fātimah.<sup>876</sup>

[1767]

871. Ibn Hishām (*Sīrah*, IV, 293): He married thirteen women and left behind nine. Ibn al-Athīr (*Kāmil*, II, 307), reporting on the authority of Ibn al-Kalbī, gives the same account as that of Tabarī. See also Ibn Kathīr, *Sīrah*, IV, 580. Watt, *Muhammad at Medina*, 393–99, and Gaudefroy-Demombynes, *Mahomet*, 223–33, give a comprehensive list. The latter tries to justify Muḥammad's nine wives (at the same time) by the Qur'ānic verse 4:3, by adding the numbers two, three, and four. The sequence of his marriages, as given by Ibn Ishāq, *Kitāb al-Mubtada'*, 227–50, is as follows: First Khadijah, then Sawdah, then 'A'ishah, then Ḥafṣah, then Zaynab bt. Khuzaymah, then Umm Ḥabibah, then Umm Salamah, then Zaynab b. Jahsh, then Juwayriyyah, then Ṣafiyah, and then Maymūnah.

872. Muḥammad's age at the time of his marriage with Khadijah is generally given as twenty-five, but some sources state that he was twenty-one, or thirty. Her age, on the other hand, is generally given as forty; however, according to some reports she was either twenty-eight or two years older than Muḥammad. She died in Ramadān, tenth year of the mission (or three years before the Emigration). Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, VIII, 7–27; Ibn Kathīr, *Sīrah*, IV, 581.

873. Ibn Hishām: Utayyiq. Ibn Ishāq [*Kitāb al-Mubtada'*, 229]: 'Atiq b. 'Ā'idh.

874. Ibn Hishām adds: And 'Abdallāh. Ibn Sa'd adds: Called Hind, hence she was called Umm Hind.

875. Ibn Hishām adds: And Zaynab bt. Abī Ḥālah. Ibn Ishāq [*Kitāb al-Mubtada'*, 229]: [From Abū Ḥālah] she gave birth to a boy and a girl.

876. Ibn Hishām, *Sīrah*, I, 202, names three male children as al-Qāsim, al-Ṭāhir, and al-Ṭayyib. Ibn Ishāq, *Kitāb al-Mubtada'*, 229, cites two reports: (i) it states that she gave birth to seven children, four female and three male, al-Qāsim, al-Ṭāhir, and al-Ṭayyib; (ii) it states that she gave birth to six children, four female and two male, al-Qāsim, and 'Abdallāh. Ibn al-Athīr, *Kāmil*, II, 307, names eight children as given in Tabarī, but Ibn Sa'd lists seven and states that 'Abdallāh was

**Abū Ja'far [al-Ṭabarī]:** The Messenger of God did not marry another woman during the life of Khadijah until she passed away. When she died, the Messenger of God got married, but [opinions] differ as to whom he married first after Khadijah. Some say that it was 'Ā'ishah bt. Abī Bakr al-Ṣiddiq, while others say that it was Sawdah bt. Zam'a b. Qays b. 'Abd Shams b. 'Abd Wudd b. Naṣr. As for 'Ā'ishah, when he married her she was very young and not yet ready for consummation,<sup>877</sup> whereas Sawdah was already married before. Before the Prophet, her husband was al-Sakrān b. 'Amr b. 'Abd Shams. Al-Sakrān was one of the emigrants to Abyssinia (*al-Habashah*), who became a Christian and died there. The Messenger of God married her while he was in Mecca.<sup>878</sup>

**Abū Ja'far [al-Ṭabarī]** states: All those knowledgeable about the Messenger of God's life agree that the Messenger of God consummated his marriage with Sawdah before [consummating his marriage with] 'Ā'ishah.

also called Tāhir. Ibn Kathir, *Sīrah*, IV, 581–83, also names three male children: al-Qāsim, al-Tayyib, and al-Tāhir. They died in their infancy: al-Qāsim and Tāhir before the mission, while Tayyib after the mission. Some scholars state that Tāhir and Tayyib are names of 'Abdallāh. Zaynab, the eldest daughter, was married to her cousin Abū al-'Āṣ b. al-Rabī'ah before the mission. Her husband fought against the Muslims at Badr and was taken captive. She died in 8/629. 'Ali b. Abī Tālib married her daughter Amāmah after the death of Fātimah.

Both Ruqayyah and Umm Kulthūm were betrothed to Abū Lahab's sons before the mission, but were divorced after the revelation of *sūrah* 111. Ruqayyah was later married to 'Uthmān. After her death in Ramaḍān 2/624, Umm Kulthūm was married to 'Uthmān in Rabi' I, 3/624, and she died in Sha'bān 9/631. Fātimah, born five years before the mission, was the youngest daughter and survived her father for a few months. For details, see Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, VIII, 7–27; Balādhuri, *Ansāb*, I, 396–407; Ṭabarī, *Dhuyūl*, 493–94, 498–99; Gaudefroy-Demombynes, *Mahomet*, 233–36; *EI<sup>2</sup>*, s.v. Khadidja.

877. She was six years old when the Prophet married her in Shawwāl, tenth year of the mission. The marriage was consummated in Shawwāl in Medina when she was nine years old. She died in Ramaḍān 58/678. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, VIII, 39–56; Balādhuri, *Ansāb*, I, 409–21.

878. Ibn Isḥāq [*Kitāb al-Mubtada'*, 238] states that the couple returned to Mecca and al-Sakrān died there while he was a professing Muslim. The Prophet married her in Ramaḍān, tenth year of the mission. At one time, during the later Median period, the Prophet divorced her, but she came back pleading and he agreed to take her back. She died in 23/644 or at a later date. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, VIII, 35–39; Balādhuri, *Ansāb*, I, 407–8; *EI<sup>2</sup>*, s.v. Sawda bint Zam'a.

*The Reason Why the Messenger of God Asked for  
the Hands of Both 'Ā'ishah and Sawdah in Marriage  
and the Received Reports as to with Whom He First  
Contracted the Marriage*

Sa'īd b. Yaḥyā b. Sa'īd al-Umawī<sup>879</sup>—his father<sup>880</sup>—Muhammad b. 'Amr—Yaḥyā b. 'Abd al-Rahmān b. Ḥāfiẓ<sup>881</sup>—'Ā'ishah: When Khadījah died, Khawlah bt. Ḥakīm b. Umayyah b. al-Awqāṣ, wife of 'Uthmān b. Maz'ūn, who was in Mecca, said [to the Messenger of God], "O Messenger of God, will you not marry?" He replied, "Whom?" "A maiden," she said, "if you like, or a non-maiden." He replied, "Who is the maiden?" "The daughter of the dearest creature of God to you," she answered, "'Ā'ishah bt. Abī Bakr." He asked, "And who is the non-maiden?" "Sawdah bt. Zam'ah b. Qays," she replied, "she has [long] believed in you and has followed you." [So the Prophet] asked her to go and propose to them on his behalf.

[1768]

She went to Abū Bakr's house, where she found Umm Rūmān, mother of 'Ā'ishah, and said, "O Umm Rūmān, what a good thing and a blessing has God brought to you!" She said, "What is that?" Khawlah replied, "The Messenger of God has sent me to ask for 'Ā'ishah's hand in marriage on his behalf." She answered, "I ask that you wait for Abū Bakr, for he should be on his way." When Abū Bakr came, Khawlah repeated what she had said. He replied, "She is [like] his brother's daughter. Would she be appropriate for him?" When Khawlah returned to the Messenger of God and told him about it he said, "Go back to him and say that he is my brother in Islam and that I am his brother [in Islam], so his daughter is good for me." She came to Abū Bakr and told him what the Messenger of God had said. Then he asked her to wait until he returned.

Umm Rūmān said that al-Muṭ'im b. 'Adī had asked 'Ā'ishah's hand for his son, but Abū Bakr had not promised anything. Abū Bakr left and went to Muṭ'im while his wife, mother of the son for

879. Died in 249/863. Ibn Ḥajar, *Tahdhīb*, IV, 97–98.

880. Yaḥyā b. Sa'īd b. Abān b. Sa'īd b. al-As died in 194/809–10. *Ibid.*, XI, 213–

<sup>14</sup>.

881. Died in 104/722–23. *Ibid.*, XI, 249–50.

[1769]

whom he had asked 'Ā'ishah's hand, was with him. She said, "O son of Abū Quhāfah, perhaps we could marry our son to your daughter if you could make him leave his religion and bring him in to the religion which you practice." He turned to her husband al-Muṭ'im and said, "What is she saying?" He replied, "She says [what you have just heard]." Abū Bakr left, [realizing that] God had [just] removed the problem he had in his mind. He said to Khawlah, "Call the Messenger of God." She called him and he came. Abū Bakr married ['Ā'ishah] to him when she was [only] six years old.

Then Khawlah left and went to Sawdah, saying, "O Sawdah, what a good thing and a blessing has God brought to you!" She said, "What is that?" Khawlah replied, "The Messenger of God has sent me with a marriage proposal." Sawdah said, "I want you to go to my father and tell him about it." Khawlah states: He was a very old man and had stayed away from the pilgrimage. I went to him and greeted him with the pre-Islamic salutation and told him that Muḥammad b. 'Abdallāh b. 'Abd al-Muṭ'alib had sent me to ask for Sawdah's hand in marriage. "A noble match," he replied, "What does your friend<sup>882</sup> say?" "She likes it," Khawlah replied. He said, "Call her to me." She was called and he said, "O Sawdah, [this woman] alleges that Muḥammad b. 'Abdallāh b. 'Abd al-Muṭ'alib has sent her to propose marriage to you, which is a noble match. Do you wish that I marry you to him?" "Yes," she replied. Then he called for him. [The Prophet] came and he married her to him. Her brother 'Abd b. Zam'ah came from the pilgrimage and [when he found out about the marriage] began to pour dust over his head. After he had embraced Islam he said, "I was a fool who poured dust over his head the day the Messenger of God married Sawdah bt. Zam'ah."

[1770]

'Ā'ishah states: We came to Medina and Abū Bakr took up quarters in al-Sunh among the Banū al-Hārith b. al-Khazraj. The Messenger of God came to our house and men and women of the Anṣār gathered around him. My mother came to me while I was being swung on a swing between two branches and got me down. Jumaymah, my nurse, took over and wiped my face with some water and started leading me. When I was at the door, she stopped

---

882. As in IA [Ibn al-Athīr, *Uṣd al-ghābah*]. Text: His friend.

so I could catch my breath. I was then brought [in] while the Messenger of God was sitting on a bed in our house. [My mother] made me sit on his lap and said, "These are your relatives. May God bless you with them and bless them with you!" Then the men and women got up and left. The Messenger of God consummated his marriage with me in my house when I was nine years old. Neither a camel nor a sheep was slaughtered on behalf of me. Only Sa'd b. 'Ubādah sent a bowl of food which he used to send to the Messenger of God.

'Ali b. Naṣr—'Abd al-Ṣamad b. 'Abd al-Wārith—'Abd al-Wārith b. 'Abd al-Ṣamad—his father—Abān al-'Aṭṭār—Hishām b. 'Urwah—'Urwah: He wrote to 'Abd al-Malik b. Marwān<sup>883</sup> stating that he had written to him about Khadijah bt. Khuwaylid, asking him about when she died. She died three years or close to that before the Messenger of God's departure from Mecca, and he married 'Ā'ishah after Khadijah's death. The Messenger of God saw 'Ā'ishah twice—[first when] it was said to him that she was his wife (she was six years old at that time), and later [when] he consummated his marriage with her after coming to Medina when she was nine years old.

(The report goes back to Hishām b. Muḥammad. See above, I, 1766.) Then the Messenger of God married 'Ā'ishah bt. Abī Bakr, whose name is 'Atiq b. Abī Quhāfah, who is 'Uthmān, and is called 'Abd al-Rahmān b. 'Uthmān b. 'Āmir b. 'Amr b. Ka'b b. Sa'd b. Taym b. Murrah. [The Prophet] married her three years before the Emigration, when she was seven years old, and consummated the marriage when she was nine years old, after he had emigrated to Medina in Shawwāl. She was eighteen years old when he died. The Messenger of God did not marry any maiden except her.

1771

Then the Messenger of God married Ḥafṣah bt. 'Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb b. Nufayl b. 'Abd al-'Uzzā b. Riyāḥ b. 'Abdallāh b. Qurṭ b. Ka'b.<sup>884</sup> Before that she was married to Khunays b. Hudhāfah b.

883. He was the fifth Umayyad caliph (65–86/685–705). *EP*, s.v. 'Abd al-Malik b. Marwān.

884. The Prophet married her in Sha'bān 3/February 625 before the battle of Uhud. She was his fourth wife. One day, when she returned from her father's house, she found the Messenger of God with Māriyah in her house and burst into hysterical behavior. The situation was further aggravated by 'Ā'ishah's chattering tongue. According to Ibn Ishāq (*Kitāb al-Mubtada'*, 240) the Prophet had divorced her once but then took her back. She died in Sha'bān 45/665. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*,

Qays b. 'Adī b. Sa'd b. Sahm<sup>885</sup> who was a Badrī, for he was present at Badr with the Messenger of God. He was the only one from the Banū Sahm to be present at Badr, and she did not bear any children with him.

Then the Messenger of God married Umm Salamah, and her name is Hind bt. Abī Umayyah b. al-Mughīrah b. 'Abdallāh b. 'Umar b. Makhzūm.<sup>886</sup> Previously, she was married to Abū Salamah b. 'Abd al-Asad b. Hilāl b. 'Abdallāh b. 'Umar b. Makhzūm,<sup>887</sup> who was present at Badr with the Messenger of God. He was an intrepid warrior of his clan and died of wounds suffered on the day of Uhud. He was the Messenger of God's cousin [son of the Prophet's paternal aunt] and foster brother, whose mother was Barrah bt. 'Abd al-Muṭṭalib. She bore with him 'Umar, Salamah, Zaynab, and Durrah.<sup>888</sup> When Abū Salamah died, the Messenger of God said nine *takbīrahs* [during the prayer over him]. When he was asked whether he was distracted or had forgotten [the proper number], he replied, "I was neither distracted nor had I forgotten. Even if I had said a thousand *takbīrahs* [during the prayer] over Abū Salamah, he was worthy of it," and he prayed for the surviving members of his family. The Messenger of God married [Umm Salamah] in the year 3/624,<sup>889</sup> before the battle of al-Aḥzāb. Salamah, son of Abū Salamah, married the daughter of Hamzah b. 'Abd al-Muṭṭalib.<sup>890</sup>

VIII, 56–60; Balādhurī, *Ansāb*, I, 423–27; Gaudefroy-Demombynes, *Mahomet*, 230–31; Rodinson, *Mahomet*, 317–20; *EP*<sup>2</sup>, s.v. Hafṣa.

885. He died in 2/624. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, III/1, 285–86; Balādhurī, *Ansāb*, I, 214–15.

886. Both she and her husband were early converts to Islam and had migrated to Abyssinia. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, VIII, 60–67, gives an interesting conversation between her and the Prophet when the latter proposed marriage to her. According to some authorities, she died in Dhū al-Qa'dah 59/679, while according to others she died after the massacre of Karbalā'. Balādhurī, *Ansāb*, I, 429–32; Ibn al-Athīr, *Kāmil*, II, 308; Ibn Hajar, *Iṣābah*, VIII, 221–25.

887. He died because of injuries suffered at Uhud. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, III/1, 170–72.

888. Hisch., Ibn Hishām: Ruyayyāh.

889. The date given by Ibn Sa'd and Balādhurī that the Prophet married her in Shawwāl 4/626 seems to be more likely, because the battle of Uhud took place in Shawwāl 3/625 and Abū Salamah died thereafter.

890. On his conversion the uncle of the Prophet became one of the bravest champions of Islam. He was slain fighting heroically at Uhud. *EP*<sup>2</sup>, s.v. Hamza b. 'Abd al-Muṭṭalib.

[1772]

Then the Messenger of God married Juwayriyyah<sup>891</sup> bt. al-Hārith b. Abī Ḍirār b. Ḥabīb b. Mālik b. Jadhimah, who is al-Muṣṭaliq b. Sa'd b. 'Amr, in the year of al-Muraysī' [i.e., the expedition against the Banū Muṣṭaliq] (the year 5/626–27). Previously, she was married to Mālik b. Ṣafwān Dhī al-Shafr b. Abī Sarḥ b. Mālik b. al-Muṣṭaliq, but did not bear any children with him. She was chosen (*ṣafiyah*) by the Messenger of God for himself on the day of al-Muraysī' [from the captives and at which time], he freed her and married her.<sup>892</sup> She asked the Messenger of God to release what was in his possession from her people, and he did so.

Then the Messenger of God married Umm Ḥabībah<sup>893</sup> bt. Abī Sufyān b. Ḥarb. She was [previously] married to 'Ubaydallāh b. Jaḥsh b. Ri'āb b. Ya'mur b. Ṣabirah b. Murrah b. Kabir b. Ghanm b. Dūdān b. Asad. Both she and her husband were among the emigrants to Abyssinia. Her husband embraced Christianity and tried to make her follow him, but she refused and maintained her religion. He died as a Christian, so the Messenger of God sent [his marriage proposal] to the Negus. The Negus said to [her husband's] companions, "Who is more entitled [to take care] of her?" They said, "Khālid b. Sa'īd b. al-'Āṣ." The Negus said [to Khālid], "Marry her to your Prophet." He did so and the Negus gave her four hundred dīnārs as dowry (*mahr*). It is, however, said that the Messenger of God asked 'Uthmān b. 'Affān for her hand in marriage, and after he allowed [the Prophet] to marry her, the Messenger of God sent to the Negus for her. The latter gave her dowry

891. Ibn Sa'd: Her name was Barrah and the Prophet gave her a new name, Juwayriyyah.

892. Both Ibn Hishām and Wāqidi state that she had fallen to the lot of Thābit b. Qays b. al-Shammās al-Anṣārī. She was very beautiful, and she haggled with him to write a written contract with her that she should pay a certain sum as the price of herself, and on the payment thereof be free. Probably, he was unwilling to part with her, hence she went to the Messenger of God asking for his help in the matter. He said, "Would you like something better than that?" "What is that?" she asked. "I will pay the sum on your behalf and marry you," he replied. "Yes," she answered, and he married her.

Another version of the story states that her father came to the Messenger of God with the ransom and accepted Islam. The Messenger of God gave her back to her father, she accepted Islam, and he asked her father for her hand in marriage. She died in 50/670 or 56/676. Ibn Hishām, *Sīrah*, IV, 295–96; Wāqidi, *Maghāzī*, I, 410–12; Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, VIII, 83–85; Balādhurī, *Ansāb*, I, 441–42.

893. Ibn Hishām and Ibn Sa'd add: Whose name was Ramlah.

on behalf of the Messenger of God and sent her back to him.<sup>894</sup>

[1773]

Then the Messenger of God married Zaynab bt. Jaḥsh b. Ri'āb b. Ya'mūr b. Ṣabirah.<sup>895</sup> Previously, she was married to Zayd b. Hārithah b. Sharāhil, freedman of the Messenger of God, but she did not bear any children with him. [It was] about her that God revealed: "When you said to him whom God had blessed and you had favored, 'Keep your wife to yourself and fear God,' you concealed within yourself that which God was about to reveal. You feared other men, but it is more fitting that you should fear God. When Zayd had accomplished the necessary [formality of divorce] from her, We gave her in marriage to you, so that there should not be any fault for the believers in respect to the wives of their adopted sons, after they have performed the necessary formality [of divorce] from them. And God's command must be fulfilled."<sup>896</sup> God married her to him and sent Gabriel concerning that matter. She used to boast to the other wives of the Prophet, saying, "I am the most honored among you because of the One who gave me in marriage and the one who was my intermediary [i.e., Gabriel] *akramukunna waliyyan wa akramukunna safiran*".<sup>897</sup>

Then the Messenger of God married Ṣafiyyah bt. Ḥuyayy b. Akhṭab b. Sa'yah b. Tha'labah b. 'Ubayd b. Ka'b b. al-Khazraj b. Abī ḥabib b. al-Nadīr. Previously, she was married to Sallām b. Mishkam b. al-Hakam b. Hārithah b. al-Khazraj b. Ka'b b. al-

894. The Prophet married her in 7/628–29 and she died in 44/664–65. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, VIII, 68–71, provides more details of the marriage. See also Balādhuri, *Ansāb*, I, 438–40.

895. She was the Prophet's cousin and he married her in Dhū al-Qa'dah 5/627. She died in 20/641, and it is said that she was the first one to die from among his wives. For details see Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, II/1, 114; VIII, 71–82; Balādhuri, *Ansāb*, I, 433–37; Ibn Hajar, *Iṣābah*, VII, 667–70; Lings, *Muhammad*, 337.

896. Qur'ān 33:37. This marriage of the Prophet has been discussed widely. According to some, it served as a legal test case against the prevailing notion of adoption. Andrae, *Mohammed*, 153–54; Rodinson, *Mahomet*, 238–41.

897. It refers to her marriage. She states that God was her *wali*, who gave her away in marriage, and that Gabriel was the intermediary (*safir*). Balādhuri, *Ansāb*, I, 435.

Ibn Sa'd reports: One day Zaynab [bragging about herself] said to the Prophet, "I am not, O Messenger of God, like other wives of yours. All of them were married to you either by their fathers, brothers, or guardians except me. It was God who gave me in marriage to you." See also Ibn al-Athīr, *Kāmil*, II, 309; Gaudefroy-Demombynes, *Mahomet*, 226–27.

**Khazraj.** After his death she was married to Kinānah b. al-Rabi' b. Abī al-Ḥuqayq, who was killed by Muḥammad b. Maslamah at the Prophet's order. He was struck on the neck until he died. When the Prophet scrutinized the captives on the day of Khaybar, he threw his cloak over Ṣafiyah. Thus she was his chosen one (*ṣafiyah*)<sup>898</sup> on the day of Khaybar.<sup>899</sup> Then he proposed Islam to her and she accepted, so he freed her. That was in the year 6/627–28.

Then the Messenger of God married Maymūnah bt. al-Ḥārith b. Ḥazn b. Bujayr b. al-Huzam b. Ruwaybah b. ‘Abdallāh b. Hilāl. Previously, she was married to ‘Umayr<sup>900</sup> b. ‘Amr of the Banū ‘Uqdah b. Ghīyārah b. ‘Awf b. Qasī, who was [from] Thaqīf. She did not bear any children with him, and she was the sister of Umm al-Fadl, wife of ‘Abbās b. ‘Abd al-Muṭṭalib. The Messenger of God married her in Sarif during his Lesser Pilgrimage of Fulfillment (*‘umrat al-qadā’*).<sup>901</sup> Al-‘Abbās b. ‘Abd al-Muṭṭalib married her to him.

The Messenger of God married all the women we have mentioned [above], and when he died all of them except Khadijah bt. Khuwaylid were alive.<sup>902</sup>

[1774]

The Messenger of God married a woman of the Banū Kilāb b. Rabi'ah called al-Nashāt bt. Rifā'ah. The Banū Kilāb were the

898. See Ṭabarī, above, I, 1718, n. 509.

899. According to one report, she fell in the lot of Dihya al-Kalbi, and the Prophet bought her from him. She died in 50/670 or 52/672. Ibn Sa'd, *Ṭabaqāt*, VIII, 85–92; Balādhuri, *Ansāb*, I, 442–44.

900. Ibn Hishām: She was married to Abū Ruhm b. ‘Abd al-Uzzā. Balādhuri (*Ansāb*, I, 444): She was married to Abū Sabrah b. Abī Ruhm. Ibn Hishām further adds: It is said that it was she who gave herself to the Prophet because she received his marriage proposal while she was on her camel. She said, “The camel and what is on it belongs to God and His messenger.” So God revealed: “A believing woman who bestows herself upon the Prophet, provided the Prophet wants to marry her.” [Qur’ān 33:50]. See also *EI*<sup>1</sup>, s.v. Maimūna.

It is said that the one who bestowed herself upon the Prophet was Zaynab bt. Jāsh, or Umm Sharik Ghāziyyah bt. Jābir. Others state that it was a woman from the Banū Sāmah b. Lu’ayy and that the Prophet postponed the matter.

901. Ibn Sa'd, *Ṭabaqāt*, VIII, 94–100, gives a long report whether the Prophet was in the state of *iḥrām* or not when he married her. See also Ibn Ishāq, *Kitāb al-Mubtada'*, 247–48. She died in 61/680–81, and it is said that she was the last of the Prophet's widows to die.

902. Ibn Hishām: The Messenger of God consummated his marriage with eleven women, two of whom died before him: Khadijah bt. Khuwaylid and Zaynab bt. Khuzaymah.

allies of the Banū Rifā'ah of the Qurayzah. [The authorities] differ about her.<sup>903</sup> Some call her Sanā and trace her lineage as Sanā<sup>904</sup> bt. Asmā' b. al-Ṣalt al-Sulamiyyah, while others say that she is Sabā bt. Asmā' b. al-Ṣalt of the Banū Ḥarām of the Banū Sulaym. They say that she died before the Messenger of God consummated his marriage with her. Some, ascribing her lineage, state that she is Sanā bt. al-Ṣalt b. Ḥabīb b. Ḥārithah b. Hilāl b. Ḥarām b. Sammāl b. 'Awf al-Sulamī.

The Messenger of God married al-Shanbā' bt. 'Amr al-Ghifāriyyah, whose tribe were also the allies of the Banū Qurayza. Some [authorities] allege that she was a Quraṣiyyah, and that her lineage is not known because the Banū Qurayzah perished. It is also said that she was a Kināniyyah. She menstruated when she entered [the house of] the Messenger of God, and [the Prophet's son] Ibrāhim died before she took her ritual purification bath. She said, "If he were a prophet, the person who is dearest to him would not have died," so the Messenger of God dismissed her by [giving her] divorce.<sup>905</sup>

[1775] The Messenger of God married Ghaziyyah<sup>906</sup> bt. Jābir of the Banū Abī Bakr b. Kilāb. [The news of] her beauty and skill had reached the Messenger of God, so he sent Abū Usayd al-Anṣāri al-Sā'iḍi asking her hand in marriage. Being in a state of infidelity when she came to the Prophet, she said, "I was not consulted [about this marriage], and I seek refuge from you in the name of God." He replied, "One who seeks God's protection is inviola-

<sup>903.</sup> Her name is given differently by different authorities, such as Fāṭimah bt. al-Daḥḥāk, 'Amrah bt. Yazid, al-Āliyyah bt. Zabyān, and Sabā bt. Sufyān.

Ibn Hishām states: "[Among the women whom the Prophet married but did not consummate the marriage was] 'Amrah bt. Yazid al-Kilābiyyah. Being recently in a state of infidelity, when she came to the Messenger of God she sought refuge from him. The Prophet replied, 'One who seeks God's protection] is inviolable,' and returned her to her folk." He further adds: "Others state that the one who sought God's refuge was a woman of Kindah, a cousin of Asmā' bt. al-Nu'mān. It is said that when the Messenger of God summoned her, she said, 'We are a people to whom others come, we go to none.' The Messenger of God returned her to her people." Cf. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, VIII, 100–112, 159–60; Balādhuri, *Ansāb*, I, 454–55; Ibn Kathir, *Sīrah*, IV, 587; Ibn Hajar, *Isābah*, VIII, 64.

<sup>904.</sup> Sabā, or Shanbā: in Ibn al-Athīr, *Kāmil*, II, 309.

<sup>905.</sup> Ibn al-Athīr, *Kāmil*, II, 309; Ibn Kathir, *Sīrah*, IV, 580. She is not mentioned by Ibn Sa'd.

<sup>906.</sup> Ibn al-Athīr (*Kāmil*, II, 310): 'Adhiyyah, or 'Arabah. Ibn Sa'd: She is called Umm Sharik.

ble," and returned her to her people.<sup>907</sup> It is said that she was from Kindah.

The Messenger of God married Asmā' bt. al-Nu'mān b. al-Aswad b. Sharāhil b. al-Jawn b. Hujr b. Mu'awiyah al-Kindi. When he went to her he found that she was suffering from leprosy, so he gave her a compensation [for divorce], provided her [with some provision], and returned her to her people. It is also said that it was al-Nu'mān who sent her to the Messenger of God and that she defamed him.<sup>908</sup> When she went to him she also sought refuge from him, so he sent her to her father saying, "Is she not your daughter?" He replied that she was. The Prophet said to her, "Are you not his daughter?" She replied that she was. Al-Nu'mān said, "Take her, O Messenger of God, she is . . .," and he praised her excessively. He replied that she would never be useful. The Messenger of God did with her what he did with al-'Āmiriyah. It is not known whether it was because of her pronouncement or that of her father that the Messenger of God said that she would never be useful.

God granted Rayhānah bt. Zayd of the Banū Qurayzah to his Messenger [as booty].<sup>909</sup> Māriyah the Copt was presented to the Messenger of God, given to him by al-Muqawqis, the ruler of Alexandria, and she gave birth to the Messenger of God's son Ibrāhīm.<sup>910</sup> These were the Messenger of God's wives; six of them were from the Quraysh.<sup>911</sup>

907. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, VIII, 110–12, gives quite a different account. It was she who gave herself to the Prophet and the Qur'anic verse 33:50 refers to her. Because the Prophet did not marry her, she did not marry anyone else. Cf. Balādhuri, *Ansāb*, I, 422.

908. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, VIII, 102–5, states that Nu'mān came to the Prophet, accepted Islam and offered his daughter in marriage. It was in Rabi' I, 9/630, but when the Prophet entered into her presence she sought God's refuge, so he divorced her. For a slightly different version, see Balādhuri, *Ansāb*, I, 456–57.

909. Ibn Sa'd (*Tabaqāt*, VIII, 92–94) and Balādhuri (*Ansāb*, I, 453–54) state that the Prophet freed her after she accepted Islam and married her in Muharram 6/627. She died soon after the Prophet's return from the Farewell Pilgrimage. See also Ibn Hishām, *Sirah*, III, 256.

910. See Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, VIII, 153–56, and Balādhuri, *Ansāb*, I, 448–53, for details about Māriyah and Ibrāhīm.

911. Ibn Hishām: Among the Prophet's wives, six were Qurayshite: Khadijah, 'Āishah, Hafṣah, Umm Habibah, Umm Salamah, and Sawdah. The Arab women and others were seven: Zaynab bt. Jahsh, Maymūnah bt. al-Hārith, Zaynab bt. Khuzaymah, Juwayriyyah bt. al-Hārith, Asmā' bt. al-Nu'mān, and 'Amrah bt. Yazid. Ṣafiyah bt. Huyayy was a non-Arab.

[1776]

Abū Ja'far [al-Ṭabarī] states: Among the marriages not mentioned by Hishām [b. Muḥammad] in this report is the one related from the Messenger of God according to which he married Zaynab bt. Khuzaymah. She is the one called *Umm al-Masākin* (Mother of the Poor),<sup>912</sup> [and was] from the Banū ʿĀmir b. Ṣaṣa'ah. She is Zaynab bt. Khuzaymah b. al-Ḥārith b. ʿAbdallāh b. ʿAmr b. ʿAbd Manāf b. Hilāl b. ʿĀmir b. Ṣaṣa'ah. Previously, she was married to al-Tufayl<sup>913</sup> b. al-Ḥārith b. al-Muṭṭalib, brother of ʿUbaydah b. al-Ḥārith. She died in Medina while she was married to the Messenger of God. It is said that no one from the Messenger of God's wives died while he was alive except her, Khadijah, Sharāf bt. Khalīfah (sister of Dihyah b. Khalīfah al-Kalbī),<sup>914</sup> and al-Āliyyah bt. Ẓabyān.<sup>915</sup>

Ibn ʿAbdallāh b. ʿAbd al-Ḥakam<sup>916</sup>—Shu'ayb b. al-Layth<sup>917</sup>—‘Uqayl<sup>918</sup>—Ibn Shihāb [al-Zuhri]: The Messenger of God married al-Āliyyah,<sup>919</sup> a woman of the Banū Abī Bakr b. Kilāb. He gave her gifts [compensation for divorce] and left her. He [also] married Qutaylah bt. Qays b. Ma'dikarib, sister of al-Ash'ath b. Qays, but he died before consummating his marriage with her,<sup>920</sup> and she

912. Ibn Hishām adds: Because of her kindness to them. Ibn Sa'd: She was called by that name in pre-Islamic days.

913. Ibn Hishām: Previously, she was married to ʿUbaydah b. al-Ḥārith b. al-Muṭṭalib b. ʿAbd Manāf, and before that to Jahm b. ʿAmr b. al-Ḥārith, who was her cousin. Ibn Sa'd (*Tabaqāt*, VIII, 82): She was married to Tufayl, and after he divorced her she married ʿUbaydah b. al-Ḥārith. The Prophet married her in Ramaḍān 3/625, and she died eight months later. Cf. Ibn Ishāq, *Kitāb al-Mubtada'*, 241; Balādhurī, *Ansāb*, I, 429.

914. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, VIII, 115, lists her among those to whom the Prophet proposed but did not marry. Balādhurī, *Ansāb*, I, 460, states that she died before the marriage was consummated. Ibn Kathir, *Sīrah*, IV, 587, states that she was the maternal aunt of Khawlah bt. Hudhayl and that she died on her way to Medina.

915. She is not mentioned by Ibn Sa'd. Ibn al-Athir, *Kāmil*, II, 310, states that the Prophet married her and then divorced her. See also Ibn Kathir, *Sīrah*, IV, 586–87.

916. It could be either of the two brothers Muḥammad or ʿAbd al-Rahmān. The former died in 268/881–82 and the latter in 257/870–71. Ibn Ḥajar, *Tahdhīb*, VI, 208; IX, 260–62.

917. Died in 199/814–15. *Ibid.*, IV, 355–56.

918. ‘Uqayl b. Khālid b. ʿAqil al-Umawī died ca. 141/758–59. *Ibid.*, VII, 255–56.

919. Balādhurī, *Ansāb*, I, 455, states that al-Āliyyah bt. Ẓabyān b. ʿAmr of the Banū Kilāb was divorced because she used to peep through her door at the people in the mosque.

920. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, VIII, 105–6, states that her brother al-Ash'ath b. Qays

apostatized from Islam with her brother. He [also] married Fātimah bt. Shurayh.<sup>921</sup> It is reported from Ibn al-Kalbī that the Messenger of God married Ghaziyyah bt. Jābir, who is [called] Umm Sharik. She was previously married and had a son called Sharik from [the first husband], so she was called by that surname [of relationship]. When the Prophet went to her he found her to be an old woman, so he divorced her.<sup>922</sup> She embraced Islam and used to call on the Qurashi women and invite them to Islam. It is said that he married Khawlah bt. al-Hudhayl b. Hubayrah b. Qabīshah b. al-Hārith.<sup>923</sup>

The [above] is reported on the authority of al-Kalbī—Abū Ṣāliḥ<sup>924</sup>—Ibn ‘Abbās. With the same chain of authority [it is reported] that Laylā bt. al-Khaṭīm b. ‘Adī b. ‘Amr b. Sawād b. Zafar b. al-Hārith b. al-Khazraj approached the Prophet while his back was to the sun, and clapped him on his shoulder. He asked who it was, and she replied, “I am the daughter of one who competes with the wind. I am Laylā bt. al-Khaṭīm. I have come to offer myself [in marriage] to you, so marry me.” He replied, “I accept.” She went back to her people<sup>925</sup> and said that the Messenger of God had married her. They said, “What a bad thing you have done! You are a self-respecting woman, but the Prophet is a womanizer.<sup>926</sup> Seek an annulment from him.” She went back to the Prophet and asked him to revoke the marriage and he complied with [her request].<sup>927</sup> [It is reported] without the above chain of authorities that the Prophet married ‘Amrah bt. Yazīd,<sup>928</sup> a woman of the Banū Ru’ās b. Kilāb.

[1777]

---

offered her in marriage to the Prophet while she was still in Hadramawt, but by the time she left the Yemen, the Prophet had died.

921. Ibn al-Athīr (*Kāmil*, II, 310): Fātimah bt. Sara’. She is not mentioned by Ibn Sa’d.

922. Ibn Sa’d, *Tabaqāt*, VIII, 110–12, gives a different account and lists her among the women to whom the Prophet proposed but did not marry. It was she who gave herself to the Prophet and the Qur’ānic verse 33:50 refers to her.

923. Ibn Sa’d, *Tabaqāt*, VIII, 114–15, states that she died on her way to Medina. See also Balādhuri, *Ansāb*, I, 460; Ibn Kathir, *Sīrah*, IV, 587.

924. Abū Ṣāliḥ Mizān al-Baṣrī. Ibn Hajar, *Tahdhīb*, X, 385–86.

925. Balādhuri (*Ansāb*, I, 459): To her womenfolk.

926. Balādhuri: The Messenger of God has many wives. We fear that you will be jealous and he might invoke [God] against you and you will be ruined.

927. See Ibn Sa’d, *Tabaqāt*, VIII, 107–8, for more details.

928. This name is given by Ibn Sa’d as one of the names of the Kilābi woman (see

*An Account of Those Women to Whom the Prophet  
Proposed But Did Not Marry*

Among them was Umm Häni' bt. Abī Ṭālib, whose name is Hind. The Messenger of God proposed marriage to her but did not marry her because she said that she was with child.<sup>929</sup> He asked the hand of Ḏuba'ah bt. 'Āmir<sup>930</sup> b. Qurṭ b. Salamah b. Qushayr b. Ka'b b. Rabī'ah b. 'Āmir b. Sa'ṣā'ah in marriage from her son Salamah b. Hishām b. al-Mughirah. He said that he would seek her permission. [Salamah] came to her and told her that the Prophet had proposed to her. She said, "What did you tell him?" He replied, "I told him [to wait] until I sought your permission." She said, "Has permission to be sought for the Prophet? Go back and marry him [to me]." He went back but the Prophet did not say anything because he was informed that she was too old.<sup>931</sup> Reportedly, it is said that he proposed to Ṣafiyah bt. Bashshāmah, sister of the one-eyed al-'Anbarī. She was taken as a captive, so he allowed her to choose between him and her husband. She chose her husband and he sent her back.<sup>932</sup> He proposed to Umm Ḥabib<sup>933</sup> bt. al-'Abbās b. 'Abd al-Muṭṭalib, but discovered that al-'Abbās was his foster-brother; Thuwaybah had nursed them both. He asked for the hand of Jamrah bt. al-Hārith b. Abī Hārithah<sup>934</sup> in marriage, [but] her father—so it is reported—said

above]. Balādhurī, *Ansāb*, I, 456, and Ibn Kathīr, *Sīrah*, IV, 580, give her name as 'Amrah bt. Yazid al-Ghifāriyyah. The Prophet married her, but when he discovered that she had leprosy he divorced her. For a similar report see Ibn Ishāq, *Kitāb al-Mubtada'*, 248.

929. She said that because of her young child, she would not be able to do justice to her husband. For details, see Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, VIII, 108–9; Balādhurī, *Ansāb*, I, 459.

930. Ibn al-Athīr (*Kāmil*, II, 310): Sa'ah bt. 'Umar.

931. See Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, VIII, 109–10; Balādhurī, *Ansāb*, I, 460, states that in pre-Islamic days she had circumambulated the Ka'bah naked because she did not have the special clothes. In pre-Islamic days, if the Arabs did not have the garments of the *Hums*, then they would circumambulate the Ka'bah either in their ordinary clothes (which had to be discarded afterwards) or they would go round naked. Ibn Ishāq, *Kitāb al-Mubtada'*, 81–82; Ibn Hishām, *Sīrah*, I, 214–15.

932. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, VIII, 110; Balādhurī, *Ansāb*, I, 459.

933. Ibn al-Athīr (*Kāmil*, II, 310) and Ibn Kathīr (*Sīrah*, IV, 598): Umm Ḥabibah. Cf. Balādhurī, *Ansāb*, I, 462–63. She is not mentioned by Ibn Sa'd. For a different version see Ibn Ishāq, *Kitāb al-Mubtada'*, 248–49.

934. See Balādhurī, *Ansāb*, I, 462; Ibn al-Athīr, *Kāmil*, II, 310–11; Ibn Kathīr, *Sīrah*, IV, 598. She is not mentioned by Ibn Sa'd.

that she was suffering from something, although [in reality] she was not. When he returned, he found that she had already been afflicted with leprosy.<sup>935</sup>

*An Account of the Messenger of God's  
Slave Concubines*

They were Māriyah bt. Sham'ūn, the Copt, and Rayḥānah bt. Zayd al-Quraṣīyyah, who, it is said, was of the Banū al-Naḍīr. An account of them has been given above.

[1778]

---

935. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, VIII, 106–7, 113–14, mentions Mulaykah bt. Ka'b al-Laythī, Bint Jundub, and Saba bt. al-Ṣalt among the women whom the Prophet married but did not consummate the marriage and then divorced them. Khawlah bt. Ḥakim and Amāmah bt. Ḥamzah were among the women to whom the Prophet proposed but did not marry.

The  
Events of the Year

IO (cont'd)

(APRIL 9, 631–MARCH 28, 632)

*An Account of the Messenger of God's Freedmen*

Among them were [the following]: Zayd b. Hārithah<sup>936</sup> and his son Usāmah b. Zayd, whose account we have mentioned before.

Thawbān.<sup>937</sup> The Messenger of God set him free but he remained with [the Prophet] until his death. Then he settled in Himṣ (Homs),<sup>938</sup> where he had a house which was bequeathed [to him] as a religious endowment. It is reported that he died in the year 54/673–74, during the caliphate of Mu'awiyah. Some [authorities] state that he lived in al-Ramlah<sup>939</sup> and that he did not have any progeny.

---

936. He was bought from Syria and sold to Khadijah who presented him to Muhammad. His father came to Mecca to buy his freedom, but Zayd refused to leave Muhammad, who thereupon freed him and adopted him. He was one of the very first converts to Islam and died in 8/629 as commander of the Mu'tah expedition. Balādhuri, *Ansāb*, I, 467–73; *El*<sup>1</sup>, s.v. Zaid b. Hāritha. For Usāmah, see Tabari, above I, 1660, n. 68.

937. Thawbān b. Bujdud was from the Yemen. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, I/2, 67, 180; II/2, 20; Balādhuri, *Ansāb*, I, 480–82; Ibn Kathir, *Sīrah*, IV, 621.

938. A town in Syria between Damascus and Halab (Aleppo). *El*<sup>2</sup>, s.v. Himṣ.

939. A town in Palestine, 25 miles from Jerusalem. *El*<sup>1</sup>, s.v. al-Ramlah.

Shuqrān.<sup>940</sup> He was from Abyssinia and his name was Ṣalīḥ b. 'Adī. [The authorities] disagree about his affair. It is reported on the authority of 'Abdallāh b. Dāwūd al-Khuraybī that the Messenger of God inherited him from his father, while others state that he was from Persia and was named Ṣalīḥ b. Ḥawl b. Mihrbūdh. His lineage, according to those who ascribe to him a Persian ancestry, is alleged to be Ṣalīḥ b. Ḥawl b. Mihrbūdh b. Ādharjushnas b. Mihrbān b. Firān b. Rustam b. Firūz b. Māy b. Bahrām b. Rashthāri. It is alleged that [his ancestors] were land-owners (*dahāqīn*) of al-Rayy.<sup>941</sup> It is reported on the authority of Muṣ'ab al-Zubayrī,<sup>942</sup> who said that Shuqrān belonged to 'Abd al-Rahmān b. 'Awf, that the latter presented him to the Prophet. He left behind offspring, the last of whom was Ma'ubā, a man from his progeny who lived in Medina and who had descendants in al-Baṣrah.<sup>943</sup>

Ruwayfi'.<sup>944</sup> He was Abū Rāfi', The Messenger of God's freedman. His name was Aslam, [but] some state that his name was Ibrāhīm. [Authorities] differ about his affair. Some state that he belonged to al-'Abbās b. 'Abd al-Muṭtalib and that the latter presented him to the Messenger of God, who set him free, while others state that Abū Rāfi' belonged to Abū Uhayḥah Sa'īd b. al-'Āṣ al-Akbar and that his sons inherited him. Three of them set free their share of him and all of them were killed on the day of Badr, when Abū Rāfi' was present with them. Khālid b. Sa'īd donated his share of him to the Messenger of God, who set him free.

[1779]

His son al-Bahī, whose name was Rāfi',<sup>945</sup> and his brother 'Ubaydallāh b. Abī Rāfi'. Al-Bahī used to serve 'Alī b. Abī Ṭālib as

940. He participated in Badr and was in charge of the captives, and died during Umar's caliphate. Wāqidī, *Maghāzī*, I, 105; Ibn Sa'd *Tabaqāt*, I/2, 180; III/1, 34; Balādhuri, *Ansāb*, I, 478–79; Ibn Kathir, *Sīrah*, IV, 626–28.

941. An ancient town in Persia, situated near the present capital Tehran. *EI*<sup>1</sup>, s.v. al-Raiy.

942. He was the governor of al-Baṣrah for his brother 'Abdallāh b. Zubayr and was killed in battle against the Umayyads in 72/691. *EI*<sup>1</sup>, s.v. Muṣ'ab b. al-Zubair.

943. A town in lower Mesopotamia which grew out of the military camp built by the caliph 'Umar. *EI*<sup>2</sup>, s.v. al-Baṣra.

944. Ibn Sa'd *Tabaqāt*, I/2, 180; IV/1, 51, 52; Ibn Kathir, *Sīrah*, IV, 618–19. Balādhuri [*Ansāb*, I, 477–78, 482–83], on the authority of Ibn al-Kalbi, states that Abū Rāfi' Aslam belonged to 'Abbās, while Rāfi' (or Ruwayfi') belonged to Sa'īd b. al-'Āṣ.

945. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, I/2 180; Ibn Kathir, *Sīrah*, IV, 621–22.

a scribe.<sup>946</sup> When 'Amr b. Sa'īd<sup>947</sup> became the governor of Medina, he called al-Bahī and asked him, "Who is your master?" When he answered, "The Messenger of God," he was flogged a hundred times. Again he was asked, "Whose freedman are you?" He replied, "The Messenger of God's freedman," and was again flogged a hundred times. Every time he was asked whose freedman he was he continued to give the same answer until he had been flogged five hundred times. Then he was asked, "Whose freedman are you?" and replied, "Your master's." When 'Abd al-Malik<sup>948</sup> killed 'Amr b. Sa'īd, al-Bahī b. Abī Rāfi' said:

The oath was correct and did not become crippled but  
harmed its enemy.

An oath which spilled Ibn Sa'd's lifeblood.

He is the son of a rebellious father<sup>949</sup> again and again,  
but is related to a family whose ancestors were good.

Salmān al-Fārisī,<sup>950</sup> surnamed Abū 'Abdallāh, who was from the inhabitants of the village of Iṣbahān.<sup>951</sup> It is said that he was [actually] from the village of Rāmhurmuz,<sup>952</sup> fell into captivity at the hands of some people of Kalb, and was sold to some Jews in the district of Wādi al-Qurā. He made a written contract with his Jewish master that he should pay a certain sum as his ransom, and on the payment thereof be free. The Messenger of God and the Muslims helped him [to meet his contractual obligations]

946. Balādhuri (*Ansāb*, I, 483) states on the authority of Ibn al-Kalbi that 'Ali's scribe was 'Ubaydallāh b. Abī Rāfi'.

947. He was an Umayyad governor of Mecca, and in 60/680 was appointed by Yazid b. Mu'awiyah as governor of Medina. *EI*<sup>2</sup>, s.v. 'Amr b. Sa'īd.

948. 'Abd al-Malik b. Marwān was the fifth Umayyad caliph and reigned from 65/685 to 86/705. *EI*<sup>2</sup>, s.v. 'Abd al-Malik b. Marwān.

949. It is a pun on the word Ibn al-'Āṣ (the name of 'Amr's father) and Ibn al-'Āṣī ('son of a rebellious father').

950. One of the most popular figures in Muslim legend; he was an ardent supporter of 'Ali and died ca. 35/655–56. Balādhuri, *Ansāb*, I, 485–89; *EI*<sup>1</sup>, s.v. Salmān al-Fārisī; Jafri, *Origins*, 52.

951. Iṣfahān (in the Persian form), a town and province in Persia. *EI*<sup>2</sup>, s.v. Iṣfahān.

952. Ibn Ishāq (*Kitāb al-Mubtada'*, 66) and Ibn Hishām (*Sīrah*, I, 228): From a village called Jayy. Both the sources state that Salmān was betrayed and sold into slavery by a party of Kalbite merchants whom he accompanied from Syria to Arabia. Rām-Hormoz (in the Persian form), a town and district in Khūzistān about fifty-five miles southeast of Ahwāz. *EI*<sup>1</sup>, s.v. Rām-Hormuz.

until he was set free. Some Persian genealogists state that Salmān was from the villages of Sābūr<sup>953</sup> and that his name was Mābih b. Büdhakhshān b. Dih Dīrih.

Safinah,<sup>954</sup> the freedman of the Messenger of God. He belonged to Umm Salamah, who set him free on the condition that he should serve the Messenger of God during his lifetime. It is said that he was black. [Authorities] disagree about his name. Some state that his name was Mihrān, while others state that his name was Rabāh. Some of them state that he was Persian and his name was Sabih [or Subayh] b. Mārqih [or Mārqayh].

Anasah,<sup>955</sup> nicknamed Abū Musarrāh or Abū Masrūh, was a slave boy [born among the Arabs] of al-Sarāt.<sup>956</sup> [The people] used to ask his permission [to see] the Messenger of God when the latter sat [to receive the visitors]. He was present at Badr, Uhud, and all the expeditions of the Messenger of God. Some state that he was of Persian descent, that his mother was Abyssinian and his father Persian, and that his father's name in Persian was Kardaway b. Asharnīdah b. Adawhar b. Mihrādar b. Kahankān, of the Banū Mihjwār b. Yūmāst.

Abū Kabshah.<sup>957</sup> His name was Sulaym. It is said that he was a slave boy [born among the Arabs] of Mecca. It is [also] said that he was a slave boy [born among the Arabs] of the land of Daws.<sup>958</sup> The Messenger of God bought him and set him free. He was present at Badr, Uhud, and other expeditions with the Messenger of God. He died the very day 'Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb succeeded to the caliphate, in the year 13/634–35.

Abū Muwayhibah.<sup>959</sup> It is said that he was a slave boy [born

---

953. Shāpūr (in Persian), the name of the ancient capital of the Shāpūr Khūra district of Fārs. *EI*<sup>1</sup>, s.v. Shāpūr.

954. Ibn Sa'd *Tabaqāt*, I/2, 180; Balādhuri, *Ansāb*, I, 480; Ibn Kathir, *Sīrah*, IV, 623–26.

955. He participated in Badr and died during Abū Bakr's caliphate. Wāqidi, *Maghāzi*, I, 9, 24, 146, 153; Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, I/2, 180; Balādhuri, *Ansāb*, I, 478; Ibn Kathir, *Sīrah*, IV, 619.

956. A chain of mountains which run along the western side of the Arabian plateau. *EI*<sup>1</sup>, s.v. Sarāt.

957. He participated in Badr. Wāqidi, *Maghāzi*, I, 24, 153; Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, I/2, 180; III/1, 33; Balādhuri, *Ansāb*, I, 478; Ibn Kathir, *Sīrah*, IV, 637–40.

958. The tribes of Daws were the furthest north of the Azd Sarāt group. *EI*<sup>2</sup>, s.v. Azd.

959. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, I/2, 180; II/2, 9, 10; Balādhuri, *Ansāb*, I, 483–84; Ibn Kathir, *Sīrah*, IV, 640. See Tabāri, below, I, 1799.

[1780]

among the Arabs] of Muzaynah,<sup>960</sup> who was bought by the Messenger of God and set free.

Rabāh al-Aswad.<sup>961</sup> [The people] used to obtain his permission [in order to see] the Messenger of God.

Faḍālah,<sup>962</sup> the freedman of the Messenger of God, who reportedly [later] settled in Syria.

Mid'am,<sup>963</sup> the freedman of the Messenger of God. He was a slave of Rifā'ah b. Zayd al-Judhāmī,<sup>964</sup> who presented him to the Messenger of God. He was killed at Wādi al-Qurā on the day that the Messenger of God halted there. He was hit by an arrow from an unknown quarter which killed him.

[1781]

Abū Ḏumayrah.<sup>965</sup> Some Persian genealogists allege that he was a descendant of the king Kushtāsib of Persia, and that his name was Wāḥ b. Shīraz b. Birūwīs b. Tārīshmīh b. Māhwash b. Bākmīhrī. Others state that he was among those who fell to the Messenger of God's lot during one of his expeditions and that [the Prophet] set him free and drafted a document to that effect. He is the grandfather of Abū Ḥusayn b. 'Abdallāh b. Ḏumayrah b. Abī Ḏumayrah. The document [of manumission] was long in the hands of his grandchildren and his family. When Ḥusayn b. 'Abdallāh came to the [Abbāsid caliph] al-Mahdi,<sup>966</sup> the document was with him. The caliph took it, placed it on his eyes, and awarded him three hundred dinārs.

Yasār.<sup>967</sup> He was, reportedly, a Nubian. He fell to the Messenger of God's lot during one of his expeditions, and he set him free. He was killed by al-'Uraniyyūn, who raided the Messenger of God's milch camels.<sup>968</sup>

960. A branch of Tamim. Kalbi, *Jamharah*, 59, 88.

961. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, I/2, 180, 184; II/1, 59; Balādhurī, *Ansāb*, I, 484; Ibn Kathir, *Sīrah*, IV, 622. See *Safinah* above.

962. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, I/2, 180; he was from the Yemen; Balādhurī, *Ansāb*, I, 480; Ibn Kathir, *Sīrah*, IV, 629–30.

963. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, I/2, 180; Ibn Kathir, *Sīrah*, IV, 631; he was born in Hismā, in the Syrian desert.

964. Or of Farwah b. 'Amī al-Judhāmī: Balādhurī, *Ansāb*, I, 484.

965. Abū Ḏamrah or Abū Ḏumayrah was of Arab descent. Balādhurī, *Ansāb*, I, 484. Ibn Kathir, *Sīrah*, IV, 635–36; he was from the Yemen.

966. The third Abbāsid caliph reigned from 158/775 to 169/785. *EP*<sup>2</sup>, s.v. al-Mahdi, Abū 'Abd Allāh Muhammad.

967. He fell to the Prophet's lot on the expedition of Qarārat al-Kudr. Wāqidi, *Maghāzi*, I, 183; Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, I/2, 180; II/1, 67, 86; Balādhurī, *Ansāb*, I, 479–80; Ibn Kathir, *Sīrah*, IV, 633.

968. See *Ṭabarī*, below, 1784.

Mihrān.<sup>969</sup> He narrated traditions from the Messenger of God.

The Messenger of God also had a eunuch called Mābūr,<sup>970</sup> who was presented to him by al-Muqawqis with two slave girls; one of them was called Māriyah, whom he took as a concubine, and the other [was called] Sīrīn,<sup>971</sup> whom he gave to Ḥassān b. Thābit after Ṣafwān b. al-Mu'atṭal had committed an offense against him.<sup>972</sup> Sīrīn gave birth to a son called 'Abd al-Rahmān b. Ḥassān. Al-Muqawqis had sent this eunuch with the two slave girls in order to escort them and guard them on the way [to Medina]. He presented them to the Messenger of God when they arrived. It is said that he was the one [with whom] Māriyah was accused of [wrongdoing], and that the Messenger of God sent 'Alī to kill him. When he saw 'Alī and what he intended to do with him, he uncovered himself until it became evident to 'Alī that he was completely castrated, not having anything left at all of what men [normally] have, so ['Alī] refrained from killing him.

While the Messenger of God was laying siege to al-Tā'if, four slaves came out to him, whom he set free. Abū Bakrah<sup>973</sup> was among them.<sup>974</sup>

### *An Account of the Messenger of God's Scribes*

It is reported that 'Uthmān b. 'Affān used to write for him at times, while 'Alī b. Abī Ṭālib, Khālid b. Sa'īd, Abān b. Sa'īd,<sup>975</sup> and al-'Alā' b. al-Ḥadramī<sup>976</sup> also used to write at times. It is said that the first person to write for him was Ubayy b. Ka'b,<sup>977</sup> and that

969. Ibn Kathir, *Sīrah*, IV, 631. See Safinah above.

970. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, VIII, 153; Ibn Kathir, *Sīrah*, IV, 630–31.

971. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, VIII, 153; Ibn Kathir, *Sīrah*, IV, 630; she was called Shirīn.

972. Ṣafwān, who was the accused party in the scandal against Ā'ishah, assaulted Ḥassān because of the latter's part in spreading the rumors. Whether Ṣafwān did it out of a sense of personal injury or on the Prophet's orders to stop the gossipers is not clear, but it seems certain that Ṣafwān went unpunished for this assault. The Prophet's gift to Ḥassān seems to be an act of reconciliation. See Arafat, "Controversial incident."

973. His name was Nufay' b. Masrūb. Wāqidī, *Maghāzī*, III, 931, 932; Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, II/1, 114, 115; Balādhuri, *Ansāb*, I, 489–506.

974. More freedmen are listed in Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, I/2, 180; Balādhuri, *Ansāb*, I, 482, 483, 484, 485, 506; Ibn Kathir, *Sīrah*, IV, 616–40.

975. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, I/2, 154; IV/2, 77; Ibn Kathir, *Sīrah*, IV, 669.

976. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, IV/2, 76–79; Ibn Kathir, *Sīrah*, IV, 692.

977. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, *passim*; Ibn Kathir, *Sīrah*, IV, 670–71.

[1782]

when he was absent Zayd b. Thābit<sup>978</sup> wrote for him. 'Abdallāh b. Sa'd b. Abī Ṣarh<sup>979</sup> used to write for him. He apostatized from Islam and later returned to Islam on the day of the conquest of Mecca. Mu'āwiyah b. Abī Sufyān and Hanzalah al-Usayyidi<sup>980</sup> [also] wrote for him.<sup>981</sup>

### *The Names of the Messenger of God's Horses*

Al-Ḥārith—Ibn Sa'd—Muhammad b. 'Umar—Muhammad b. Yaḥyā b. Sahl b. Abī Ḥathmah—his father:<sup>982</sup> The first horse owned by the Messenger of God was the one he bought in Medina from a man of the Banū Fazārah for ten *awāq*.<sup>983</sup> Its name as given by the Bedouin was *al-Daris*,<sup>984</sup> but the Messenger of God named it *al-Sakb*.<sup>985</sup> The first expedition he undertook on it was Uhud. At that time, the Muslims did not have any other horse except the one belonging to Abū Burdah b. Niyār,<sup>986</sup> which was called *Mulāwiḥ*.<sup>987</sup>

Al-Ḥārith—Ibn Sa'd—Muhammad b. 'Umar: I asked Muham-

978. He is best known for the collection of the Qur'ān and died ca. 45/665–66. *EI*<sup>1</sup>, s.v. Zaid b. Thābit; Watt, *Bell's Introduction*, 40ff.; Blachère, *Introduction*, 30ff.

979. He is supposed to have arbitrarily altered the revelation, or to have boasted of doing so after his apostasy from Islam; hence the Prophet, after the conquest of Mecca, wanted to execute him, but 'Uthmān succeeded in obtaining pardon for him. Balādhuri, *Ansāb*, I, 531–32; *EI*<sup>2</sup>, s.v. 'Abdallāh b. Sa'd.

980. Ibn Kathir, *Sīrah*, IV, 673–75; Ibn Ḥajar, *Isābah*, II, 134–35.

981. For the detailed list of *kuttāb al-wāḥy*, see Ibn Kathir, *Sīrah*, IV, 669–97.

982. It is worth noting that, except the first two transmitters (i.e., al-Ḥārith and Ibn Sa'd), the remaining chain of authorities are the same in Ibn Sa'd's *Tabaqāt*. Ibn Sa'd reports directly from Muhammad b. 'Umar al-Wāqidi while al-Tabari (in this case) reports indirectly from al-Wāqidi through al-Ḥārith.

983. *Awāq*, pl. of *ūqiyah*, is a measure of weight. Hinz, *Masse und Gewichte*, 34. See also Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, I/2, 174.

984. It means a man having set his teeth on edge, or angry by reason of hunger. It also implies stubbornness. Lane, *Lexicon*, s.v. d-r-s.

985. *Al-Sakbā*: Balādhuri, *Ansāb*, I, 509. It means a swift or an excellently running horse, and is likened to water pouring forth. Lane, *Lexicon*, s.v. s-k-b. See also Ibn al-Aṭhir, *Kāmil*, II, 314.

986. He was present at the second pledge of 'Aqabah and fought at Badr. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, III/2, 25.

987. It means a slender horse or one having excellent and large bones. Lane, *Lexicon*, s.v. l-w-ḥ.

[1783]

mad b. Yahyā b. Sahl b. Abī Ḥathmah about *al-Murtajiz*,<sup>988</sup> and he said that it was the horse [the Messenger of God] purchased from a Bedouin for whom Khuzaymah b. Thābit bore witness. The Bedouin was from the Banū Murrah.<sup>989</sup>

Al-Ḥārith—Ibn Sa'd—Muhammad b. 'Umar—Ubayy b. 'Abbās b. Sahl<sup>990</sup>—his father<sup>991</sup>—his grandfather:<sup>992</sup> The Messenger of God had three horses: *Lizāz*,<sup>993</sup> *al-Zarib*,<sup>994</sup> and *al-Luḥayf*;<sup>995</sup> they were presented to him by al-Muqawqis, Rabi'ah b. Abī al-Barā', and Farwah b. 'Amr al-Judhāmī. The Messenger of God rewarded Rabi'ah b. Abī al-Barā' [for *al-Luḥayf*] with camels [that were taken in payment of *zakāt*] from the herds of the Banū Kilāb.

Tamīm al-Dārī presented a horse called *al-Ward*<sup>996</sup> to the Messenger of God, and he gave it to 'Umar, who rode it in the cause of God and [later] found out that it was sold [in the market].<sup>997</sup>

Some [authorities] allege that the Messenger of God had a horse called *al-Ya'sūb*<sup>998</sup> in addition to the horses I have mentioned.

988. It was so-called because of the intense but pleasing sound of its neighing. The name of the Bedouin was Sawād b. al-Ḥārith b. Zālim. Firuzābādi, *Qāmūs*, s.v. r-j-z. See also Balādhurī, *Ansāb*, I, 509; Ibn al-Athir, *Kāmil*, II, 314.

989. Kalbi, *Jamharah*, 36, 44. See also Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, I/2, 174.

990. Ibn Hajar, *Tahdhīb*, I, 186–87.

991. 'Abbās b. Sahl b. Sa'd al-Anṣārī al-Khazrajī died ca. 120/738. *Ibid.*, V, 118.

992. It is said that Sahl was the last companion of the Prophet to die in Medina ca. 91/709–10. *Ibid.*, IV, 252–53. See also Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, I/2, 174–75.

993. *Lizāz* is a piece of wood with which the door is fastened, hence it is applied to one who cleaves to a thing. Firuzābādi, *Qāmūs*, s.v. l-z-z. See also Ibn al-Athir, *Kāmil*, 314.

994. Literally, it means a stone projecting from a mountain and having a sharp point. The horse was so-called because of its strong body, like a rock. Ibn al-Athir, *Kāmil*, II, 314; Firuzābādi, *Qāmūs*, s.v. z-r-b.

995. As in Ibn Sa'd (*Tabaqāt*, I/2, 175), Ibn al-Athir (*Kāmil*, II, 314), Ibn Kathir (*Sīrah*, IV, 713), and Firuzābādi (*Qāmūs*, s.v. l-h-f). Text: *Lukhayf*. *Luḥayf* was so called because it used to cover the ground with its big tail. *Lakhf*, on the other hand, means a delicate foam. See also Balādhurī, *Ansāb*, I, 509–10.

996. A horse of a bright, or yellowish, bay color, or of a red color inclining to yellow. Lane, *Lexicon*, s.v. w-r-d.

997. Balādhurī (*Ansāb*, I, 510) adds: So, he took it back.

998. It is used for a horse when it is likened for the slenderness of its body to a certain flying thing. It also means a blaze or a white mark on a horse's face. Firuzābādi, *Qāmūs*, s.v. 's-b; Lane, *Lexicon* s.v. 's-b. Ibn al-Athir, *Kāmil*, II, 314, states that it was so-called because it was the best horse of the Prophet, like the king of the bees (*ya'sūb*).

### *The Names of the Messenger of God's Mules*

Al-Ḥārith—Ibn Sa'd—Muhammad b. 'Umar—Mūsā b. Muḥammad b. Ibrāhīm<sup>999</sup>—his father:<sup>1000</sup> *Duldul*,<sup>1001</sup> the Prophet's mule, was the first mule seen in Islam. It was presented to him by al-Muqawqis with a donkey called 'Ufayr.<sup>1002</sup> The mule survived until the time of Mu'āwiyah.

Al-Ḥārith—Ibn Sa'd—Muhammad b. 'Umar—Ma'mar<sup>1003</sup>—al-Zuhri: *Duldul* was given to the Prophet by Farwah b. 'Amr al-Judhāmī.<sup>1004</sup>

- [1784] Al-Ḥārith—Ibn Sa'd—Muhammad b. 'Umar—Abū Bakr b. 'Abdallāh b. Abī Sabrah<sup>1005</sup>—Zāmil b. 'Amr: Farwah b. 'Amr gave the Prophet a mule called *Fiddah*<sup>1006</sup> and he gave it to Abū Bakr [along with] his donkey *Ya'fir*.<sup>1007</sup> The donkey died after his return from the Farewell Pilgrimage.

### *The Names of the Messenger of God's Camels*

Al-Ḥārith—Ibn Sa'd—Muhammad b. 'Umar—Mūsā b. Muḥammad b. Ibrāhīm al-Taymī—his father: *Al-Qaṣwā'*<sup>1008</sup> was from the camels of the Banū al-Ḥarish,<sup>1009</sup> and was bought with another camel by Abū Bakr for eight hundred dirhams (drachmas). The Messenger of God bought it from Abū Bakr for four hundred

999. Died ca. 151/768. Ibn Ḥajar, *Tahdhīb*, X, 368–69.

1000. Died ca. 120/738. *Ibid.*, IX, 5–7.

1001. *Daldala* means one who moves his head and limbs in walking. Firuzābādī, *Qāmūs*, s.v. d-l-l.

1002. A diminutive form of *a'far*. It had slight white color. Balādhurī, *Ansāb*, I, 511; Ibn al-Athir, *Kāmil*, II, 315. It was also called *Ya'fir*, meaning dust-colored. Firuzābādī, *Qāmūs*, s.v. 'f-r. See also Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, I/2, 175–76.

1003. Ma'mar b. Rāshid al-Azdī died ca. 152/769. Ibn Ḥajar, *Tahdhīb*, X, 243–46.

1004. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, I/2, 175.

1005. Died in 162/778–79. Ibn Ḥajar, *Tahdhīb*, XII, 27–28.

1006. It means silver. See also Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, I/2, 175.

1007. Balādhurī, *Ansāb*, I, 511, states that it was given by Farwah b. 'Amr al-Judhāmī.

1008. A slit-eared she-camel. Firuzābādī, *Qāmūs*, s.v. q-s-y.

1009. Balādhurī (*Ansāb*, I, 511) and Ibn al-Athir (*Kāmil*, II, 315): Al-Ḥuraysh; Ibn Sa'd (*Tabaqāt*, I/2, 176): Al-Ḥarīs. The Banū Ḥarish were a clan of the Banū 'Amir b. Sa'sa'ah.

[dirhams],<sup>1010</sup> and it remained with him until it died. It was the camel on which he emigrated [from Mecca to Medina].<sup>1011</sup> When he came to Medina it was seven years old [*rabā'iyyah*].<sup>1012</sup> Its name was *al-Qaṣwā'*, *al-Jad'ā'*,<sup>1013</sup> or *al-'Adbā'*.<sup>1014</sup>

Al-Hārith—Ibn Sa'd—Muhammad b. 'Umar—Ibn Abī Dhi'b<sup>1015</sup>—Yaḥyā b. Ya'lā—Ibn al-Musayyib:<sup>1016</sup> Its name was *al-'Adbā'* and it had a slit on the side of its ear.

### *The Names of the Messenger of God's Milch Camels*

Al-Hārith—Ibn Sa'd—Muhammad b. 'Umar—Mu'āwiya b. 'Abdallāh b. 'Ubaydallāh b. Abī Rāfi': The Messenger of God had milch camels which were raided by the Bedouins [while they were grazed] in a thicket (*ghābah*).<sup>1017</sup> They were twenty and the Messenger of God's family lived on [their milk]. Every evening, two big waterskins filled with milk were brought to him. Among those camels were some which yielded abundant milk. [They were] *al-Hannā'*,<sup>1018</sup> *al-Samrā'*, *al-'Arīs*, *al-Sa'diyyah*, *al-Baghūm*,<sup>1019</sup> *al-Yasīrah*, and *al-Rayyā*.<sup>1020</sup>

Al-Hārith—Ibn Sa'd—Muhammad b. 'Umar—Hārūn b. Mu-

[1785]

1010. Balādhuri (*Ansāb*, I, 511) adds: The more reliable report is that it was given to the Prophet by Abū Bakr.

1011. *Ibid.*, I, 266.

1012. It means the tooth between the central incisor (*thaniyyah*) and the canine tooth (*nāb*), which determines the age for camels of about seven years old. Lane, *Lexicon*, s.v. r-b'.

1013. A she-camel having the sixth or the fourth part of her ear cut off. Lane, *Lexicon*, s.v. j-d'.

1014. A slit-eared she-camel or a she-camel with a "short foreleg." *Ibid.*, s.v. 'q-b. It was the same camel which got lost during the Tabūk expedition and which 'Ali rode to Mecca to deliver *al-Barā'ah*. Ibn Hishām, *Sīrah*, IV, 190; Wāqidi, *Maghāzi*, III, 1009, 1077.

1015. Muhammad b. 'Abd al-Rahmān b. Abī Dhi'b died ca. 158/774-75. Ibn Hajar, *Tahdhīb*, IX, 303-7.

1016. Sa'id b. al-Musayyib al-Qurashī al-Makhzūmī died in 100/718-19. *Ibid.*, IV, 84-88.

1017. A dense forest of tamarisk bushes at the extreme north end of the Medina oasis in the broad sandy bed of Wādī al-'Aqiq. Philby, *Pilgrim*, 75.

1018. Ibn al-Athīr (*Kāmil*, II, 315): *Al-Hasnā'*.

1019. A she-camel uttering a yearning cry for her young one. *Ibid.*

1020. Ibn Sa'd (*Tabaqāt*, I/2, 177); *Al-Dabbā'*.

ḥammad<sup>1021</sup>—his father<sup>1022</sup>—Nabbān,<sup>1023</sup> freedman of Umm Salamah: I heard Umm Salamah saying that the diet, or the greater part of the diet, of the Messenger of God's family consisted of milk. The Messenger of God had milch camels in the thicket which he allotted to his wives. Among them was a milch camel called *al-'Arīs*. From it [Umm Salamah] used to get whatever amount of milk she desired. 'Ā'ishah had a milch camel called *al-Samrā'* which used to yield abundant milk, unlike that of Umm Salamah. The herdsman later brought the milch camels to a nearer pasture in the district of al-Jawwāniyyah,<sup>1024</sup> after which they were brought to the women's houses in the evening and were given to them to be milked. [The Messenger of God's]<sup>1025</sup> milch camel was more abundant in milk than the two milch camels [of 'Ā'ishah and Umm Salamah], being almost equal to them or more.

Al-Ḥārith—Ibn Sa'd—Muhammad b. 'Umar—'Abd al-Salām b. Jubayr—his father: The Messenger of God had [seven]<sup>1026</sup> milch camels which were kept at Dhū al-Jadr<sup>1027</sup> and al-Jammā'<sup>1028</sup> and their milk was brought to him. [One of the] milch camels was called *Muhrāh*.<sup>1029</sup> It was given [to him] by Sa'd b. 'Ubādah from the herd of the Banū 'Uqayl<sup>1030</sup> and was abundant in milk. *Al-Rayyā'*<sup>1031</sup> and *al-Shaqrā'* were bought from the Banū 'Āmir in the Nabatean (*al-Nabt*)<sup>1032</sup> market. *Al-Burdah*, *al-Samrā'*, *al-'Arīs*, *al-Yasirah*, and *al-Hannā'* were milked every night and their milk was brought to him. The Prophet's slave named Yasār [who looked after those camels] was killed [during the Bedouins' raid].<sup>1033</sup>

1021. Ibn Hajar, *Tahdhīb*, XI, 10.

1022. Muhammad b. Bakkār b. Bilāl al-Āmilī died in 216/831. *Ibid.*, IX, 416.

1023. Loc. cit.

1024. A village near Medina. Yāqūt, *Mu'jam*, II, 175.

1025. See Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, I/2, 177.

1026. Addition from *ibid.*, I/2, 178. Balādhūrī (*Ansāb*, I, 512): Ten.

1027. A place in Medina. Bakrī, *Mu'jam*, II, 371.

1028. A place near Medina. *Ibid.*, II, 393–94.

1029. Addition in Ibn Sa'd (*Tabaqāt*, I/2, 178): A milch camel called *al-Shaqrā'*, a milch camel called *al-Dabbā'*. The *Muhrāh* was sent by Sa'd . . . .

1030. Ibn Sa'd: 'Aqīl.

1031. Ibn Sa'd: *Al-Dabbā'*.

1032. They are the Arabs who lived in ancient times in Arabia Petraea. *EI*<sup>1</sup>, s.v. Nabataeans. Shahid, *Rome and the Arabs*, 5, 19; idem, *Byzantium and the Arabs*, 23.

1033. See Tabarī, above, I, 1781.

*The Names of the Messenger of God's  
Milch Sheep (Manā'iḥ)<sup>1034</sup>*

(1786)

Al-Hārith—Ibn Sa'd—Muhammad b. 'Umar—Zakariyā' b. Yaḥyā—Ibrāhīm b. 'Abdallāh from the descendants of 'Utbah b. Ghazwān: The Messenger of God's milch sheep were seven: 'Ajwah, Zamzam, Suqyā, Barakah, Warisah,<sup>1035</sup> Aṭlāl,<sup>1036</sup> and Aṭrāf.<sup>1037</sup>

Al-Hārith—Ibn Sa'd—Muhammad [b. 'Umar]—Abū Ishāq—'Abbād b. Mansūr<sup>1038</sup>—'Ikrimah<sup>1039</sup>—Ibn 'Abbās: The milch goats of the Messenger of God were seven in number, and they were tended by Ibn Umm Ayman.<sup>1040</sup>

*The Names of the Messenger of God's Swords*

Al-Hārith—Ibn Sa'd—Muhammad b. 'Umar—Abū Bakr b. 'Abdal-lāh b. Abī Sabrah<sup>1041</sup>—Marwān b. Abī Sa'id b. al-Mu'allā: The Messenger of God took three swords from the armor of the Banū Qaynuqa'<sup>1042</sup> which were called *Qala'i*,<sup>1043</sup> *Battār* ["very sharp"], and *al-Hatf* ["death"].<sup>1044</sup> After that he had *al-Mikhdham* ["sharp"],<sup>1045</sup> and *Rasūb* ["that is wont to sink"], which he took from [the property of] *al-Fils* [a shrine].<sup>1046</sup>

It is said that when the Messenger of God came to Medina he

1034. Plural of *manīḥah*, means a milch sheep or goat that is lent for the sake of her milk for a certain period and then restored to the lender. Lane, *Lexicon*, s.v. *m-n-h*.

1035. Ibn al-Athīr (*Kāmil*, II, 315): *Warasah*.

1036. Ibn Sa'd (*Tabaqāt*, I/2, 178) and Balādhurī (*Ansāb*, I, 514): *Iṭlāl*.

1037. Ibn Sa'd, and Balādhurī: *Aṭrāf*.

1038. Died in 152/769. Ibn Hajar, *Tahdhīb*, V, 103–5.

1039. 'Ikrimah b. Khālid b. al-'Aṣ. *Ibid.*, VII, 258–59.

1040. For further details, see Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, I/2, 178–79.

1041. Died in 162/778–79. Ibn Hajar, *Tahdhīb*, XII, 27–28.

1042. One of the three Jewish tribes of Yathrib (Medina). *El<sup>2</sup>*, s.v. *Kaynuķā'*, *Banū*.

1043. *Qala'a* means to pluck out, to extirpate. *Qala'i* is called after a place al-Qala'ah known for its swords. Balādhurī, *Ansāb*, I, 522; Firuzābādi, *Qāmūs*, s.v. *q-l-*.

1044. Ibn al-Athīr (*Kāmil*, II, 316): *Al-Khif* [feared]. The editor states in the footnote that "*al-Hatf*" is a variant reading.

1045. It was formerly the sword of al-Hārith al-Ghassāni. Lane, *Lexicon*, s.v. *kh-dh-m*.

1046. See Tabarī, above, I, 1706, n. 434.

- [1787] had two<sup>1047</sup> swords with him. One was called *al-'Aḍb* ["sharp"], with which he participated at Badr.<sup>1048</sup> The sword called *Dhū al-Faqār*<sup>1049</sup> was obtained as booty at Badr. It had [previously] belonged to Munabbih b. al-Hajjāj.

### *The Names of the Messenger of God's Bows and Lances*

Al-Ḥārith—Ibn Sa'd—Muhammad b. 'Umar—Abū Bakr b. 'Abdal-lāh b. Abī Sabrah—Marwān b. Abī Sa'id b. al-Mu'allā: The Messenger of God took three lances and three bows from the weapons of the Banū Qaynuqā'. The names of the bows were *al-Rawḥā'*,<sup>1050</sup> a *shawḥat* bow called *al-Bayḍā'* ("white"), and a yellow bow called *al-Ṣafrā'* [made] of *nab'*<sup>1051</sup> wood.

### *The Names of the Messenger of God's Coats of Mail*

Al-Ḥārith—Ibn Sa'd—Muhammad b. 'Umar—Abū Bakr b. 'Abdal-lāh b. Abī Sabrah—Marwān b. Abī Sa'id b. al-Mu'allā: The Messenger of God took two coats of mail from the weapons of the

1047. Ibn Sa'd (*Tabaqāt*, I/2, 171) and Balādhurī (*Ansāb*, I, 521): He had one sword with him which was handed down to him from his father. Ibn al-Athir, *Kāmil*, II, 316, seems to be reporting from al-Tabarī.

1048. Balādhurī states that it was given by Sa'd b. 'Ubādah.

1049. *Dhū al-faqār* means "having the vertebrae of the back." It is the most celebrated sword of the Prophet and, afterwards, of 'Ali. It had previously belonged to al-'Āṣ b. Munabbih, who was slain at Badr by 'Ali, who gave it to the Prophet. It was so named because there were small, beautiful hollows or scallops in the edge, for more easy cleaving of coats of mail. Lane, *Lexicon*, s.v. f-q-r. For further details, see Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, I/2, 171–72; Balādhurī, *Ansāb*, I, 521; Ibn Kathīr, *Sīrah*, IV, 707–8.

According to the Shi'i belief, this sword, the coats of mail, and other weapons of the Prophet were inherited by 'Ali and the imāms as a token of their being the rightful successors of the Prophet. Kulaynī, *al-Kāfi*, I, 232–36.

1050. It means "most conducive to ease, or wide." Probably it is called after a place name, *Rawḥā'*, about 75 km from Medina toward Mecca. Harbi, *Manāsik*, 444–46; Al-Wohaibī, *Hijaz*, 226–30.

1051. A species of tree of which bows are made. *Shawḥat* and *nab'* are one; the name varies according to the excellence of their places of growth. What is upon the summit is called *nab'*, while what is in the depressed tract by its base is called *shawḥat*. Lane, *Lexicon*, s.v. sh-h-t. See Tabarī, above I, 1760, n. 836.

Banū Qaynuqā': one was called *al-Sa'diyyah*<sup>1052</sup> and the other *Fiddah* ("silver").

Al-Hārith—Ibn Sa'd—Muhammad b. 'Umar—Mūsā b. 'Umar—Ja'far b. Maḥmūd<sup>1053</sup>—Muhammad b. Maslamah.<sup>1054</sup> On the day of Uhud I saw the Messenger of God [wearing] two coats of mail, *Dhāt al-Fuḍūl*<sup>1055</sup> and *Fiddah*; I saw him on the day of Khaybar [wearing] two coats of mail, *Dhāt al-Fuḍūl* and *al-Sa'diyyah*.<sup>1056</sup>

### The Names of the Messenger of God's Shields

Al-Hārith—Ibn Sa'd—'Attāb b. Ziyād<sup>1057</sup>—'Abdallāh b. al-Mubārak<sup>1058</sup>—'Abd al-Rahmān b. Yazid b. Jābir:<sup>1059</sup> I heard Makhlūl saying: The Messenger of God had a shield with a sculptured image of a ram's head which he disliked, and one morning when he woke up, God caused that image to disappear [from the shield].<sup>1060</sup>

[1788]

### The Messenger of God's Names

Muhammad b. al-Muthannā<sup>1061</sup>—Ibn Abī 'Adī<sup>1062</sup>—'Abd al-Rahmān (that is, al-Mas'ūdī)<sup>1063</sup>—'Amr b. Murrah<sup>1064</sup>—Abū

1052. It is called after a place near Medina known for its coats of mail. Firuzabadi, *Qāmūs*, s.v. s-'-d.

1053. Ibn Hajar, *Tahdhīb*, II, 106.

1054. A companion of the Prophet. *Ibid.*, IX, 454–55.

1055. It was so-called because it had redundant portions or ampleness. Lane, *Lexicon*, s.v. f-d-l. Balādhurī, *Ansāb*, I, 521, 523, states that either this coat of mail or *al-Fiddah* was presented to the Prophet by Sa'd b. 'Ubādah.

1056. On the day of Hunayn, the Prophet wore two coats of mail, *al-Mighfar* and *al-Baydah*. Wāqidī, *Maghāzī*, III, 897; Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, I/2, 172–73; II/1, 109.

1057. Ibn Hajar, *Tahdhīb*, VII, 92.

1058. Died in 181/797–98. *Ibid.*, V, 382–87.

1059. *Ibid.*, VI, 297–98.

1060. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, I/2, 173.

1061. Died ca. 252/866. Ibn Hajar, *Tahdhīb*, IX, 425–27.

1062. Muhammad b. Ibrāhīm b. Abī 'Adī died ca. 194/809–10. *Ibid.*, IX, 12–13.

1063. 'Abd al-Rahmān b. 'Abdallāh al-Mas'ūdī died in 160/776–77. *Ibid.*, VI, 210–12.

1064. 'Amr b. Murrah b. 'Abdallāh al-Murādī al-Kūfī died ca. 118/736. *Ibid.*, VIII, 102–3.

'Ubaydah<sup>1065</sup>—Abū Mūsā [al-Ash'arī]: The Messenger of God named himself to us [in various ways] from which we remember him saying, "I am Muḥammad the [one who is praised], Ahmad [the most praiseworthy], al-Muqaffī [the follower], al-Hāshir [the gatherer], Nabī al-tawbah wa'l-rahmah<sup>1066</sup> [the Prophet of repentence and mercy].

[Muhammad] Ibn al-Muthannā—Abū Dāwūd<sup>1067</sup>—Ibrāhīm (that is, Ibn Sa'd)<sup>1068</sup>—al-Zuhri—Muḥammad b. Jubayr b. Muṭ'im<sup>1069</sup>—his father:<sup>1070</sup> The Messenger of God told me, "I have several names. I am Muḥammad, Ahmad, al-'Āqib [the last in succession], and al-Māhī [the obliterator]." Al-Zuhri states: Al-'Āqib is the one after whom there is no one [i.e., no prophet], and al-Māhī is the one through whom God will efface infidelity.<sup>1071</sup>

Ibn al-Muthannā—Yazid b. Hārūn<sup>1072</sup>—Sufyān b. Husayn<sup>1073</sup>—al-Zuhri—Muḥammad b. Jubayr b. Muṭ'im—his father: The Messenger of God said, "I am Muḥammad, Ahmad, al-Māhī, al-'Āqib, and al-Hāshir, who will gather mankind at his feet."<sup>1074</sup>

Yazid [b. Hārūn] states: I asked Sufyān [b. Husayn] what al-'Āqib meant, and he replied [that it meant] the last prophet.

<sup>1065.</sup> Abū 'Ubaydah b. Hudhayfah b. al-Yamān al-Kūfi. Ibid. XII, 159.

<sup>1066.</sup> As in Muslim (Ṣaḥīḥ, VII, 90), and Tabrizi (*Mishkāt*, III, 132; *Mishkat* [trans. Robson], II, 1239; transmitted on the authority of Abū Mūsā al-Ash'arī). Text, Ibn Ishāq (*Kitāb al-Mubtada'*, 123) and Ibn Shabbah (*Ta'rīkh*, II, 632): *Wa'l-malhāmah* [one who predicts future events that were to happen before the Last Hour]. Another version in Ibn Shabbah reads: *Nabī al-rahmah wa-nabī al-malhāmah*.

<sup>1067.</sup> Sulaymān b. Dāwūd al-Tayālisi died ca. 203/818–19. Ibn Hajar, *Tahdhīb*, IV, 182–86.

<sup>1068.</sup> Ibrāhīm b. Sa'd al-Zuhri died ca. 183/799. Ibid., I, 121–23.

<sup>1069.</sup> Ibid., IX, 91–92.

<sup>1070.</sup> Jubayr b. Muṭ'im b. 'Adī died ca. 58/677–78. Ibid., II, 63–64.

<sup>1071.</sup> Tabrizi, *Mishkāt*, 132; *Mishkat* [trans. Robson], II, 1239; transmitted both by Bukhārī and Muslim on the authority of Jubayr b. Muṭ'im. Cf. also Balādhurī, *Ansāb*, I, 392.

<sup>1072.</sup> Died ca. 206/821–22. Ibn Hajar, *Tahdhīb*, XI, 366–69.

<sup>1073.</sup> Ibid., IV, 107–9.

<sup>1074.</sup> Ibn Shabbah, *Ta'rīkh*, II, 631; Tabrizi, *Mishkāt*, III, 132; *Mishkat* [trans. Robson], II, 1239.

*The Messenger of God's Characteristics*

[1789]

Ibn al-Muthannā—Ibn Abī ‘Adī—al-Mas’ūdī—‘Uthmān b. ‘Abdal-lāh b. Hurmuz<sup>1075</sup>—Nāfi’ b. Jubayr<sup>1076</sup>—‘Ali b. Abī Ṭālib: The Messenger of God was neither tall nor short. [He had] a large head and beard, the palms of his hands and his feet were calloused, [he had] large joints, his face [had] a reddish tinge, the hair of his breast was long, and when he walked he bent forward as if he were descending a slope. I have never seen anyone like him before or since.<sup>1077</sup>

Ibn al-Muthannā—Abū Al-hmad al-Zubayrī<sup>1078</sup>—Mujamma’ b. Yaḥyā<sup>1079</sup>—‘Abdallāh b. ‘Imrān<sup>1080</sup>—a man of the *Anṣār* (whom ‘Abdallāh b. ‘Imrān did not name): I asked ‘Ali b. Abī Ṭālib while he was seated in the mosque of al-Kūfah, leaning his back against the wall and carrying his sword, “Describe for me the characteristics of the Messenger of God.” He replied, “The Messenger of God was of a white complexion with a reddish tinge, [with] deep-black and large [eyes],<sup>1081</sup> and long eyelashes. The hair of his breast was thin, his cheeks were smooth, and his beard was thick and long as if his neck were a silver pitcher. The hair from the upper part of his chest to his navel ran like a branch cut off from a tree. He did not have any other hair on his chest or in his armpits. The palms of his hands and his feet were calloused. When he walked, [he walked] as though he were descending a slope or as though he were falling from a rock. When he turned around he turned completely;<sup>1082</sup> his turn was neither short nor long, and [he turned] neither like a weak nor like a mean person. The perspiration on his face [looked] as if it were pearls, and the fragrance

1075. Ibn Hajar, *Tahdhīb*, VII, 133.

1076. Nāfi’ b. Jubayr b. Muṭ’im b. ‘Adī died in 99/717–18. *Ibid.*, X, 404–5.

1077. Balādhuri, *Ansāb*, I, 386ff.; Tabrizī, *Mishkāt*, III, 135; *Mishkat* (trans. Robson), II, 1242. See also Ibn Sa’d, *Tabaqāt*, I/2, 121; Gaudefroy-Demombynes, *Mahomet*, 209–10.

1078. Muḥammad b. ‘Abdallāh b. al-Zubayr died in 203/818–19. Ibn Hajar, *Tahdhīb*, IX, 254–55.

1079. *Ibid.*, X, 47–48.

1080. *Ibid.*, V, 343.

1081. Addition from Ibn Sa’d, *Tabaqāt*, I/2, 120.

1082. Ibn Sa’d: He was neither short nor long, neither weak nor mean.

of his sweat was better than musk.<sup>1083</sup> I have never seen anyone like him before or since."

[1790] Ibn al-Muqaddamī<sup>1084</sup>—Yaḥyā b. Muḥammad b. Qays, who is called Abū Zukayr,<sup>1085</sup> states: I heard Rabī'ah b. Abī 'Abd al-Rahmān<sup>1086</sup> recalling from Anas b. Mālik that the Messenger of God was commissioned [by God] when he was at the beginning of his fortieth year. He remained in Mecca ten years and in Medina ten years, and died at the beginning of his sixtieth year, when there were not twenty white hairs in his head and beard. He was neither very tall nor very short; he was neither pure white nor of dark complexion; and his hair was neither curly nor long.<sup>1087</sup>

Ibn al-Muthannā—Yazid b. Hārūn—al-Jurayrī:<sup>1088</sup> I was with Abū al-Tufayl circumambulating the Ka'bah, and he said, "No one who saw the Messenger of God is alive except me." I asked him, "Did you see him?" He replied, "Yes." I asked, "What were his characteristics?" He answered, "He was white, good-looking, and of moderate stature."<sup>1089</sup>

### *The Seal of Prophethood Which He Had*

Ibn al-Muthannā—al-Dahhāk b. Makhlaḍ<sup>1090</sup>—'Azrah b. Thābit<sup>1091</sup>—'Ilbā'<sup>1092</sup>—Abū Zayd:<sup>1093</sup> The Messenger of God said to me, "O Abū Zayd, come close to me and wipe my back," and<sup>1094</sup>

1083. Ibn Sa'd, and Ibn Shabbah (*Ta'rikh*, II, 607): The pungent musk [or the musk of the utmost excellence].

1084. Muḥammad b. Abī Bakr al-Muqaddamī died in 234/848–49. Ibn Ḥajar, *Tahdhīb*, IX, 79.

1085. *Ibid.*, XI, 274–75.

1086. Died ca. 136/753–54. *Ibid.*, III, 258–59.

1087. Tabrizī, *Mishkāt*, III, 133; *Mishkat* (trans. Robson), II, 1240; transmitted both by Bukhārī and Muslim on the authority of Anas b. Mālik.

1088. Sa'īd al-Jurayrī. Ibn Ḥajar. *Tahdhīb*, XI, 366.

1089. Tabrizī, *Mishkāt*, III, 134; *Mishkat* (trans. Robson), II, 1241; transmitted by Muslim. For further details, see Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, I/2, 120–31; Ibn Shabbah, *Ta'rikh*, II, 602–17.

1090. Al-Dahhāk b. Makhlaḍ b. al-Dahhāk al-Shaybānī died ca. 214/828–30. Ibn Ḥajar, *Tahdhīb*, IV, 450–53.

1091. *Ibid.*, VII, 192.

1092. 'Ilbā' b. 'Aḥmar al-Yashkūrī al-Baṣrī. *Ibid.*, VII, 273–74.

1093. Ibn Sa'd (*Tabaqāt*, I/2, 131): Abū Rimthah. 'Amr b. Akhtab b. Rifā'ah, Abū Zayd al-Anṣārī, was a companion of the Prophet. Ibn Ḥajar, *Tahdhīb*, VIII, 4.

1094. Ibn Sa'd (*Tabaqāt*, I/2, 131): I went close and wiped his back.

[1791]

he uncovered his back. I touched his back, and then put my finger<sup>1095</sup> on the seal and touched it. ['Ilba'] states: I said [to Abū Zayd], "What is the seal?" He replied, "[It is] a collection of hair on his shoulders."

Ibn al-Muthannā—Bishr b. al-Waḍdāḥ Abū al-Haytham<sup>1096</sup>—Abū 'Aqīl al-Dawraqī<sup>1097</sup>—Abū Naḍrah:<sup>1098</sup> I asked Abū Sa'īd al-Khudrī about the seal which the Prophet had, and he said that it was like a protruding lump of flesh.<sup>1099</sup>

### *His Bravery and Generosity*

Ibn al-Muthannā—Hammād b. Wāqid<sup>1100</sup>—Thābit<sup>1101</sup>—Anas: God's Messenger was one of the best of men, the most generous of men, and the bravest of men. [One night the people of] Medina were frightened and went in the direction of the sound. Lo and behold, they found the Messenger of God on an unsaddled bare-backed horse belonging to Abū Ṭalhah! He had a sword with him and had gone there before them and was saying, "O people, don't be afraid, don't be afraid." Then he said, "O Abū Ṭalhah, we found it [could run like] a great river." Before that the horse was slow-paced, but no horse outstripped it after that.<sup>1102</sup>

Ibn al-Muthannā—'Abd al-Rahmān b. Mahdi<sup>1103</sup>—Hammād b. Zayd<sup>1104</sup>—Thābit—Anas: The Messenger of God was the bravest most generous of men. [One night when the people of] Medina were frightened and went in the direction of the sound, he freed Abū Ṭalhah's horse from fright and rode on it bare-backed, with-

1095. Ibn Sa'd: My fingers.

1096. Died in 221/836. Ibn Hajar, *Tahdhīb*, I, 462.

1097. Bāshīr b. 'Uqbah al-Nājjī was called Abū 'Aqīl al-Dawraqī. *Ibid.*, I, 465–66.

1098. Al-Mundhir b. Mālik, Abū Naḍrah al-Baṣrī, died ca. 108/726–27. *Ibid.*, X, 302–3.

1099. For various descriptions of the seal, see Tabrīzī, *Mishkāt*, I, 148; III, 132–33; *Mishkat* (trans. Robson), I, 96; II, 1239–40; Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, I/2, 131–33; Ibn Shabbah, *Tarīkh*, II, 62, 5.

1100. Ibn Hajar, *Tahdhīb*, III, 21.

1101. Thābit b. Aslam al-Banānī died ca. 123/740–41. *Ibid.*, II, 2–4.

1102. Tabrīzī, *Mishkāt*, III, 139–40; *Mishkat* (trans. Robson), II, 1245–46; transmitted by both Bukhārī and Muslim on the authority of Anas. For a different report, see Ibn al-Athīr, *Kāmil*, II, 306.

1103. Died in 198/813–14. Ibn Hajar, *Tahdhīb*, VI, 279–81.

1104. Died in 179/795–96. *Ibid.*, III, 9–11.

out a saddle, with a sword swung on his neck, and said, "We found it [could run like] a great river," or "it is like a great river."

[1792] *The Description of His Hair and Whether He Used to Dye It or Not*

Ibn al-Muthannā—Mu‘ādh b. Mu‘ādh<sup>1105</sup>—Harīz b. ‘Uthmān<sup>1106</sup>—Abū Mūsā—Mu‘ādh: I have never seen a person from the inhabitants of Syria to whom I could give preference over [the Prophet]. We went to ‘Abdallāh b. Busr, and I said to him while I was with my companions, "Did you see the Messenger of God? Was he an old man?" He put his hand on the part between his chin and the edge of his lower lip and said, "There was a white hair [among a few hairs] between his lower lip and his chin."

Ibn al-Muthannā—Abū Dāwūd—Zuhayr<sup>1107</sup>—Abū Ishāq—Abū Juhayfah:<sup>1108</sup> I saw the Messenger of God's white [tuft of] hair on his lower lip. He was asked, "Like what you have now, O Abū Juhayfah?" He replied, "I pare and feather arrows."<sup>1109</sup>

Ibn al-Muthannā—Khālid b. al-Hārith<sup>1110</sup>—Humayd:<sup>1111</sup> Anas was asked whether the Messenger of God dyed his hair. He replied, "The whiteness of the Messenger of God's hair did not become intense, but Abū Bakr dyed his with henna and *katam*<sup>1112</sup> and ‘Umar dyed his with henna."<sup>1113</sup>

Ibn al-Muthannā—Ibn Abī ‘Adī—Humayd: Anas was asked whether the Messenger of God dyed his hair, and he replied, "Grey hair was not seen on him, except for nineteen or twenty

<sup>1105.</sup> Mu‘ādh b. Mu‘ādh al-‘Anbarī al-Baṣrī died in 196/811–12. *Ibid.*, X, 194–95.

<sup>1106.</sup> Died ca. 163/779–80. *Ibid.*, II, 237–41.

<sup>1107.</sup> Zuhayr b. Muhammad al-Tamimi died in 162/778–79. *Ibid.*, III, 348–50.

<sup>1108.</sup> Wahb b. ‘Abdallāh, called Abū Juhayfah al-Suwā‘ī, died ca. 74/693–94. *Ibid.*, XI, 164.

<sup>1109.</sup> Ibn Sa‘d, *Tabaqāt*, I/2, 137.

<sup>1110.</sup> Died in 186/802. Ibn Hajar, *Tahdhib*, III, 82–83.

<sup>1111.</sup> Humayd b. Abi Humayd al-Tawil died ca. 142/759–60. *Ibid.*, III, 38–40.

<sup>1112.</sup> A herb used for hair dye. Firuzābādī, *Qāmūs*, s.v. k-t-m.

<sup>1113.</sup> Tabrizī (*Mishkāt*, II, 501; *Mishkat* [trans. Robson], I, 937): Anas replied: "If I had wanted to count the grey hairs on his head, I could have done so," adding that he did not dye his hair. In another version, Anas added that both Abū Bakr and ‘Umar dyed their hair. It is transmitted by both Bukhārī and Muslim. For other reports, see Ibn Sa‘d, *Tabaqāt*, I/2, 135–36.

white hairs in the front part of his beard. He was not blemished with grey hair." It was said to Anas, "Is [having grey hair] a blemish?" He replied, "All of you dislike it. Abū Bakr dyed [his white hair] with henna and *katam* and 'Umar dyed his with henna."

Ibn al-Muthannā—Mu'ādh b. Mu'ādh—Ḥumayd—Anas: The Prophet did not have more than twenty grey hairs.<sup>1114</sup>

Ibn al-Muthannā—'Abd al-Rahmān [b. Mahdī]—Hammād b. Salamah<sup>1115</sup>—Simāk<sup>1116</sup>—Jābir b. Samurah:<sup>1117</sup> There was no white hair on the Messenger of God's head except for a few hairs in the place where the hair of his head was parted. When he annointed it with oil he covered it.<sup>1118</sup>

Ibn al-Muthannā—'Abd al-Rahmān b. Mahdī—Sallām b. Abī Muṭī—'Uthmān b. 'Abdallāh b. Mawhib:<sup>1119</sup> A wife of the Prophet entered [the house] and brought out to us the Messenger of God's hair dyed with henna and *katam*.<sup>1120</sup>

Ibn Jābir b. al-Kurdī al-Wāsiṭī—Abū Sufyān—al-Daḥḥāk b. Humurah<sup>1121</sup>—Ghaylān b. Jāmi'<sup>1122</sup>—Iyād b. Laqīṭ<sup>1123</sup>—Abū Rimthah:<sup>1124</sup> The Messenger of God used to dye [his hair] with henna and *katam*, and his hair used to reach his shoulders. [Commenting on the reliability of narrators in the above chain, al-Ṭabarī states:] There is doubt with regard to Abū Sufyān.

Ibn al-Muthannā—'Abd al-Rahmān b. Mahdī—Ibrāhīm [i.e., Ibn Nāfi']<sup>1125</sup>—Ibn Abī Najīḥ—Mujāhid—Umm Hāni': I saw the Messenger of God and he had four [braided] locks of hair.<sup>1126</sup>

1114. Ibn Shabbah, *Ta'rikh*, II, 622–23.

1115. Died in 167/783–84. Ibn Ḥajar, *Tahdhīb*, III, 11–16.

1116. Simāk b. Ḥarb al-Kūfī died in 123/740–41. *Ibid.*, IV, 232–34.

1117. Died ca. 74/693–94. *Ibid.*, II, 39–40.

1118. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, I/2 136.

1119. Died in 160/776–77. Ibn Ḥajar, *Tahdhīb*, VII, 132–33.

1120. Balādhuri, *Ansāb*, I, 395, on the authority of 'Abdallāh b. Mawhib, states: I entered [the house] of Umm Salamah and she brought out to me the Messenger of God's hair dyed with henna and *katam*. See also Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, I/2, 139; Ibn Shabbah, *Ta'rikh*, II, 618; Tabrizi, *Mishkāt*, II, 501; *Mishkāt* (trans. Robson), II, 937; transmitted by Bukhārī on the authority of Ibn Mawhib.

1121. Ibn Ḥajar, *Tahdhīb*, IV, 443–44.

1122. Died in 132/749–50. *Ibid.*, VIII, 252–53.

1123. *Ibid.*, I, 386–87.

1124. He was a companion of the Prophet. *Ibid.*, XII, 97.

1125. *Ibid.*, I, 174.

1126. For a further description of his hair, see Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, I/2, 133–35.

*Report about the Beginning of the Messenger  
of God's Illness in Which He Died, and What  
He Did Just Prior to It When He was Bewailed  
(for His Approaching Death)*

Abū Ja'far [al-Tabarī]: God states: "When comes the help of God, and victory, and you see men entering God's religion in multitudes, then glorify your Lord and seek His forgiveness. Verily He is forgiving."<sup>1127</sup> We have mentioned before what the Messenger of God's instructions were to his companions during his pilgrimage called "The Farewell Pilgrimage (*ḥajjat al-wadā'*)," "The Pilgrimage of Completion [or Perfection of Religion] (*ḥajjat al-tamām*)," and "The Pilgrimage for Conveying the Message (*ḥajjat al-balāgh*)"<sup>1128</sup> its rites and his last Will and Testament to them. This I have cited before in his address which he delivered to them during that pilgrimage. Then the Messenger of God returned from his journey, after he had performed the pilgrimage, to his residence in Medina toward the end of Dhū al-Ḥijjah and stayed there during the remainder of that month as well as during Muḥarram and Ṣafar.

---

1127. Qur'ān, *sūrah* 110.

1128. See Tabarī, above, 1756.

# The Events of the Year

## II

(MARCH 29, 632–MARCH 17, 633)

Abū Ja'far [al-Ṭabārī]: I have received an account on the authority of Ibn Ḥumayd—Salamah—Muhammad b. Ishāq—‘Abd al-Raḥmān b. al-Ḥārith b. ‘Ayyāsh b. Abī Rabī‘ah:<sup>1129</sup> In the year 11/632, during the month of Muḥarram,<sup>1130</sup> the Messenger of God ordered the people to undertake an expedition to Syria. He put Usāmah, the son of his freed slave Zayd b. al-Ḥārithah, in command over them, ordering him to lead the cavalry into the territory of al-Balqā'<sup>1131</sup> and al-Dārūm<sup>1132</sup> in the land of Palestine. The people got ready and the first emigrants<sup>1133</sup> went forth all together with him. As the people were preparing for the expedition, the Prophet began to suffer from the sickness by which God took him to what honor and compassion He intended

---

1129. Died in 143/760–61. Ibn Ḥajar, *Tahdhīb*, VI, 155–56.

1130. Wāqidi, *Maghāzī*, III, 1117; and Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, II/1, 136, state that the Messenger of God ordered the expedition on the twenty-fifth of Ṣafar.

1131. A name given by the Arab authors either to the whole of the Transjordanian territory or to the middle part of it. Its geographical meaning is restricted to the limestone plateau between the Wādi al-Zarqā' and the Wādi al-Mūjib. *EP*, s.v. al-Balkā'.

1132. Name of a coastal plain of Palestine, *EP*, s.v. al-Dārūm.

1133. The prominent emigrants, such as Abū Bakr, ‘Umar, and Abū ‘Ubaydah b. al-Jarrāḥ, were asked by the Prophet to join the expedition. Wāqidi, *Maghāzī*, III, 1118; Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, II/1, 136; Balādhuri, *Ansāb*, I, 474.

for him. [It took place] toward the end of Šafar or at the beginning of Rabī' I.

[1795] 'Ubaydallāh b. Sa'īd al-Zuhrī<sup>1134</sup>—his uncle Ya'qūb<sup>1135</sup>—Ibrāhīm<sup>1136</sup>—Sayf b. 'Umar<sup>1137</sup>—'Abdallāh b. Sa'īd b. Thābit b. al-Jidh' al-Anṣārī—'Ubayd b. Ḥunayn,<sup>1138</sup> freedman of the Prophet—Abū Muwayhibah, freedman of the Messenger of God: After performing the Pilgrimage of Completion (*hajjat al-tamām*) the Messenger of God returned to Medina, [which made] travel permissible [for the people]. He ordered them to undertake an expedition, put Usāmah b. Zayd in charge of it, ordering him to go from Ābil al-Zayt,<sup>1139</sup> the land of the Arabs that is near *mashārif al-Shām*,<sup>1140</sup> to the territory in Jordan (*al-Urdunn*).<sup>1141</sup> The hypocrites criticized [the leadership of Usāmah], so the Prophet refuted them, [stating] that indeed he was worthy of [the command]. If they criticized [Usāmah's leadership], then indeed they had criticized his father before, although Zayd was qualified to command.<sup>1142</sup> The news that the Prophet was suffering from sickness spread in the land as travel became permissible. Both al-Aswad and Musaylimah seized upon [the opportunity to claim the prophethood for themselves] in the Yemen and al-Yamāmah, respectively, and their news had reached the Prophet. After he had recovered [from his illness], Tulayḥah seized upon [the opportunity to claim the prophethood for himself] in the country of Asad. In Muḥarram the Prophet complained of the pain by which God took him.

Ibn Sa'īd [al-Zuhrī]—his uncle Ya'qūb—Sayf [b. 'Umar]—Hi-

<sup>1134.</sup> Died in 260/873–74. Ibn Ḥajar, *Tahdhīb*, VII, 15–16.

<sup>1135.</sup> Died in 208/823–24. *Ibid.*, XI, 380–81.

<sup>1136.</sup> Ibrāhīm b. Sa'īd b. Ibrāhīm b. 'Abd al-Rahmān b. 'Awf al-Zuhrī died ca. 183/799. *Ibid.*, I, 121–23.

<sup>1137.</sup> He represents the Iraqi historical school and died in 180/796. Duri, *Rise*, 46–47, 140, 154.

<sup>1138.</sup> A client of the Banū Zurayq, who died in 105/723–24. Ibn Ḥajar, *Tahdhīb*, VII, 63–64.

<sup>1139.</sup> A place name. Yāqūt, *Mu'jam*, I, 50.

<sup>1140.</sup> The highlands of Syria. *Ibid.*, V, 131.

<sup>1141.</sup> See *El'*, s.v. al-Urdunn.

<sup>1142.</sup> Wāqidi, *Maghāzī*, III, 1118–19, states that some of the *Muhājirūn* also criticized Usāmah's leadership. When 'Umar conveyed the criticism to the Prophet, he became very angry, went to the pulpit and addressed the people urging them to dispatch the army of Usāmah. This happened on Saturday, the tenth of Rabī' I. Cf. also Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, II/1, 136; II/2, 40–42; Lings, *Muhammad*, 339.

shām b. 'Urwah—his father: Toward the end of Muharram the Messenger of God complained of the pain by which God took him.

Al-Wāqīdī states: The Messenger of God's pain started two days before the end of Ṣafar.<sup>1143</sup>

'Ubaydallāh b. Sa'īd [al-Zuhrī]—his uncle [Ya'qūb]—Sayf b. 'Umar—al-Mustanīr b. Yazid al-Nakha'i—'Urwah b. Ghaziyyah al-Dathīnī<sup>1144</sup>—al-Ḍahhāk b. Fayrūz b. al-Daylāmī<sup>1145</sup>—his father:<sup>1146</sup> The first apostasy (*riddah*)<sup>1147</sup> in Islam took place in the Yemen, while the Messenger of God was alive, at the hands of Dhū al-Khimār 'Abhalah b. Ka'b (that is, al-Aswad) among the commonalty of Madhhij after the Farewell [Pilgrimage]. Al-Aswad was a soothsayer and a juggler. He used to show them wondrous things captivating the hearts of those who listened to his speech. The first time he [claimed the prophethood] was [after] his coming out of the Khubbān cave. It was his residence [because] he was born and brought up there. Madhhij corresponded with him, promising him Najrān. They attacked [Najrān] and expelled 'Amr b. Hazm and Khālid b. Sa'īd b. al-'Āṣ [the Prophet's agents], giving al-Aswad the position occupied by the latter two. Qays b. 'Abd Yaghūt attacked Farwah b. Musayk, [the Prophet's agent] over Murād, and expelled him placing al-Aswad in his stead. 'Abhalah [al-Aswad] did not stop at [the subjugation of] Najrān but marched to Ṣan'a' and occupied it. The news of his rising and occupation of Ṣan'a' was conveyed to the Prophet. It was the first news about him that the Prophet received from Farwah b. Musayk. Those people of Madhhij who remained faithful to Islam joined Farwah, and they [gathered] at al-Aḥsiyah. Al-Aswad neither corresponded with Farwah nor sent [any messenger] to him, because there was no one with the latter who would have caused trouble for him. His hold over the Yemen was [thus] complete.

'Ubaydallāh [al-Zuhrī]—his uncle Ya'qūb—Sayf [b. 'Umar]—Talḥah b. al-Ālam—Ikrimah—Ibn 'Abbās: The Prophet had or-

<sup>1143.</sup> Wāqīdī, *Maghāzī*, III, 1117, states that it was Wednesday, the following day after he had appointed Usāmah in charge of the expedition.

<sup>1144.</sup> Ibn Hajar, *Tahdhīb*, IV, 448.

<sup>1145.</sup> *Ibid.*, IV, 448.

<sup>1146.</sup> *Ibid.*, VIII, 305. See Hamidullāh, *Majmū'ah*, 282–87, for what follows.

<sup>1147.</sup> See Tabārī, above I, 1737, n. 641.

[1796]

dered the expedition of Usāmah, but it did not go well because of his illness and because both Musaylimah and al-Aswad had renounced [his authority]. The hypocrites did much [to criticize] Usāmah's leadership. When [the criticism] reached the Prophet, he went out to the people while his head was wrapped around because of the pain, which had increased due to the dream he had seen [while he was] in 'Āishah's house, saying, "Last night I saw what a sleeping person sees, that in my two upper arms there were two golden armbands. I disliked them so I blew on them, and they flew away [in the air]. I interpreted the armbands to mean these two arch liars,<sup>1148</sup> the possessor of al-Yamāmah and<sup>1149</sup> the possessor of the Yemen. It has reached me that some people speak [ill of] Usāmah's leadership. By my life, if they criticize his leadership, then they have criticized the leadership of his father before. If his father was worthy of command, then he is [equally] worthy of it. Dispatch the expedition of Usāmah!<sup>1150</sup> May God curse those who make the tombs of their prophets as places of worship (*masājid*)!" Usāmah went out [with his army], camped at al-Jurf, and the people began to gather in the army. Tulayḥah rose [in rebellion], so the people acted slowly and deliberately. The Messenger of God's [disease] became violent, so the expedition was not accomplished. The people were looking at each other until God took His Prophet's soul.

Al-Sari b. Yaḥyā wrote to me [i.e., al-Ṭabarī] stating that he has received an account on the authority of Shu'ayb b. Ibrāhīm al-Tamīmī—Sayf b. 'Umar—Sa'īd b. 'Ubayd, Abū Ya'qūb—Abū Mājid al-Asādī—al-Ḥadrāmī b. 'Āmir al-Asādī: [When] Abū Mājid asked Ḥadrāmī concerning Tulayḥah b. Khuwaylid's affair, the latter replied: [After] we received the news of the Prophet's illness, it reached us that Musaylimah and al-Aswad had gained ascendancy over al-Yamāmah and the Yemen, respectively. Soon thereafter, Tulayḥah claimed the prophethood while [Usāmah's] army was [still] at Samīrā'. The commonalty [of Asad] followed Tulayḥah and his hold became consolidated. He sent his brother's son Hibāl to the Prophet, inviting him to make peace with him

<sup>1148.</sup> Ibn Shabbah (*Ta'rikh*, II, 573) adds: Musaylimah.

<sup>1149.</sup> Ibn Shabbah adds: Al-'Anṣi. For the importance of dreams, see Tabarī, above, I, 1673, n. 182.

<sup>1150.</sup> Balādhurī, *Ansāb*, I, 384, 474.

[1797]

and informing him about his news. Hibāl said that the one who visits Ṭulayḥah is Dhū al-Nūn, and he named [that spirit] an angel.<sup>1151</sup> Then Hibāl, [introducing himself], said that he was the son of Khuwaylid. The Prophet replied, "May God kill you and deprive you of the *shahādah*!"

'Ubaydallāh b. Sa'īd [al-Zuhrī]—his uncle Ya'qūb—Sayf [b. 'Umar]—Sa'īd b. 'Ubayd—Hurayth b. al-Mu'allā: The first person who wrote to the Prophet about the news of Ṭulayḥah was Sinān b. Abī Sinān. He was [the Prophet's agent] over the Banū Mālik while Quḍā'i b. 'Amr was [the Prophet's agent] over the Banū al-Hārith.

[1798]

'Ubaydallāh b. Sa'īd [al-Zuhrī]—his uncle [Ya'qūb]—Sayf [b. 'Umar]—Hishām b. 'Urwah—his father: The Messenger of God waged war against the false prophets by sending messengers. He sent a messenger to some of the descendants of the Persian soldiers in the Yemen (*al-abnā'*) instructing them [to get rid of] al-Aswad by artful contrivance. He [further] instructed them to seek help of some people whom he named from the Banū Tamīm and Qays, sending [word] to the latter to help the former. They did [as instructed]. The means of [escape] for those who apostatized were cut off, and they were attacked [while they were] in a state of waning. Since they were isolated, they were occupied with themselves. Al-Aswad was killed while the Messenger of God was [still] alive, a day or a night before the latter's death. Ṭulayḥah, Musaylimah and the likeness of them were driven away by the messengers.

Despite his illness, the Messenger of God was not distracted from the command of God and the defense of His religion.<sup>1152</sup> He sent Wabar b. Yuhannas to Fayrūz, Jushaysh al-Daylāmī, and Dādhawayhi al-İştakhrī; Jarīr b. 'Abdallāh to Dhū al-Kalā' [Sumayfi']<sup>1153</sup> and [Hawshab]<sup>1154</sup> Dhū Zulaym; al-Aqrā' b. 'Abdal-

<sup>1151</sup>. The pre-Islamic Arabs believed in the demon of poetry, and they thought that a great poet was directly inspired by demons. Similarly, a *kāhin* (soothsayer) and an '*arrāfah* (sorceress) were supposed to have a spirit (*shayṭān* or *tābi'*), who visited them. See Ibn Hishām, *Sīrah*, I, 162; Tabarī, I, 1864 [al-Aswad al-'Anṣī was a *kāhin* with a *shayṭān* and a *tābi'*]; Gaudefroy-Demombynes, *Mahomet*, 35, 44, 45; Fahd, *Divination*, 72–75, 91ff.

<sup>1152</sup>. See Hamidullāh, *Majmū'ah*, 284–85.

<sup>1153</sup>. Addition from Hamidullāh.

<sup>1154</sup>. Addition from Hamidullāh.

[1799] lāh al-Ḥimyārī to Dhū Zūd and Dhū Murrān; Furāt b. Ḥayyān al-‘Ijli to Thumāmah b. Uthāl,<sup>1155</sup> Ziyād b. Ḥanẓalah al-Tamīmī al-‘Amrī to Qays b. ‘Āsim and al-Zibriqān b. Badr; Ṣalṣal b. Shur-ahbīl to Sabrah al-‘Anbarī, Waki’ al-Dārimī, ‘Amr b. al-Mahjūb al-‘Āmirī and ‘Amr b. al-Khafājī of the Banū ‘Āmir; Dirār b. al-Azwar al-Asadī to ‘Awf al-Zirqānī of the Banū al-Ṣaydā’ and Sinān al-Asadī al-Ghanmī<sup>1156</sup> and Quḍā’ī al-Daylamī; Nu’aym b. Mas’ūd al-Ashja’ī to Ibn Dhi al-Lihyah and Ibn Muṣhaymašah al-Jubayrī.

Hishām b. Muḥammad—Abū Mikhnaf<sup>1157</sup>—al-Ṣaq’ab b. Zuhayr<sup>1158</sup>—the jurists of al-Hijāz: The Messenger of God suffered from the pain caused by the disease which took his life toward the very end of Ṣafar while he was in the house of Zaynab bt. Jahsh.

[1800] Ibn Ḥumayd—Salamah and ‘Ali b. Muṣṭāfi—Muḥammad b. Ishāq—‘Abdallāh b. ‘Umar b. ‘Ali—‘Ubayd b. Jubayr, a freedman of al-Ḥakam b. Abī al-‘Āṣ—‘Abdallāh b. ‘Amr b. al-‘Āṣ—Abū Muwayhibah, a freedman of the Messenger of God. The Messenger of God sent for<sup>1159</sup> me in the middle of the night, saying, “O Abū Muwayhibah, I have been ordered to seek forgiveness for the [dead] inhabitants of al-Baqī’ [cemetery],<sup>1160</sup> so come with me.” I went with him, when he stood before them he said, “Peace be upon you, O people of the graves! Happier are you in your state than the people [here] in their present state!<sup>1161</sup> Dissension (*fītan*)<sup>1162</sup> has come like segments of a pitch dark night one after the other, the last being worse than the first.” He then turned to me, saying, “O Abū Muwayhibah, I have been given the keys of the treasures of this world, long abode in it, then Paradise. I have been given the choice between it and meeting my Lord and Para-

<sup>1155.</sup> See *ibid.*, 56–57.

<sup>1156.</sup> Ḥamidullāh: Al-Qanmī.

<sup>1157.</sup> One of the earliest historians, who died in 157/774. *EP*, s.v. Abū Mikhnaf; Sezgin, *GAS*, I, 308–9; Duri, *Rise*, *passim*.

<sup>1158.</sup> Ibn Hajar, *Tahdhīb*, IV, 432.

<sup>1159.</sup> Ibn Shabbah (*Ta’rīkh*, I, 87): Woke me up.

<sup>1160.</sup> Ibn Ishāq, Ibn Shabbah: Of this al-Baqī’ [cemetery]. See also Ibn Sa’d, *Tabaqāt*, II/2, 9–10; Lings, *Muhammad*, 337–38.

<sup>1161.</sup> Ibn Shabbah and Balādhuri (*Ansāb*, I, 544) add: [I wish] you knew from what God has saved you!

<sup>1162.</sup> Generally, it means sedition whereby some good or evil quality is put to the test.

dise, so<sup>1163</sup> I have chosen meeting my Lord and Paradise." I said, "May you be ransomed with my parents! Take the keys of the treasures of this world and long life in it followed by Paradise." He replied, "No, by God, O Abū Muwayhibah, I have chosen meeting my Lord and Paradise." He prayed for the [dead] inhabitants of al-Baqī' [cemetery] and left. Then the illness during which<sup>1164</sup> he died began.

Ibn Ḥumayd—Salamah—Muhammad b. Ishāq; and Ibn Ḥumayd—‘Ali b. Mujāhid—Ibn Ishāq—Ya‘qūb b. ‘Utbah—Muhammad b. Muslim b. Shihāb al-Zuhri—‘Ubaydallāh b. ‘Abdallāh b. ‘Utbah [b. Mas‘ūd]<sup>1165</sup>—‘Ā’ishah, the Prophet's wife: [When] the Messenger of God returned from al-Baqī' [cemetery] he found me suffering from headache and crying, "Alas, O my head!" He said, "Nay, by God, O ‘Ā’ishah, rather alas, O my head!" Then he said, "It would not distress you if you were to die before me so that I would take care of you[r body], wrap you in the shroud, pray over you, and bury you." I replied, "By God, it seems to me that if you were to do that you would return to my house and would make a marriage feast with one of your wives."<sup>1166</sup> The Messenger of God smiled, [then] his pain came to him, all of it, as he was going the round of his wives until he was overwhelmed by it while he was in Maymūnah's house.<sup>1167</sup> He called his wives, asking their permission to be nursed in my house. They permitted him, so the Messenger of God went out [walking]<sup>1168</sup> between two men of his family, al-Fadl b. al-‘Abbās, and another man with his feet dragging on the ground, while his head was wrapped around until he entered my house.

‘Ubaydallāh [b. ‘Abdallāh b. ‘Utbah] states: [When] I narrated

[1801]

<sup>1163.</sup> So . . . Paradise: Omitted from Ibn Ishāq and Ibn Sa‘d. It is an example of oneiromancy, cf. Fahd, *Divination*, 284.

<sup>1164.</sup> Ibn Ishāq: Through which God took him began. Ibn Shabbah, *Ta‘rīkh*, I, 87–91, 94–95, adds other reports, stating that that night the Prophet was with ‘Ā’ishah. Andrae, *Mohammed*, 171.

<sup>1165.</sup> Addition from Ibn Ishāq. He died ca. 94/712–13. Ibn Hajar, *Tahdhīb*, VII, 23–24.

<sup>1166.</sup> As it indicates, ‘Ā’ishah very often assumed a jesting tone. Ibn Sa‘d, *Tabaqāt*, II/2, 10–11; Balādhuri, *Ansāb*, I, 541, 544; Tabrīzī, *Mishkāt*, III, 207–8; *Mishkat* (trans. Robson), II, 1308; Andrae, *Mohammed*, 171–72; Gaudefroy-Demombynes, *Mahomet*, 204; Lings, *Muhammad*, 338.

<sup>1167.</sup> Ibn Sa‘d, *Tabaqāt*, II/2, 11, 30.

<sup>1168.</sup> Addition from Hirsch. and Ibn Ishāq.

this story of 'Ā'ishah to 'Abdallāh b. 'Abbās, he asked, "Do you know who the [other]<sup>1169</sup> man was?" "No," I said. He replied, "[He was] 'Alī b. Abī Tālib, but<sup>1170</sup> 'Ā'ishah could not bring herself to speak well of him, although she was able to do it."<sup>1171</sup>

Then the Messenger of God's illness intensified, the pain became fierce, so he said, "Pour seven skins of water over me from different wells so that I may go out to the people and instruct them." 'Ā'ishah states: We made him sit in a tub (*mikhḍab*) belonging to Ḥafṣah bt. 'Umar and poured water over him until he began saying, "Enough, enough."<sup>1172</sup>

Humayd b. al-Rabi' al-Kharrāz—Ma'n b. Ḫāṣid<sup>1173</sup>—al-Hārith b. 'Abd al-Malik b. 'Abdallāh b. Iyās al-Laythī al-Ashja'i—al-Qāsim b. Yazīd<sup>1174</sup>—'Abdallāh b. Qusayt—his father—'Atā—Ibn 'Abbās—his brother al-Faḍl b. 'Abbās: The Messenger of God sent for me, so I went, found him ill, and his head wrapped around.<sup>1175</sup> He asked me to take his hand and I did so until he [walked and] sat on the pulpit [in the mosque]. Then he asked me to call the people, [I did so] and they gathered round him. He said, "O people,

[1802] I praise God, the only God, unto you. Now then: Your rights are dear to me<sup>1176</sup> so whomever I have flogged on his back with a whip, here is my back—let him avenge; and whomever I have reviled, here is my honor—let him retort.<sup>1177</sup> Malice is neither my nature nor characteristic of me.<sup>1178</sup> Indeed, the most loved of you to me is the one who claims his right from me [if he is the aggrieved party],<sup>1179</sup> or that he should absolve me [from it] so that

<sup>1169.</sup> Addition from Hisch., Ibn Ishāq, and Balādhurī.

<sup>1170.</sup> But . . . it: Omitted from Hisch. and Ibn Ishāq.

<sup>1171.</sup> 'Ā'ishah's grudge against 'Alī stemmed from the incident of the slander against her [Qur'ān 24:10–20], when 'Alī had advised the Prophet to divorce her. Ibn Hishām, *Sīrah*, III, 313–14; Wāqīdī, *Maghāzī*, II, 430; Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, II/2, 29. For recent works, see Abū al-Naṣr, 'Alī wa 'Ā'ishah; al-Afghānī, 'Ā'ishah wa 'Isyāṣah.

<sup>1172.</sup> Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, II/2, 29.

<sup>1173.</sup> Died in 198/813–14. Ibn Ḥajar, *Tahdhīb*, X, 252–53.

<sup>1174.</sup> *Ibid.*, VIII, 341–42.

<sup>1175.</sup> See Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, II/2, 45, for some variations.

<sup>1176.</sup> I am only a human being: Addition in Ibn Sa'd.

<sup>1177.</sup> Ibn Sa'd adds: And whose property I might have taken [unknowingly], here is my property: let him take [compensation].

<sup>1178.</sup> Ibn Sa'd: No person should say that he is afraid of enmity and malice from the Messenger of God, because they are neither my nature nor my property.

<sup>1179.</sup> Addition from Ibn Sa'd.

I shall meet the Lord while I am content.<sup>1180</sup> I see that this is not enough until I stand before you several times."

Then he got down [from the pulpit], prayed the *zuhra* (midday) prayers, returned and sat on the pulpit repeating what he had said earlier. A man stood up saying, "O Messenger of God, you owe me three dirhams." He said, "O Fadl, give him [three dirhams]," and I did. Then he sat and said, "O people, he who has a pledge let him return it and not profess the disgrace of this world, because the disgrace of the present world is easier [to bear] than the disgrace of the world to come." A man stood up saying, "O Messenger of God, I owe [you] three dirhams which I took unfaithfully from the cause of God." He asked, "Why did you do it?" "I was in need of it," the man replied. He said, "O Fadl, take [three dirhams] from him." Then he said, "O people, he who is afraid of himself for something, let him stand up so that I will pray for him." A man stood up saying, "O Messenger of God, I am a liar, a late riser, and [one who acts] impudently." The Messenger of God said, "O God, bless him with truthfulness and faith and remove lethargy from him, if he is determined!" Another man stood up saying, "By God, O Messenger of God, I am a liar, a hypocrite, and there is no act which I did not commit." 'Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb stood up and said that the man had disgraced himself. The Prophet said, "O son of al-Khaṭṭāb, the disgrace of this world is easier [to bear] than the disgrace of the world to come. O God, bless that man with truthfulness and faith, and make his affairs good!" 'Umar thereupon asked the Prophet to speak to that man.<sup>1181</sup> The Messenger of God smiled and said, "'Umar is with me and I am with him." Referring to that man,<sup>1182</sup> the Prophet said, "Follow 'Umar after me, wherever he might be."

[1803]

Ibn Ḥumayd—Salamah—Ibn Ishāq—al-Zuhri—Ayyūb b. Bashir:<sup>1183</sup> The Messenger of God went out while his head was wrapped around and sat in the pulpit. The first thing he said was a prayer for the men of Uhud, asking God's forgiveness for them and prolonging the prayer. Then he said, "God has given one of his servants the choice between this world and that which is with

<sup>1180.</sup> Ibn Sa'd: I am exonerated.

<sup>1181.</sup> Cairo: 'Umar said a word.

<sup>1182.</sup> Cairo: After me the truth is with 'Umar wherever he might be.

<sup>1183.</sup> Died ca. 65/684–85. Ibn Hajar, *Tahdhīb*, I, 396.

Him, and the servant has chosen the latter." Abū Bakr understood and knew that the Prophet meant himself, so he cried, saying, "Nay, we and our children will be your ransom!" The Prophet replied, "Gently, Abū Bakr!" [Then he added],<sup>1184</sup> "Look at these doors that open on to the mosque. Close them except the one which is from Abū Bakr's house,<sup>1185</sup> for I know no one who is a better friend to me with regard to generosity than he."<sup>1186</sup>

Ibn Ḥumayd—Salamah—Muhammad b. Ishāq—'Abd al-Rahmān b. 'Abdallāh<sup>1187</sup>—some one from the family of Abū Sa'īd b. al-Mu'allā: That day the Messenger of God said in his speech, "If I were to take a friend from among mankind, I would take Abū Bakr as a friend, but comradeship and brotherhood in the faith [continue] until God unites us in His presence."

Aḥmad b. 'Abd al-Rahmān b. Wahb<sup>1188</sup>—his uncle 'Abdallāh b. Wahb<sup>1189</sup>—Mālik [b. Anas]<sup>1190</sup>—Abū al-Naḍr<sup>1191</sup>—'Ubayd b. Hunayn—Abū Sa'īd al-Khudrī: One day the Messenger of God sat in the pulpit, saying, "God has given a servant the choice between obtaining whatever he desires of the splendor of this world and that which is with God, and he has chosen that which is with God." Abū Bakr wept, saying, "May our fathers and mothers be your ransom, O Messenger of God!" Al-Khudrī states: We were surprised at Abū Bakr, [some] people said, "Look at this old man, [when] the Messenger of God informs [us] about a servant who has been given the choice, he says, 'May our fathers and mothers be your ransom!'"<sup>1192</sup> The Messenger of God was the one who was given the choice and Abū Bakr informed us of it. The Messenger of God said, "The most gracious person to me, with his comradeship and wealth, is Abū Bakr. If I were to take a friend

<sup>1184.</sup> Addition from Hisch., Ibn Ishāq, and Balādhurī (*Ansāb*, I, 547).

<sup>1185.</sup> Ibn Hishām [Another tradition states], and Balādhurī: Except Abū Bakr's door. Cf. Lings, *Muhammad*, 338.

<sup>1186.</sup> See Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqat*, II/2, 25.

<sup>1187.</sup> Ibn Ḥajar, *Tahdhīb*, VI, 212–13.

<sup>1188.</sup> Died in 264/877–78. *Ibid.*, I, 54–56.

<sup>1189.</sup> Died in 197/812–13. *Ibid.*, VI, 71–74.

<sup>1190.</sup> A jurist and founder of the Mālikī school of jurisprudence died in 179/795. *EI2*, s.v. Mālik b. Anas; Sezgin, *GAS*, I, 457–64.

<sup>1191.</sup> He is Sālim b. Umayyah and died in 120/738. Ibn Ḥajar, *Tahdhīb*, III, 431–32.

<sup>1192.</sup> Tabrīzī, *Mishkāt*, III, 202; *Mishkat* (trans. Robson), II, 1303; transmitted by both Bukhārī and Muslim.

[with me] I would take Abū Bakr, but Islamic brotherhood [remains]. No aperture in the mosque except that of Abū Bakr will be left [open].”<sup>1193</sup>

Muhammad b. 'Umar b. al-Šabāh al-Hamdānī—Yaḥyā b. 'Abd al-Rahmān—Muslim b. Ja'far al-Bajali: I heard 'Abd al-Malik b. al-İsbahānī from Khallād al-Asadī: 'Abdallāh b. Mas'ūd states: Our beloved Prophet announced his [approaching] death a month before he died. When the separation drew near, he gathered us in the house of our mother Ā'ishah, looked at us intensely while his eyes were shedding tears, and said, “Welcome to you. May God treat you with compassion, shelter you, protect you, exalt you, benefit you, give you success, assist you, preserve you, and receive you (kindly)! I enjoin you to fear God and entrust you to Him. I appoint Him as successor over you and entrust you to Him. Verily I am to you [from Him] a warner and an announcer of good tidings.”<sup>1194</sup> ‘Rise not up against God’<sup>1195</sup> in His land and among His creatures, for He has stated to me and to you: ‘That is the mansion of the Hereafter, We give it to those who desire neither exaltation in the earth nor corruption. The future belongs to the pious.’<sup>1196</sup> He [also] stated: ‘Is there not a place in Hell for the arrogant?’<sup>1197</sup>

We asked, “When is your appointed time (*ajal*)?” “The separation [from you] and return to God and the Lote Tree<sup>1198</sup> have drawn closer,” he replied. We asked him who would wash him and with what [cloth] he should be wrapped. He replied that he should be washed by his closest relatives and that he should be wrapped in the clothes he was wearing, or in a white Egyptian cloth, or in Yemenī dress (*ḥullah Yamāniyyah*).<sup>1199</sup> Then, we asked him who would lead the prayer over him. He said, “[Go] slowly. May God forgive you and reward you with goodness on

<sup>1193.</sup> See Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, II/2, 24, 25–26.

<sup>1194.</sup> Qur'an 11:2.

<sup>1195.</sup> Ibid., 44:19.

<sup>1196.</sup> Ibid., 28:83.

<sup>1197.</sup> Ibid., 39:60.

<sup>1198.</sup> Ibn Sa'd (*Tabaqāt*, II/2, 46) adds: And the Garden of Repose, the Exalted Companion, the brimming cup, the wholesome life.

<sup>1199.</sup> A wrapper for the whole body, generally consisting of three garments: a shirt, an *izār*, and a *ridā'*. The Yemenī garment is said to be the best kind of grave clothing. Lane, *Lexicon*, s.v. *ḥ-l-l*.

[1805]

behalf of your prophet!" We wept, as did he, and he said, "After you have washed and wrapped me in the shroud, put me on my bed in this house of mine on the edge of my grave, then go out for a while. The first one to pray over me would be my companion and friend Gabriel (*Jibrīl*), then Michael (*Mikā'il*), then *Isrāfil*. [He will be] followed by the angel of death with a great multitude of angels in their entirety. After that, you are to enter group by group, pray over me, and pronounce your salutations. Do not hurt me by beating yourselves, nor by mournful and vehement cries. Let the male members of my family start praying over me, followed by their women, then you, and convey my salutation to yourselves. I testify to you that I have conveyed my salutation to those who rendered their oath of allegiance to me for my religion from today until the Day of Judgment." We asked him who would lower him into the grave, he replied, "The members of my family, together with many angels, who will see you but you will not see them."

Aḥmad b. Hammād al-Dūlābī<sup>1200</sup>—Sufyān—Sulaymān b. Abī Muslim<sup>1201</sup>—Saīd b. Jubayr<sup>1202</sup>—Ibn 'Abbās: Thursday, what a Thursday!<sup>1203</sup> He said: The Messenger of God's pain became so severe that he said, "Give me [pen and paper]<sup>1204</sup> so that I may write a document for you and you will never go astray after me."<sup>1205</sup> His companions wrangled over it,<sup>1206</sup> and it did not befit them to carry on a dispute before a prophet. Some people said, "What's the matter with him? Is he talking nonsense?<sup>1207</sup> Ask

1200. Ibn Hajar, *Tahdhīb*, I, 25–26.

1201. *Ibid.*, IV, 218.

1202. Died in 95/713–14. *Ibid.*, IV, 11–14.

1203. Then he wept until his tears wet the pebbles. He was asked, what about Thursday, and he replied: Addition in Tabrizi, *Mishkāt*, III, 205–6; *Mishkat* (trans. Robson), II, 1306; transmitted by both Bukhārī and Muslim. Cf. also Balādhuri, *Ansāb*, I, 562.

1204. Addition from Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, II/2, 36, who states that this incident happened on Thursday when the Messenger of God's pain became severe. Balādhuri, and Tabrizi: An inkpot and a shoulder blade.

1205. Ibn Sa'd, and Tabrizi: After that.

1206. Balādhuri: They said, "Do you see him talking nonsense?" and [started] wrangling among themselves. The Messenger of God became grieved and annoyed and asked them to leave.

1207. The Prophet was not happy with 'Umar because he did not cooperate with him when he asked for pen and paper. See Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, II/2, 36–38; Buhl, *Leben*, 353; Momen, *Shi'i Islam*, 15–16. The Shi'is claim that the Prophet wanted to make a written testament favoring 'Ali's succession as head of the nascent Islamic state but that 'Umar foiled his plan. See Mirzā, *al-Balāgh*, I, 254–86.

[1806]

him for an explanation." [When] they went back, repeating [those remarks] to him, he replied, "Leave me [alone], the state I am in is better than that for which you are calling me." He charged them with three things: "Expel the polytheists from the Arabian Peninsula; give presents to the delegation[s] as I used to do."<sup>1208</sup> [Sa'īd b. Jubayr states that Ibn 'Abbās] became silent about the third [command] intentionally, or that he said that he had forgotten it.

Abū Kurayb<sup>1209</sup>—Yahyā b. Ādam<sup>1210</sup>—Ibn 'Uyaynah<sup>1211</sup>—Sūlaymān al-Āḥwāl<sup>1212</sup>—Sa'īd b. Jubayr—Ibn 'Abbās: Thursday! [Al-Ṭabarī states:] Then he narrated a report like that of Āḥmad b. Hammād [mentioned above], except that he said, "It did not befit them to dispute with a prophet."

Abū Kurayb and Ṣalīḥ b. Sammāl—Wakī‘—Mālik b. Migh-wal—Talhah b. Muṣarrif<sup>1213</sup>—Sa'īd b. Jubayr—Ibn 'Abbās: Thursday, what a Thursday! [Sa'īd b. Jubayr states:] Then I looked at Ibn 'Abbās' tears flowing on his cheeks as if they were a chain of pearls, [saying:] The Messenger of God said, "Bring me a tablet (*lawḥ*) and an inkpot (*dawāt*), or a plank of the shoulder blade (*katīf*) and an inkpot, so that I can write for you a document, after which you will not go astray." Some [people] said that the Messenger of God was talking deliriously.

Āḥmad b. 'Abd al-Rahmān b. Wahb—his uncle 'Abdallāh b. Wahb—Yūnus—al-Zuhri—'Abdallāh b. Ka'b b. Mālik<sup>1214</sup>—Ibn 'Abbās: 'Alī b. Abī Ṭālib went out from the Messenger of God during his illness in which he died. The people asked him, "O Abū Ḥasan, how did the Messenger of God wake up?" "By the grace of God he woke up [and he had] recovered [from his illness]," he replied. Al-'Abbās b. 'Abd al-Muṭṭalib held him by his hand and said, "Don't you see<sup>1215</sup> that in three days you will be 'a slave [to be punished with] the club' ('abd al-'aṣā)?"<sup>1216</sup> It seems to me that the Messenger of God will die from this sickness of his,

1807

<sup>1208</sup>. This was the Messenger of God's practice. See Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, I/2, 38ff.

<sup>1209</sup>. Ibn Hajar, *Tahdhīb*, XII, 212.

<sup>1210</sup>. Died in 203/818–19. *Ibid.*, XI, 175–76.

<sup>1211</sup>. Sufyān b. 'Uyaynah died in 198/813–14. *Ibid.*, IV, 117–22.

<sup>1212</sup>. *Ibid.*, IV, 188.

<sup>1213</sup>. Died ca. 112/730–31. *Ibid.*, V, 25–26.

<sup>1214</sup>. Died ca. 98/716–17. *Ibid.*, V, 369.

<sup>1215</sup>. Ibn Ishaq: By God, O 'Ali, you will be in . . . .

<sup>1216</sup>. It is an idiom used contemptuously for a despicable person. Maydāni, *Amthāl*, II, 19–20.

for I know [how] the faces of 'Abd al-Muṭṭalib's sons look at the time of death. So return<sup>1217</sup> to the Messenger of God, and ask him who will get this authority.<sup>1218</sup> If it is to be with us, we shall know that, if it is to be with others, he<sup>1219</sup> will command accordingly and entrust [that person] with us." 'Alī replied, "By God, if we asked the Messenger of God and he denied it to us, the people will never give it to us. By God, I<sup>1220</sup> will never ask the Messenger of God."<sup>1221</sup>

Ibn Humayd—Salamah—Muhammad b. Ishāq—al-Zuhri—'Abdallāh b. Ka'b b. Mālik<sup>1222</sup>—'Abdallāh b. 'Abbās: That day 'Alī b. Abī Ṭālib went out from the Messenger of God. [Al-Ṭabarī states:] Ibn Humayd mentioned a report similar to the above report except that in his account he stated [al-'Abbās' saying]: "I swear by God that I recognized death in the Messenger of God's face as I used to recognize it in the faces of 'Abd al-Muṭṭalib's sons. So let us go to the Messenger of God; if this authority is to be with us, we shall know it, and if it is to be with others, we will ask [the Prophet] so that he will enjoin the people to treat us well." [Ibn Humayd] also added in that account: The Messenger of God died that day when the heat intensified at noon.<sup>1223</sup>

Sa'id b. Yaḥyā al-Umawī<sup>1224</sup>—his father<sup>1225</sup>—'Urwah—'A'i-shah: The Messenger of God said to us, "Pour seven skins of

<sup>1217.</sup> So let us go: Ibn Sa'd (*Tabaqāt*, II/2, 38), and Balādhurī (*Ansāb*, I, 565). See also Lings, *Muhammad*, 341.

<sup>1218.</sup> Ibn Sa'd adds: After him.

<sup>1219.</sup> Ibn Sa'd: We will speak to him, so that he will entrust [that person] with us.

<sup>1220.</sup> Ibn Sa'd: We. Balādhurī, *Ansāb*, I, 583, states on the authority of Jābir b. 'Abdallāh that 'Abbās wanted to give his oath of allegiance to 'Alī, but the latter seemed to be overconfident that nobody would usurp what he considered to be his right. The commentator of *Nahj al-balāghah*, II, 51–52, reports that after Abū Bakr was elected in the *Saqifah*, attempts were made to bribe 'Abbās so that he would not support 'Alī's claim.

<sup>1221.</sup> 'Abbās is reported to have warned 'Alī against participating in the *Shūrā* so that he could maintain his freedom of action, but 'Umar's provisions for the council precluded such a course of action. Here again, 'Abbās reminded 'Alī of what he had told him during the Prophet's illness. See Tabarī, I, 2780; Ibn Shabbah, *Ta'rikh*, III, 925–26.

<sup>1222.</sup> Died ca. 97/715–16. Ibn Ḥajar, *Tahdhīb*, V, 369.

<sup>1223.</sup> See Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, II/2, 38–39, for other reports.

<sup>1224.</sup> Died ca. 249/863. Ibn Ḥajar, *Tahdhīb*, IV, 97–98.

<sup>1225.</sup> Yaḥyā b. Sa'id b. Abān b. Sa'id b. al-'Āṣ al-Umawī died in 194/809–10. *Ibid.*, XI, 213–14.

water from seven different wells over me so that I may go out to the people and instruct them.”<sup>1226</sup>

Muhammad—Muhammad b. Ja’far—‘Urwah—‘Ā’ishah: We poured seven skins [of water] over him and he found some relief. He went out, prayed with the people, addressed them and sought God’s forgiveness for the martyrs of Uhud. Then he urged them to take care of the *Anṣār*, saying, “Now then: O community of the Emigrants, you will go on increasing, but the *Anṣār* will not grow [greater in size] than what they are today. They are my intimates with whom I sought shelter, so honor their nobles and overlook those [of them] who do ill.”<sup>1227</sup> He [added], saying, “One of God’s servants has been given the choice between this world and that which is with God, and he has chosen the latter.” No one except Abū Bakr perceived that the Prophet meant himself, so he cried. The Prophet said to him, “Gently, O Abū Bakr!” [Then addressing the people he said:] “Shut these doors that open on to the mosque except the door of Abū Bakr, for I know no one who is a better friend to me with regard to generosity than he.”

‘Amr b. ‘Alī<sup>1228</sup>—Yahyā b. Sa’id al-Qaṭṭān<sup>1229</sup>—Sufyān<sup>1230</sup>—Müsā b. Abī ‘Ā’ishah—‘Ubaydallāh b. ‘Abdallāh b. ‘Utbah—‘Ā’ishah: We forced the Messenger of God to take medicine during his illness. He said not to force him, but we said that the sick man does not like medicine. After he recovered, he said [addressing us, the women], “Let no one remain in the house until [every one of you] has been forced to take this medicine except al-‘Abbās, for he did not agree with you what you did.”

Ibn Ḥumayd—Salamah—Ibn Ishāq (in an account we have quoted from him [see Ṭabarī, above, I, 1800]) on the authority of al-Zuhri—‘Ubaydallāh b. ‘Abdallāh—‘Ā’ishah: Then the Messenger of God came down [from the pulpit], entered his house and the pain came, all of it, until he was exhausted. Some of his wives, Umm Salamah, Maymūnah, and some of the wives of the Muslims, among whom was Asmā’ b. ‘Umays, gathered round

[1809]

1226. Ibn Sa’d, *Tabaqāt*, II/2, 42.

1227. Ibid., 43–44; Tabrizi, *Mishkāt*, III, 275–76; *Mishkat* (trans. Robson), II, 1368–69; transmitted by Bukhāri.

1228. Died in 249/863. Ibn Hajar, *Tahdhīb*, VIII, 80–82.

1229. Died in 198/813–14. Ibid., XI, 216–20.

1230. Sufyān b. Sa’id al-Thawrī died in 161/777–78. Ibid., IV, 111–15.

him, while his uncle al-'Abbās b. 'Abd al-Muṭṭalib was with him. They agreed to force him to take medicine. Al-'Abbās said, "Let me force him," and [the Messenger of God] was forced.<sup>1231</sup> After the Messenger of God recovered he asked who had done that with him. They said that it was his uncle al-'Abbās. Pointing in the direction of Abyssinia, the Prophet said, "This is a medicine brought by women from that country." When he asked why they had done it, al-'Abbās replied, "O Messenger of God, we were afraid that you might have pleurisy (*dhāt al-janb*)."<sup>1232</sup> He replied, "That is a disease with which God would not afflict me. Let no one remain in the house until he is forced to take this medicine except my uncle." Although Maymūnah had fasted, she was forced to take it because of the Messenger of God's oath as a retribution for what they had done [to him].<sup>1233</sup>

Ibn Ḥumayd—Salamah—Muhammad b. Ishaq—Muhammad b. Ja'far b. al-Zubayr<sup>1234</sup>—Urwah—Ā'ishah: When they said that they were afraid that he might have pleurisy, he said, "It is from Satan and God would not inflict it on me."

[1810]

Hishām b. Muḥammad—Abū Mikhnaf—al-Ṣaq'ab b. Zuhayr—the jurists of al-Hijāz: When the Messenger of God's illness from which he died grew severe until he became unconscious, all of his family (i.e., his wives, his daughter [Fātimah], al-'Abbās b. 'Abd al-Muṭṭalib and 'Ali b. Abī Ṭālib) gathered [round him]. Asmā' bt. 'Umays said, "This pain of his is nothing but pleurisy, so force him to take medicine." We did so, and, after he had recovered, he inquired who had done that to him. When they replied that [it was] Asmā' bt. 'Umays who thought that he might have pleurisy, he said, "May God protect me from such an affliction! I am more honorable to Him than [that I should have] such [a disease]."

Ibn Ḥumayd—Salamah—Muhammad b. Ishaq—Sa'īd b. 'Ubayd al-Sabbāq<sup>1235</sup>—Muhammad b. Usāmah b. Zayd<sup>1236</sup>—his father Usāmah b. Zayd: When the Messenger of God's illness became

1231. Ibn Ishaq: And they forced him.

1232. Lane, Lexicon, s.v. *j-n-b*.

1233. Addition from Ibn Ishaq. Cf. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, II/2, 31–32; Balādhuri, *Ansāb*, I, 545–46; Buhl, *Leben*, 353.

1234. Died between 110/728–29 and 120/738. Ibn Hajar, *Tahdhīb*, IX, 93.

1235. Ibid., IV, 61.

1236. Ibid., IX, 35.

severe, I and the people came down [from where we were encamped] to Medina and went<sup>1237</sup> to the Messenger of God. As he was tongue-tied, he began to lift his hand toward heaven and put it down upon me, so I understood that he was praying for me.

Ibn Ḥumayd—Salamah—Ibn Ishāq—al-Zuhri—‘Ubaydallāh b. ‘Abdallāh—‘Ā’ishah: Very often I used to hear the Messenger of God say, “God never takes a prophet’s life without giving him the choice.”<sup>1238</sup>

Abū Kurayb—Yūnus b. Bukayr<sup>1239</sup>—Yūnus b. ‘Amr<sup>1240</sup>—his father [Abū Ishāq ‘Amr al-Sabī’ī]—al-Arqam b. Shurahbil:<sup>1241</sup> I asked Ibn ‘Abbās, “Did the Messenger of God make a will?” “No,” he replied. I asked, “How was that?” He replied: The Messenger of God asked for ‘Alī, but ‘Ā’ishah said, “[I wish] you had asked for Abū Bakr!” Ḥafṣah said, “[I wish] you had asked for ‘Umar!” So all of them gathered before the Messenger of God. He asked them to disperse, for he would call them if there should be any need, and they went away. [At another time] the Messenger of God asked whether the time for prayer had drawn close. They said, Yes. When he ordered that Abū Bakr should lead the people in prayer ‘Ā’ishah said, “He is a delicate man, so order ‘Umar.” He did that,<sup>1242</sup> but ‘Umar replied, “I will not lead while Abū Bakr is present.” So Abū Bakr led [them in prayer]. The Messenger of God got some relief [from the pain], so he went out [to the mosque]. When Abū Bakr heard his movement, he stepped backward, so the Messenger of God pulled at his clothes asking him to stand in his place. He sat down [near Abū Bakr] and recited from where Abū Bakr had left off.

[1811]

1237. Ibn Ishāq: And I went. This was on Sunday. For details see Wāqidī, *Magħażi*, III, 1119–20; Ibn Sa’d, *Tabaqāt*, II/1, 137; II/2, 41.

1238. Ibn Ishāq adds: When the Messenger of God was on the point of death, the last word I heard him saying was, “[Nay], rather the Exalted Companion is from paradise.” I said, “Then, by God, he is not choosing us.” I knew that he used to tell us, “A prophet does not die until he has been given the choice.” For further details, see Ibn Sa’d, *Tabaqāt*, II/2, 27–28.

1239. He is one of the main transmitters of Ibn Ishāq’s *Sīrah* and died in 199/814–15. Ibn Ḥajar, *Tahdhīb*, XI, 434–36; Duri, *Rise*, 33n., 36.

1240. Died ca. 158/774–75. Ibn Ḥajar, *Tahdhīb*, XI, 433–34.

1241. *Ibid.*, I, 198–99.

1242. Some traditions state that ‘Umar led the people in prayer, but when the Messenger of God heard his voice he expressed his disapproval and asked for Abū Bakr. See Ibn Sa’d, *Tabaqāt*, II/2, 21–22; Balādhuri, *Ansāb*, I, 554–55.

Ibn Wāki'—his father<sup>1243</sup>—al-A'mash<sup>1244</sup>—Abū Hishām al-Rifā'i—Abū Mu'awiyah and Wāki'—al-A'mash; and 'Isā b. 'Uthmān b. 'Isā<sup>1245</sup>—al-A'mash—Ibrāhīm—al-Aswad—'Ā'ishah: During the Messenger of God's illness during which he died, a call for prayer was given. He ordered that Abū Bakr should lead the people in prayer. I said, "Abū Bakr is a tender-hearted man. When he will stand in your place, he might not be able to bear [the idea of taking your place]."<sup>1246</sup> He repeated his order nevertheless. When I repeated my objection,<sup>1247</sup> he became angry and said, "You are like Joseph's women companions (*ṣawāḥib*)."<sup>1248</sup> Ibn Wāki' states: "[You are like] Joseph's women companions (*ṣawāḥibāt*); order Abū Bakr to lead the people in prayer." Then, he came out while he was being supported between two men,<sup>1249</sup> and his feet were dragging on the ground. Abū Bakr stepped backward when the Prophet approached him. The Messenger of God motioned him to stand in his place, while he sat down and prayed sitting at the side of Abū Bakr. Abū Bakr followed the Prophet in his prayer, and the people followed Abū Bakr in their prayers. [Al-Ṭabarī]: The [exact] words in [the above account] are that of 'Isā b. 'Uthmān.

[1812] Al-Wāqīdī: I asked Ibn Abī Sabrah,<sup>1249</sup> "How many times did

1243. Wāki' b. al-Jarrāḥ died ca. 196/811–12. Ibn Ḥajar, *Tahdhīb*, XI, 123–31.

1244. *Ibid.*, XI, 123.

1245. Died in 251/865. *Ibid.*, VIII, 220.

1246. In another version, 'Ā'ishah said: Abū Bakr is a tender-hearted man who weeps a lot when he recites the Qur'ān, so order 'Umar to lead the people in prayer! Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, II/2, 18. In a different version reported by Balādhūrī, *Anṣāb*, I, 554, it was Abū Bakr himself who suggested that let 'Umar lead the prayer. See also Lings, *Muhammad*, 339.

1247. Another version states: The reason for my objection was that the people might not like a person taking the Prophet's place. I felt that nobody would take his place without being regarded by the people as a portent of evil. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, II/2, 18, 20.

1248. According to *ibid.*, II/2, 19–20, they were either 'Abbās and 'Ali or al-Fadl b. 'Abbās and Thawbān. All the reports that Abū Bakr was asked by the Prophet during his last illness to lead the prayer are tendentious and inconsistent. They are used by the Sunnis to argue the succession in favor of Abū Bakr (see n. 1290 below). For the Shi'i refutation see al-Qāḍī al-Nu'mān, *al-Urijzah*, 73–76, 267–68. Although the phrase "Joseph's women companions" is in the plural, it is meant to be in the singular, that is, for 'Ā'ishah. She is compared to the Egyptian official's wife who tried to seduce Joseph. See Mirzā, *al-Balāgh*, I, 235–54, where older sources are given.

1249. Abū Bakr b. 'Abdallāh b. Abī Sabrah: Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, II/2, 23. He died in 162/778–79. Ibn Ḥajar, *Tahdhīb*, XII, 27–28.

Abū Bakr lead the prayers?" "Seventeen times," he replied. I asked, "Who informed you?" "Ayyūb b. 'Abd al-Rahmān b. Abī Sa'ṣa'ah,<sup>1250</sup> on the authority of a man among the companions of the Prophet," he replied.

Al-Wāqidī—Ibn Abī Sabrah—'Abd al-Majīd b. Suhayl.<sup>1251</sup>—Ikrimah: Abū Bakr led the prayers for three days.<sup>1252</sup>

Muhammad b. 'Abdallāh b. 'Abd al-Hakam<sup>1253</sup>—Shu'ayb b. al-Layth<sup>1254</sup>—al-Layth<sup>1255</sup>—Yazid b. al-Hād<sup>1256</sup>—Mūsā b. Sarjis<sup>1257</sup>—al-Qāsim<sup>1258</sup>—'Ā'ishah: Before the Messenger of God died, I saw a bowl of water near him. He used to put his hand in the bowl and then wipe his face with it, saying, "O my Lord, help me [to overcome] the severity of the agony of death (*sakrat al-mawt*)."

Muhammad b. Khalaf al-'Asqalānī<sup>1259</sup>—Ādam<sup>1260</sup>—al-Layth b. Sa'd—Ibn al-Hād—Mūsā b. Sarjis—al-Qāsim b. Muhammad—'Ā'ishah: Before the Messenger of God died I saw . . . [al-Tabarī:] and narrated the same [aforecited] report, except that he stated: The agonies of death (*sakarāt al-mawt*).<sup>1261</sup>

Ibn Ḥumayd—Salamah—Ibn Ishāq—al-Zuhri—Anas b. Mālik: On Monday, the day on which the Messenger of God died,<sup>1262</sup> he went out [of his house] to the people [in the mosque] while they were praying the morning prayer. He lifted the curtain, opened the door, came out, and stood at 'Ā'ishah's door.<sup>1263</sup> The Muslims

[1813]

1250. On the authority of 'Abbād b. Tamim: Addition in Ibn Sa'd.

1251. Ibn Hajar, *Tahdhīb*, VI, 380–81: 'Abd al-Majīd b. Sahl b. 'Abd al-Rahmān b. 'Awf[?].

1252. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, II/2, 23; Balādhuri, *Ansāb*, I, 556.

1253. Died in 268/881–82. Ibn Hajar, *Tahdhīb*, IX, 260–62.

1254. Died in 199/714–15. *Ibid.*, IV, 355.

1255. Layth b. Sa'd b. 'Abd al-Rahmān al-Fahmī died in 175/791–92. *Ibid.*, VIII, 459–65.

1256. Died in 139/756–57. *Ibid.*, XI, 339–40.

1257. *Ibid.*, X, 345.

1258. Al-Qāsim b. Muhammad b. Abī Bakr died between 101/719–20 and 112/730–31. *Ibid.*, VII, 333–35.

1259. Died in 260/873–74. *Ibid.*, IX, 149.

1260. Ādam b. Abī Iyās died ca. 220/835. *Ibid.*, I, 196.

1261. *Sakarāt* is a plural of *sakrah*. See Lane, *Lexicon*, s.v. *s-k-r*.

1262. Ibn Ishāq: The day on which God took the Messenger of God.

1263. Ibn Sa'd's report (*Tabaqāt*, II/2, 18, 19) states that the Messenger of God lifted the curtain of his room and stood looking at us. His face [looked] like a leaf of a book (*mushaf*). He then smiled.

were almost distracted from their prayers with joy when they saw the Messenger of God. He motioned [to them]<sup>1264</sup> with his hand<sup>1265</sup> to continue their prayers, and smiled with joy when he saw their appearance in their prayers. I had never seen the Messenger of God in better shape before. Then he returned, and the people departed thinking that the Messenger of God had recovered from his illness. Abū Bakr [also] went back to his family in al-Sunh.

Ibn Humayd—Salamah—Ibn Ishāq—Abū Bakr b. 'Abdallāh<sup>1266</sup> b. Abī Mulaykah: On Monday, the Messenger of God came out to morning prayer with his head wrapped around while Abū Bakr was leading the people in prayer. When the Messenger of God came out, the people were delighted in looking at him. Abū Bakr knew that the people would not [be distracted from prayer] except for the Messenger of God, so he withdrew from his place. The Messenger of God pushed him in the back telling him to lead the prayer. He sat on the right side of Abū Bakr and prayed while seated. After he had completed the prayer, he turned to the people and spoke to them, raising his voice until it could be heard from outside, saying, "O people, the fire has been kindled, and dissension (*fītan*) has set in like segments of a dark night. By God, you cannot lay anything to my charge. I did not make anything lawful for you except what was made lawful by the Qur'ān. I did not make anything unlawful for you except what was forbidden by the Qur'ān." After he had finished his speech, Abū Bakr said to him, "O Prophet of God, I see that this morning, with the grace of God and His bounty, [you have recovered] as we desire. Today is the day of Bint Khārijah.<sup>1267</sup> May I go to her?"<sup>1268</sup> Then the Messenger of God went to [his house] and Abū Bakr left for his family in Sunh.

[1814]

Ibn Humayd—Salamah—Ibn Ishāq—Ya'qūb b. 'Utbah—al-Zuhri—'Urwah—'Ā'ishah: That day, after the Messenger of God

<sup>1264.</sup> Addition from Ibn Ishāq.

<sup>1265.</sup> With his hand: Omitted from Ibn Ishāq.

<sup>1266.</sup> 'Ubaydallāh: Ibn Hajar, *Tahdhīb*, XII, 32.

<sup>1267.</sup> She was from Balhārith of al-Khazraj. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, II/2, 17.

<sup>1268.</sup> "Yes," [the Messenger of God] replied: Addition in Hisch. and Ibn Ishāq. See also Balādhuri, *Ansāb*, I, 558–59.

had gone to the mosque, he returned<sup>1269</sup> and lay down in my lap. A man from the family of Abū Bakr<sup>1270</sup> came to me, and he had a fresh *siwāk* in his hand. The Messenger of God looked at it in such a way that I knew [that] he wanted it.<sup>1271</sup> I took it, chewed it until I had softened it and gave it to him. He rubbed his teeth with it more energetically than I had [ever]<sup>1272</sup> seen him doing it before. Then he put it down, and I found him getting heavy in my lap. When I looked into his face his eyes were fixed while he was saying, "Nay, the most Exalted Companion is that of paradise." I said, "By Him who sent you with the truth, you were given the choice, and you have chosen," and he died.<sup>1273</sup>

Ibn Ḥumayd—Salamah—Muhammad b. Ishāq—Yahyā b. 'Abbād b. al-Zubayr<sup>1274</sup>—his father 'Abbād:<sup>1275</sup> I heard 'Ā'ishah saying, "The Messenger of God died on my bosom during my turn, and I did not wrong anyone in regard to him."<sup>1276</sup> It was because of my ignorance and youthfulness that the Messenger of God died while he was in my lap. Then I laid his head on a pillow and got up beating my chest and slapping my face along with the women.

### *An Account of the Day on Which the Messenger of God Died and His Age*

[1815]

Abū Ja'far [al-Ṭabarī]: There is no disagreement among those knowledgeable about the day on which the Messenger of God died. [They agree that] it was Monday in the month of Rabi' I. They disagree, however, as to which Monday [it was that] he died. [An account of what] some of them said [is as follows].

1269. To me: Addition in Hisch. and Ibn Ishāq. And entered my room: Addition in Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, II/2, 30.

1270. In a different version, Ibn Sa'd, loc. cit., states that he was 'Ā'ishah's brother 'Abd al-Rahmān.

1271. I asked, "O Messenger of God, do you want me to give it to you?" "Yes," he replied: Addition in Hisch. and Ibn Ishāq.

1272. Addition from Ibn Ishāq. Lings, *Muhammad*, 341.

1273. Balādhuri, *Anṣāb*, I, 548.

1274. Ibn Hajar, *Tahdhib*, XI, 234–35.

1275. 'Abbād b. 'Abdallāh b. al-Zubayr. *Ibid.*, V, 98.

1276. Some traditions state that the Messenger of God died on 'Ali's bosom. See Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, II/2, 30, 49–51.

Hishām b. Muhammad b. al-Sā'ib—Abū Mikhnaf—al-Šaq'ab b. Zuhayr—the jurists of al-Hijāz: The Messenger of God died at noon on Monday, the second of Rabi' I. The oath of allegiance was given to Abū Bakr on Monday, the very day on which the Prophet died.

Al-Wāqidī: [The Messenger of God] died on Monday, the twelfth of Rabi' I.<sup>1277</sup> He was buried the following day around midday, after the sun had declined, and this day was Tuesday.<sup>1278</sup>

Abū Ja'far [al-Ṭabarī] The Messenger of God died while 'Umar was present and Abū Bakr was in al-Sunh.<sup>1279</sup>

Ibn Humayd—Salamah—Ibn Ishāq—al-Zuhri—Sa'īd b. al-Musayyib<sup>1280</sup>—Abū Hurayrah: When the Messenger of God died, 'Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb stood up saying, "Some of the hypocrites allege that the Messenger of God is dead. By God, he is not dead, but has gone to his Lord as Moses b. 'Imrān went and remained hidden from his people for forty days. Moses returned after it was said that he had died. By God, the Messenger of God will [also] return<sup>1281</sup> and will cut off the hands and feet of those who allege that he is dead."

[1816]

When the news [of the Prophet's death] reached Abū Bakr, he came and dismounted near the door of the mosque [where] 'Umar was speaking to the people. He paid no attention to anything and went [straight] to the Messenger of God in 'Ā'ishah's house where he was lying in a corner covered by a striped garment of the Yemeni fabric. Abū Bakr went close [to the Prophet], uncovered his face, kissed him, then said, "With my father may you be ransomed, and with my mother! Indeed, you have tasted the death which God had decreed for you. No [other] death will ever overtake you." Then he replaced the cloth on [the Prophet's] face and went out as 'Umar was speaking to the people. He said, "Gently, O 'Umar, [and] be silent!" 'Umar refused [to be silent] and kept on speaking. When Abū Bakr saw that he would not listen, he went forward to the people [speaking]. When they heard his

<sup>1277</sup>. For different reports, see *Ibid.*, II/2, 57–58; *Balādhuri*, *Ansāb*, I, 568.

<sup>1278</sup>. Some reports state that he was buried on Wednesday. Cf. *Ibn Sa'd*, *Tabaqāt*, II/2, 58; *Balādhuri*, *Ansāb*, I, 568.

<sup>1279</sup>. *Ibn Sa'd*, *Tabaqāt*, II/2, 52–53.

<sup>1280</sup>. Died ca. 93/711–12. *Ibn Hajar*, *Tahdhīb*, IV, 84–88.

<sup>1281</sup>. As Moses returned: Addition in *Hisch.* and *Ibn Ishāq*.

words, they came to him and left 'Umar. After praising God and extolling Him, he said, "O people, those who worshipped Muḥammad, [must know that] Muḥammad is dead; those who worshipped God, [must know that] God is alive [and] immortal." He then recited the verse: "Muḥammad is only a messenger; and many a messenger has gone before him. So if he dies or is killed, will you turn back on your heels? He who turns back on his heels will do no harm to God, and God will reward the grateful."<sup>1282</sup> By God, it was as if the people did not know that this verse was revealed to the Messenger of God until Abū Bakr recited it that day. The people took it from him, and it was [constantly] in their mouths. 'Umar said, "By God, as soon as I heard Abū Bakr recite it, my legs betrayed me so that I fell to the ground, and my legs would not bear me. I knew that the Messenger of God had indeed died."<sup>1283</sup>

[1817]

Ibn Ḥumayd—Jarīr<sup>1284</sup>—Mughīrah<sup>1285</sup>—Abū Ma'shar Ziyād b. Kulayb<sup>1286</sup>—Abū Ayyūb—Ibrāhīm: When the Messenger of God died, Abū Bakr was not present, and he came after three [hours].<sup>1287</sup> No one dared to uncover the Messenger of God's face until his exterior turned ashen. [When] Abū Bakr [came, he] uncovered [the Prophet's] face, kissed [his forehead] between his two eyes, and said, "With my father may you be ransomed, and with my mother! How good you were while alive, and how good you are when you are dead!" Then he went out, praised God and extolled Him, saying, "Whoever worships God, God is alive and immortal; whoever worships Muḥammad, Muḥammad is dead." Then he recited: "Muḥammad is only a messenger; and many a messenger has gone before him. So if he dies or is killed, will you turn back on your heels? He who turns back on his heels will do no harm to God, and God will reward the grateful."<sup>1288</sup> 'Umar was telling [the people that] the Prophet was not dead and he was

1282. Qur'ān 3:144.

1283. Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqqāt*, II/2, 54–55. See also *Balādhurī*, *Ansāb*, I, 563, 565–66.1284. Jarīr b. 'Abd al-Ḥamīd al-Dabbi died in 188/804. Ibn Ḥajar, *Tahdhīb*, II, 75–77.1285. Mughīrah b. Miqsam al-Dabbi died ca. 134/751–52. *Ibid.*, X, 269–71.1286. Died ca. 120/738. *Ibid.*, III, 382.1287. The specification of number (*tamyīz*) is missing. It could be three hours, three prayers, or three deputations. See 'Abd al-Maqṣūd, *al-Saqīfah*, 16.

1288. Qur'ān 3:144.

threatening to kill [those who maintained that the Prophet was dead].

The *Anṣār* gathered in a roofed building (*saqifah*)<sup>1289</sup> of the Banū Sa'īdah to render their oath of allegiance to Sa'd b. 'Ubādah. This news reached Abū Bakr, so he came to them with 'Umar and Abū 'Ubaydah b. al-Jarrāh, asking [them] why [they had gathered]. They replied, "Let us have a ruler (*amīr*) from us and another from you." Abū Bakr said, "The rulers (*umārā'*) will be from us, and the viziers (*wuzarā'*) from you." Abū Bakr then added, "I am pleased [to offer] you one of these two men: 'Umar or Abū 'Ubaydah. Some people came to the Prophet asking him to send a trustworthy man with them. The Messenger of God said that he would send a truly trustworthy man with them, and he sent Abū 'Ubaydah b. al-Jarrāh. I am pleased [to offer] you Abū 'Ubaydah." 'Umar stood up saying, "Who among you would be agreeable to leave Abū Bakr whom the Prophet gave precedence?"<sup>1290</sup> and he gave him the oath of allegiance. The people followed ['Umar]. The *Anṣār* said, or some of them said, "We will not give the oath of allegiance [to anyone] except 'Ali."

Ibn Ḥumayd—Jarir—Mughirah—Ziyād b. Kulayb: 'Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb came to the house of 'Ali. Talḥah, al-Zubayr, and some of the *Muhājirūn* were [also] in the house [with 'Ali]. 'Umar cried out, "By God, either you come out to render the oath of allegiance [to

1289. A rectangular building of one storey consisting merely of a number of pillars with a clay roof, but open at all sides. It seems to have been the clan's gathering place. Sergeant, "Translation," 10.

Abū Bakr's election took place in this building, hence the event surrounding his election is named "The Saqifah" after it. Following the Prophet's death, the *Anṣār*, who had grown resentful of the growing influence of the Quraysh, met there to deliberate on the critical leadership crisis that had arisen. The common view among the early Muslim historians is that the crisis was averted by the resolute action of three prominent *Muhājirūn*: Abū Bakr, 'Umar, and Abū 'Ubaydah, and that their success was facilitated by the jealousies among the *Anṣār*. The sources, as pointed out by Lammens, "Triumvirate," also suggest an alliance between those three *Muhājirūn*. Moreover, all of them, being close advisers to the Prophet, carried considerable influence and prestige in the emerging Islamic polity. For an analysis of the early sources and an intelligent reconstruction of the events, see Jafri, *Origins*, 27–57. Shoufani, *al-Riddah*, 48–70, who has reexamined the earlier sources, states that Abū Bakr was elected mainly because he was supported by the newly converted Meccan aristocracy. See also Rodinson, *Mahomet*, 327–28; Momen, *Shi'i Islam*, 18–20.

1290. The reference is to Abū Bakr's leading the prayer. See n. 1248 above.

Abū Bakr], or I will set the house on fire." Al-Zubayr came out with his sword drawn. As he stumbled [upon something], the sword fell from his hand, so they jumped over him and seized him.<sup>1291</sup>

Zakariyyā' b. Yahyā al-Ḍarīr—Abū 'Awānah<sup>1292</sup>—Dāwūd b. 'Abdallāh al-Awdī<sup>1293</sup>—Humayd b. 'Abd al-Rahmān al-Ḥimyarī:<sup>1294</sup> When the Messenger of God died, Abū Bakr was in a detached part of Medina. He came, uncovered [the Prophet's] face, and kissed him, saying, "May my father and mother be your ransom! How good you are both living and dead! [I swear] by the Lord of the Ka'bah that Muḥammad is dead." Then he went to the pulpit and found 'Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb standing [there], threatening the people and saying, "The Messenger of God is alive and not dead. He will [return], go out after those who spread lies about him, cut off their hands and strike their necks and crucify them." Abū Bakr asked him to be silent, but he refused to listen, so Abū Bakr spoke, saying that God had revealed to His Prophet: "Verily, you will die, and so will they. Then on the Day of Resurrection you will dispute before your Lord."<sup>1295</sup> [Then] he said: "Muḥammad is only a messenger, and many a messenger has gone before him. So if he dies or is killed, will you turn back on your heels? He who turns back on his heels will do no harm to God, and God will reward the grateful."<sup>1296</sup> He who [formerly] worshiped Muḥammad, [then] the deity whom he worshiped is dead. He who [formerly] worshiped God, Who has no associate, [then] God is alive [and] immortal." Some people from among the companions of Muḥammad, whose

[1819]

<sup>1291</sup>. Although the timing of the events is not clear, it seems that 'Ali and his group came to know about the *Saqifah* after what had happened there. At this point, his supporters gathered in Fātimah's house. Abū Bakr and 'Umar, fully aware of 'Ali's claims and fearing a serious threat from his supporters, summoned him to the mosque to swear the oath of allegiance. 'Ali refused, and so the house was surrounded by an armed band led by Abū Bakr and 'Umar, who threatened to set it on fire if 'Ali and his supporters refused to come out and swear allegiance to Abū Bakr. The scene grew violent and Fātimah was furious. For details, see Bal-ādhurī, *Anṣāb*, I, 582–86; Ya'qūbī, *Ta'rikh*, II, 116; (Pseudo-) Ibn Qutaybah, *al-Imāmah*, I, 19–20; Tabarsī, *Iḥtijāj*, I, 108–9; *Nahj al-balāghah*, II, 21, 45, 46, 47, 50, 56; Jafri, *Origins*, 50–51; Momen, *Shi'i Islam*, 19.

<sup>1292</sup>. Died ca. 176/792–93. Ibn Hajar, *Tahdhīb*, XI, 116–20.

<sup>1293</sup>. *Ibid.*, III, 191.

<sup>1294</sup>. *Ibid.*, III, 46.

<sup>1295</sup>. Qur'ān 39:31–32.

<sup>1296</sup>. *Ibid.*, 3:144.

time we had reached, affirmed that they did not know that those two verses were revealed until Abū Bakr recited them that day.

Then, a man suddenly came running and said, "Listen to me, the *Anṣār* have gathered in a roofed building (*zullah*)<sup>1297</sup> of the Banū Sā'īdah to give their oath of allegiance to one of their men. They say: Let us have a ruler from us and let Quraysh have another from them." Abū Bakr and 'Umar rushed away (as though each of them led the other) until they came to them. 'Umar wanted to speak but Abū Bakr stopped him so he said, "I will not disobey the Prophet's successor (*khalifah*) twice in a day." Abū Bakr spoke and did not leave out anything that was either revealed about the *Anṣār* or was said by the Messenger of God with regard to their fine qualities. He said, "You know that the Messenger of God said, 'If the people took one way and the *Anṣār* another, I would take *Anṣār*'s path.' O Sa'd, you know that the Messenger of God had said, while you were sitting, that Quraysh were the masters of this authority. The righteous follow their kind, and the wicked follow theirs." Sa'd replied, "You have spoken the truth. We are the viziers and you are the rulers."<sup>1298</sup> 'Umar said, "Stretch out your hand, O Abū Bakr, so that I may give you the oath of allegiance." Abū Bakr replied, "Nay, rather you, O 'Umar. You are stronger than I [to bear the responsibility]."<sup>1299</sup> 'Umar was indeed the stronger of the two. Each of them wanted the other to stretch his hand so that he could strike the bargain with him.<sup>1299</sup> 'Umar stretched Abū Bakr's hand saying, "My power is for you with your power," and the people gave their oath of allegiance. They demanded confirmation of the oath, but 'Ali and al-Zubayr stayed away. Al-Zubayr drew his sword (from the scabbard), saying, "I will not put it back until the oath of allegiance is rendered to 'Ali." [When] this news reached Abū Bakr and 'Umar, the latter said, "Hit him with a stone and seize the

[1820]

<sup>1297</sup>. Literally, it means a thing which covers or protects one overhead as a building, or a cloud. It is a roofed building, like *Saqīfah* (see n. 1289 above). Lane, Lexicon, s.v. *z-l-l*. Cf. Fahd, *Divination*, 136.

<sup>1298</sup>. Hubāb b. al-Mundhir replied [to Abū Bakr's speech], "No. By God, we will never accept that. Let us have a ruler from us and another from you." Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, II/2, 55.

<sup>1299</sup>. *Daraba 'alā yadihi* is an idiom meaning to strike a bargain, or to ratify the sale. When two persons were bargaining, it was a custom for one of them to put his hand upon the other's in ratifying the bargain. Lane, Lexicon, s.v. *d-r-b*.

sword.'<sup>1300</sup> It is stated that 'Umar rushed [to the scene], brought them forcibly [while] telling them that they must give their oath of allegiance willingly, or unwillingly. So they rendered their oath of allegiance.

### *An Account of the Saqīfah*<sup>1301</sup>

'Alī b. Muslim<sup>1302</sup>—'Abbād b. 'Abbād<sup>1303</sup>—'Abbād b. Rāshid<sup>1304</sup>—al-Zuhri—'Ubaydallāh b. 'Abdallāh b. 'Utbah—Ibn 'Abbās:<sup>1305</sup> I used to teach 'Abd al-Rahmān b. 'Awf [how] to read the Qur'ān. 'Umar made the pilgrimage,<sup>1306</sup> and we did so with him. While I was waiting in a station (*manzil*) in Minā, 'Abd al-Rahmān b. 'Awf came to me saying, "Today I saw a man<sup>1307</sup> who came to the Commander of the Faithful [i.e., 'Umar] and said, 'I have heard so-and-so<sup>1308</sup> saying: If the Commander of the Faithful is dead I would give my oath of allegiance to so-and-so,'<sup>1309</sup> The Commander of the Faithful said that he would get up among the people that evening and warn them against the group of people who want to usurp their power." I said, "O Commander of the Faithful, the pilgrimage brings together the riffraff and the rabble; they are the ones who will dominate over your assem-

<sup>1300.</sup> Zubayr was in Fātimah's house. See n. 1291 above; Ya'qūbi, *Ta'rīkh*, II, 116; *Nahj al-balāghah*, II, 56–57.

<sup>1301.</sup> The following account of the *Saqīfah*, especially the speech of 'Umar, is analyzed and compared with other sources by Jafri, *Origins*, 29ff. Tabari also gives another account of the *Saqīfah* on the authority of Abū Mikhnaf, see I, 1837–45.

<sup>1302.</sup> Died in 253/867. Ibn Hajar, *Tahdhīb*, VII, 382–83.

<sup>1303.</sup> Ibid., V, 95–96.

<sup>1304.</sup> Ibid., V, 92–93.

<sup>1305.</sup> The account of *Saqīfah* is reported by Ibn Ishāq, *Sīrah*, IV, 307–11, on the following chain of authorities: 'Abdallāh b. Abi Bakr—al-Zuhri—'Ubaydallāh b. 'Abdallāh—Ibn 'Abbās.

<sup>1306.</sup> During the last pilgrimage made by 'Umar: Ibn Ishāq.

<sup>1307.</sup> Ibn Ishāq: I wish you could have seen a man.

<sup>1308.</sup> According to Balādhuri, *Ansāb*, I, 581, this was Zubayr, and the person whom he wanted to hail as caliph was 'Alī. Ibn Abi al-Hadid, on the other hand, reports that the person who said it, according to al-Jāhiz, was 'Ammār b. Yāsir or, according to *ahl al-hadīth*, Talhah, but the person they wanted to hail as caliph was 'Alī. It was thus 'Alī's name that made 'Umar disturbed and caused him to deliver a fiery speech.

<sup>1309.</sup> Ibn Ishāq adds: By God, the oath of allegiance given to Abū Bakr was nothing but a *faltah* [an event that happened without consideration], which was ratified [later]. 'Umar became angry and said. . . .

bly.<sup>1310</sup> I am afraid lest you should say something today which they might neither heed, nor remember, nor put it in its context and spread it everywhere; so wait until you<sup>1311</sup> come to Medina [which is]<sup>1312</sup> the place of refuge [*dār al-hijrah*] and a seat of the *sunnah*. [There] you can confer privately with the Messenger of God's companions,<sup>1313</sup> both the Emigrants and the *Anṣār*. You [1821] can say what you will with firmness, they will retain your words and interpret them properly." He replied, "By God, I will do it at the first opportunity which I get in Medina."

After we arrived in Medina,<sup>1314</sup> I journeyed on Friday at midday [to listen to] the report which 'Abd al-Rahmān had narrated to me. I found that Sa'īd b. Zayd had already preceded me [to the mosque],<sup>1315</sup> so I sat at his side near the pulpit, my knee to his knee. Immediately after the sun had declined, 'Umar came. As he was coming I said to Sa'īd, "The Commander of the Faithful will say something today from this pulpit which he has not said<sup>1316</sup> before." Sa'īd became angry, retorting,<sup>1317</sup> "What is he going to say that he has not said before?" When 'Umar sat in the pulpit, the muezzin<sup>1318</sup> called to prayer. After the muezzin had finished his call to prayer, 'Umar stood up. He praised God, extolled Him and said, "Now then: I want to say something which has been decreed that I should say.<sup>1319</sup> He who takes heed of it, understands it and will remember it. Let him relate it wherever he goes, [but] he who takes no heed of it, I do not permit him to lie [to someone that I did not say it]. God sent Muhammad with truth and revealed the Book to him. The verse concerning the stoning [of adulterers] was among [the verses] which were revealed to him.<sup>1320</sup> The Messenger of God stoned [adulterers], and we

1310. Your proximity: Hisch. and Ibn Ishāq.

1311. Kos: We.

1312. Addition from Ibn Ishāq.

1313. Ibn Ishāq: With the people of knowledge (*ahl al-fiqh*) and the nobles.

1314. Ibn Ishāq: We arrived in Medina toward the end of Dhū al-Hijjah.

1315. Ibn Ishāq: I found Sa'īd b. Zayd b. 'Amr b. Nufayl sitting in the corner of the pulpit.

1316. Ibn Ishāq: Since he succeeded [to the caliphate].

1317. Ibn Ishāq: Sa'īd was annoyed at me and said, "What may he perhaps say that he has not said before?"

1318. As in Kos. Text: Muezzins. It seems that with the increasing population of Medina, especially since 'Uthmān's caliphate, more than one muezzin were employed. Cf. Ibn Shabbah, *Tarikh*, III, 958ff.

1319. Ibn Ishāq adds: I do not know, perhaps my appointed time (*ajal*) is close.

1320. Ibn Ishāq adds: We read it; it was taught to us, and we heeded it.

stoned them after him. I am afraid that as time becomes prolonged some people might say that they do not find stoning in God's Book, and [thereby] they might go astray by forsaking an obligatory act (*farīdah*) revealed by God.<sup>1321</sup> We used to say:<sup>1322</sup> 'Do not detest your ancestors for it is infidelity to do so.'<sup>1323</sup>

"It has reached me that someone<sup>1324</sup> of you said, 'If the Commander of the Faithful<sup>1325</sup> is dead, I will give the oath of alle-

<sup>1321.</sup> Ibn Ishāq adds: Stoning in the Book of God is a penalty laid on married men and women who commit adultery, if evidence stands, or confession is made, or [it] results in pregnancy.

The alleged verse about stoning read: "Do not detest your ancestors, for it is infidelity to do so. If an adult man (*al-shaykh*) or woman (*al-shaykha*) commit adultery, stone them without exception as a chastisement from God. God is Mighty and Wise." It is suggested that this verse was a part of the Qur'ān, and that it originally belonged to *sūrah* 33, but was later abrogated. See Nöldeke, *Geschichte*, I, 248–52, where older sources are cited. Schacht doubts that the verse is genuine and states that the traditions relating to it and the mention of 'Umar are clearly tendentious. He suggests that stoning was introduced from Jewish law. *El!*, s.v. *Zinā*.

Burton (*Collection of the Qur'ān*, 72–86, 134ff.) contends that the *hadīth* about the stoning penalty for adultery and the stoning verse, classified in the third category of *naskh* (i.e., *naskh al-tilāwah dūna al-hukm*, the suppression of a Qur'ānic verse without prejudice, however, to the continuing validity of its ruling for legal purposes), were most probably fashioned by the dictates of Islamic legal science, *uṣūl al-fiqh*. He further contends that the latter has also shaped Islamic accounts of the history of the collection of the Qur'ānic texts, in which the Prophet is said to have been deliberately excluded from the task of collecting revelations because *naskh* (withdrawal) was a possibility as long as he lived.

In the Qur'ān 24:2, scourging is prescribed as a punishment for adultery. It states: "Flog both the adulterous woman and the adulterous man with a hundred lashes, and do not let any pity for either of them deter you from [complying with] God's law, if you believe in God and the Last Day." Both the flogging and stoning remained as a punishment combined with a year's banishment. In some traditions and the system of law, stoning and flogging are separated as punishment (*hadd*) for adultery in two categories of criminals, whether they are *muḥṣan* (an adult in possession of his faculties, who is free and has had sexual intercourse in a legal marriage) or not. Generally, the non-*muḥṣan* is flogged, while the *muḥṣan* is flogged and then stoned, or stoned.

Wāqidi, *Maghāzi*, II, 439–40, 712–13; III, 1115, states that the Prophet prohibited a man long absent from his home to come to his family at night. One of his followers disobeyed his command and returned to his family, and discovered a man with his wife. The cases mentioned by Wāqidi do not suggest that the parties involved were stoned. See also Qur'ān 4:15, 25; Tabārī, above, I, 1754, n. 772.

<sup>1322.</sup> Ibn Ishāq: We used to read in what we read from the Book of God.

<sup>1323.</sup> Ibn Ishāq adds: Indeed, the Messenger of God said, "Do not praise me lavishly as Jesus, son of Mary, was praised, and say: The servant of God and His messenger."

<sup>1324.</sup> Balādhurī (*Ansāb*, I, 581): Al-Zubayr.

<sup>1325.</sup> Ibn Ishāq: If 'Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb. Cf. Balādhurī.

[1822] giance to so-and-so.'<sup>1326</sup> Let a man not deceive himself by saying that the oath of allegiance given to Abū Bakr was an event that happened without consideration (*faltah*).<sup>1327</sup> Admittedly it was so, but God averted its evil. There is none among you like Abū Bakr to whom people would have submitted.<sup>1328</sup> It is our information that when God took His prophet, 'Ali, al-Zubayr, and those who were with them stayed away from us in the house of Fātimah,<sup>1329</sup> the *Anṣār*, all of them, stayed away from us,<sup>1330</sup> and the *Muhājirūn* gathered round Abū Bakr. I told him that we should go to our brothers the *Anṣār*, so we rushed off, making for them. Two pious fellows<sup>1331</sup> who had been present at Badr met us,<sup>1332</sup> asking where we were going. When we told them that we were going to our brothers the *Anṣār*, they asked us to go back<sup>1333</sup> and to decide our affair among ourselves. We replied, 'By God, we will go to them.' We came to them as they had gathered in the hall of the Banū Sā'īdah. In their midst was a man enwrapped in a cloak. When I asked who he was and what was his position, they said that he was Sa'd b. 'Ubādah and that he was ill.<sup>1334</sup> Then, a man from them stood up.<sup>1335</sup> After he had praised God he said, 'We are the Helpers<sup>1336</sup> (*al-Anṣār*) and the squadron of Islam, while you, O men of Quraysh,<sup>1337</sup> are a family of our Prophet<sup>1338</sup>

1326. Balādhuri: We will give the oath of allegiance to 'Ali. Indeed, the oath of allegiance given to Abū Bakr was a *faltah*. (*Faltah* means a sudden, unexpected event without deliberation. See *Nahj al-balāghah*, II, 26; Lane, *Lexicon*, s.v. f-l-t.)

1327. Ibn Ishāq adds: But it was ratified.

1328. Ibn Ishāq adds: An oath of allegiance rendered by an individual to a man without consulting the Muslims has no validity for either of them; both are in danger of being killed [i.e., subject to the death penalty].

1329. See above, n. 1291.

1330. Ibn Ishāq: The *Anṣār* opposed us and gathered with their nobles in the *Saqifah* of the Banū Sā'īdah.

1331. For their names, see Tabarī, below, I, 1824.

1332. Ibn Ishāq adds: Telling us what [their] people had decided.

1333. Ibn Ishāq: They said that there was no need for them to approach [the *Anṣār*], and they should decide their affair [among themselves].

1334. For his speech and as to what was transpiring in that gathering, see Tabarī, below, I, 1837–39.

1335. Ibn Ishāq: After we had sat down, their speaker [stood up] pronouncing the *shahādah*. According to Ya'qūbī, *Ta'rikh*, II, 113, he was Thābit b. Qays b. Shammās.

1336. Ibn Ishāq: The Helpers of God.

1337. Ibn Ishāq: O *Muhājirūn*.

1338. Ibn Ishāq: Family of ours.

who have come to us journeying leisurely in search of herbage and sustenance.' [Umar] said: When I saw that they wanted to cut us off from our root and wrest authority from us,<sup>1339</sup> I wanted to make a speech which I had composed in my mind.<sup>1340</sup> As I used to treat Abū Bakr with gentle courtesy to some extent, [and considered] him more sober and gentler<sup>1341</sup> than me, I conferred with him about [the speech]. When I wanted to speak he said, 'Gently!' so I did not like to disobey<sup>1342</sup> him. He stood up, praised God, extolled Him and did not leave anything [from his speech], which I myself had composed in my [own] mind if I had spoken, but that he expressed it, or [expressed it] in a better way [than I would have done].

[1823]

"He said: 'Now then: O men of the *Anṣār*, you deserve all the fine qualities that you have mentioned about yourselves, but the Arabs will not recognize this authority except in this clan of Quraysh, for they represent the best in lineage and standing.<sup>1343</sup> I am pleased [to offer] you one of these two men; render your oath of allegiance to any one of them you like.' [Thus saying] he took hold of my hand and that of Abū 'Ubaydah b. al-Jarrāḥ.<sup>1344</sup> By

1339. Ibn Ishāq adds: After [their speaker] had finished, I wanted to speak.

1340. Ibn Ishāq adds: Which pleased me.

1341. Hisch.: Knowledgeable.

1342. Hisch., Kos, and Ibn Ishāq: To make him angry.

1343. Balādhuri, *Anṣāb*, I, 582, cites the speech of Abū Bakr which shows how he argued against the *Anṣār*. He states: "We are the first people to accept Islam. We are in the center among the Muslims with respect to our position, and we are the noblest with respect to our lineage, and we are the nearest to the Messenger of God in relationship. You are our brethren in Islam and our partners in religion . . . The Arabs will not submit themselves except to this clan of Quraysh. . . . You had better not compete against your *Muhājirūn* brethren for what God has decreed for them."

1344. Ibn Ishāq adds: Who was sitting between us. Ya'qūbī, *Ta'rīkh*, II, 113-14, adds: Both of them declined and said, "By God, we cannot take precedence over you while you are the companion of the Messenger of God and the second of the two [in the cave at the time of the *hijrah*]." Abū 'Ubaydah put his hand upon Abū Bakr's hand and 'Umar did the same [in ratifying their bargain]. The Meccans who were with them did the same. Then Abū 'Ubaydah cried, "O people of the *Anṣār*, you were the first to help [the Prophet] so do not be the first to change and convert [back to paganism]." Next, 'Abd al-Rahmān b. 'Awf stood up and said, "O people of the *Anṣār*, although you have the merits, you do not have among you [anyone] like Abū Bakr, 'Umar, and 'Ali." [Thereupon] Mundhir b. al-Arqam stood up saying, "We do not deny the merits of those you have mentioned. Indeed, there is among

God, I liked everything he said except the last words. I would have preferred myself to be sent forward and my head struck off—if it were not considered a sin—rather than to be appointed a ruler over a people of whom Abū Bakr was one.

"After Abū Bakr had finished his speech, a man from the *Anṣār*<sup>1345</sup> stood up saying, 'I am their much-rubbed little rubbing post and their little palm tree loaded with fruit.'<sup>1346</sup> Let us have a ruler from us and another from you, O men of Quraysh.' ['Umar] said,<sup>1347</sup> "Voices rose and clamorous speech waxed hotter. I feared [total] disagreement so I said to Abū Bakr, 'Stretch out your hand [so that] I may give you the oath of allegiance.' He did so and I gave [him] the oath of allegiance; the *Muhājirūn* followed and then the *Anṣār*. [In so doing] we jumped on Sa'd b. 'Ubādah so someone said that we had killed him. I said, '[May] God kill him!"<sup>1348</sup> By God, nothing was mightier than the rendering of the oath of allegiance to Abū Bakr. We feared that if [we] left [without rendering the oath of allegiance], no agreement would be hammered out later. It was either to follow the *Anṣār* in what we did not like, or else to oppose them, which would have led to disorder (*fasād*)."

[1824]

Ibn Humayd—Salamah—Muhammad b. Ishāq—al-Zuhri—'Urwah b. al-Zubayr: One of the two men from the *Anṣār* whom Abū Bakr and 'Umar met on their way to the *Saqifah* was 'Uwaym b. Sā'idah, whilst the other was Ma'n b. 'Adī, a brother of the Banū

you a person with whom, if he seeks this authority, none will dispute [i.e., 'Ali]."  
It seems that at this stage Hubāb b. Mundhir al-Anṣāri proposed a compromise solution as stated by 'Umar.

<sup>1345</sup> He was al-Hubāb b. Mundhir. Tabari, I, 1840, 1844; Balādhuri, *Ansāb*, I, 581–82, 584; Ibn 'Abd al-Barr, *al-Iṣṭi'āb*, I, 316.

<sup>1346</sup> It means: I am one of those by means of whose counsel people seek relief, like the mangy camels seek relief from their mange by rubbing themselves against the post. Freytag, *Arabum Proverbia*, I, 47–48; Lane, *Lexicon*, s.v. *j-dh-l*.

<sup>1347</sup> Tabari, I, 1841, records 'Umar's reply to Hubāb's proposal as follows: How preposterous! Two [swords] cannot be accommodated in one sheath. By God, the Arabs will never accept your rule, since their Prophet is not from you, but they will not reject the rule of one from whom is their Prophet. If anyone refuses our authority, we will [produce] a clear rebuttal and an evident proof. Who would dispute us with regard to Muhammad's authority and rule except the falsely guided one, or the erring one, or the damned one, when we are his close associates and kinsfolk? Cf. also *Nahj al-balāghah*, II, 52–53.

<sup>1348</sup> What follows is omitted from Ibn Ishāq.

al-'Ijlān. As for 'Uwaym b. Sā'idah, we have heard that when the Messenger of God was asked who were the people about whom God said: "Therein [i.e., in a mosque] are men who love to be purified; and God loves those who purify themselves,"<sup>1349</sup> he replied that the best of them was 'Uwaym b. Sā'idah. As for Ma'n, it has reached us that when people wept over the Messenger of God's death and said that they wished that they had died before him because they feared that they would be subjected to temptations after him, he said, "By God, I do not wish to die before him, so that I can bear witness to his truth when he is dead, as I did when he was alive." Ma'n was killed in the battle of al-Yamāmah, the battle against Musaylimah, the arch-liar, as a martyr during Abū Bakr's caliphate.

'Ubaydallāh b. Sa'īd al-Zuhrī—his uncle Ya'qūb b. Ibrāhīm—Sayf b. 'Umar—al-Walid b. 'Abdallāh b. Abī Zaybah al-Bajalī—al-Walid b. Jumay' al-Zuhrī: 'Amr b. Hurayth asked Sa'īd b. Zayd, "Were you present at [the time of] the Messenger of God's death?" "Yes," he replied. 'Amr asked, "When was the oath of allegiance given to Abū Bakr?" "The [very] day the Messenger of God died," he replied. "People disliked to be left [even] part of the day without being [organized] into a community (*jamā'ah*)."' Amr asked, "Did anyone oppose him?" "No [one] except an apostate (*murtadd*), or the one who was about to apostatize," he replied. "It was because God rescued them from the *Anṣār*." 'Amr asked, "Did anyone from the *Muhājirūn* stay away?" "No, they followed one another to give their oath of allegiance without being summoned," he replied.

'Ubaydallāh b. Sa'īd [al-Zuhrī]—his uncle [Ya'qūb]—Sayf [b. 'Umar]—'Abd al-'Aziz b. Siyāh<sup>1350</sup>—Habib b. Abī Thābit:<sup>1351</sup> 'Ali was in his house when he was approached and was told that Abū Bakr had sat to receive the oath of allegiance. He went out immediately in the shirt [worn beneath the clothes] he was wearing without the waist-wrapper, or the outer wrapping garment, out of

[1825]

1349. Qur'ān 9:108.

1350. Ibn Hajar, *Tahdhīb*, VI, 340–41.

1351. Died in 119/737. *Ibid.*, II, 178–80.

dislike that he might be late. He gave the oath of allegiance,<sup>1352</sup> sat with Abū Bakr, and sent for his clothes. When [the clothes] were brought he put them on and stayed in [Abū Bakr's] assembly.

Abū Ṣalīḥ al-Dirārī—'Abd al-Razzāq b. Hammām<sup>1353</sup>—Ma'mar<sup>1354</sup>—al-Zuhri—'Urwah—'Ā'ishah: Fātimah and al-'Abbās came to Abū Bakr demanding their [share of] inheritance of the Messenger of God. They were demanding the Messenger of God's land in Fadak and his share of Khaybar's tribute].<sup>1355</sup> Abū Bakr replied, 'I have heard the Messenger of God say: 'Our [i.e., the prophets' property] cannot be inherited and whatever we leave behind is alms [i.e., to be given in charity]. The family of Muhammad will eat from it.'<sup>1356</sup> By God, I will not abandon a course which I saw the Messenger of God practicing, but will continue doing it accordingly.' Fātimah shunned him and did not speak to him about it until she died. 'Ali buried her at night and did not permit Abū Bakr to attend [her burial].<sup>1357</sup> While Fātimah was alive, 'Ali held respect among the people. After she died, their

1352. A close scrutiny of the early sources suggests that 'Ali refused to swear allegiance to Abū Bakr for six months, that is, for as long as Fātimah was alive. After her death and with the eruption of rebellion among the Arab tribes, 'Ali might have been compelled to become reconciled with Abū Bakr. Jafri, *Origins*, 59; Momen, *Shi'i Islam*, 20.

1353. Died in 211/826–27. Ibn Hajar, *Tahdhīb*, VI, 310–15.

1354. Ma'mar b. Rāshid al-Azdī died ca. 152/769. *Ibid.*, X, 243–46.

1355. Fadak was allocated to Muhammad, because it had been acquired by treaty. The inhabitants, according to the treaty, were to remain there while giving up half their lands and half the produce. Fātimah maintained that Fadak, like Muhammad's fifth share (*khums*) of the produce from Khaybar, should come to her as her father's heiress. This question of inheritance soon became one of the most debated issues in the conflict between the Shi'is and the Sunnis. For its subsequent history, see *EI<sup>2</sup>*, s.v. Fadak. See also Tabarī, above, I, 1759, n. 825.

1356. Tabrizi, *Mishkāt*, III, 209; Mishkat (trans. Robson), II, 1310; transmitted by both Bukhārī and Muslim. The Shi'is refute this tradition, saying that it contradicts the Qur'ānic teachings on family inheritance.

It was the first and most important step taken by both Abū Bakr and 'Umar in their attempts to displace the Banū Hāshim, and especially 'Ali, from their prerogatives in the leadership of the Muslim polity. Acceptance of this claim of inheritance based on family ties would have opened the door widely to 'Ali's right to the succession. Moreover, the income from both these sources was considerable, and it would have given some leverage to 'Ali. Ibn Shabbah, *Ta'rikh*, I, 176–218; Jafri, *Origins*, 14–16, 63. For Fātimah's reply and refutation, see Tabarsi, *Iḥtijāj*, I, 119–49.

1357. Ibn Shabbah, *Ta'rikh*, I, 196–97; Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, VIII, 29; Ya'qūbi, *Ta'rikh*, II, 117; Mas'ūdi, *Tanbīh*, 250.

attention turned away from him.<sup>1358</sup> Fātimah continued to live for six months after the Messenger of God's [death] and then died.

**Ma'mar:** A man asked al-Zuhrī, "Did 'Ali not give his oath of allegiance for six months?" "No, nor anyone of the Banū Hāshim until 'Ali rendered his," he replied.<sup>1359</sup> When 'Ali saw that the people's attention had turned away from him, he begged for reconciliation with Abū Bakr. He sent to the latter, [asking him] to visit him, and [requesting] that nobody should accompany him. 'Ali disliked that 'Umar should come with Abū Bakr, for he knew 'Umar's rudeness. 'Umar said [to Abū Bakr], "Don't go alone." Abū Bakr replied, "By God, I will go alone. It is not possible that [the Banū Hāshim] might do anything to me," and he went. He entered into 'Ali's presence while the Banū Hāshim had gathered with him. 'Ali stood up, praised God and extolled Him with what is due to Him. Then he said, "It is neither the denial of your good qualities nor the rivalry of good, which God has given you, that prevented us from giving you the oath of allegiance, but the fact that we considered that we have a right in this authority which you have monopolized." 'Ali then mentioned his relationship with the Messenger of God and the rights of the Banū Hāshim. He continued speaking until Abū Bakr wept. After 'Ali stopped, Abū Bakr pronounced the *shahādah*, praised God, extolled Him with what is due to Him, then said, "By God, the relationship of the Messenger of God is dearer to me [too]. I reach [him] through my relationship [to him]. By God, I did not fall short of doing what was requisite with regard to this property [i.e., the Prophet's inheritance], which became [a dispute] between you and me except for good. I had heard the Messenger of God saying: 'Our [i.e., the prophets' property] cannot be inherited and whatever we leave behind is alms [i.e., to be given in charity]. The family of Muhammad will eat from it.' God forbid that I should recall a thing which the Messenger of God did without doing it, God willing!" 'Ali said that he would render the oath of allegiance that evening. After Abū Bakr had prayed the noon prayers, he approached the people and excused 'Ali with his apology. 'Ali stood up, lauded the right

[1826]

1358. *Nahj al-balāghah*, II, 22; also reported by Bukhārī and Muslim.

1359. Most of the authorities state that 'Ali did not render his oath of allegiance until after Fātimah's death. Ya'qūbī, *Ta'rīkh*, II, 116; Mas'ūdī, *Murūj*, II, 308; *Nahj al-balāghah*, II, 22.

[1827]

of Abū Bakr by mentioning his fine qualities and his precedence and went to him, giving the oath of allegiance. The people came to 'Alī saying that he had done the right thing.<sup>1360</sup> 'A'ishah said: The people got close to 'Alī when he came close to what was right [i.e., in rendering his oath of allegiance to Abū Bakr].

Muhammad b. 'Uthmān b. Ṣafwān al-Thaqafī<sup>1361</sup>—Abū Qutaybah<sup>1362</sup>—Mālik (that is Ibn Mighwāl)—Ibn al-Jarr: Abū Sufyān<sup>1363</sup> said to 'Alī, "What is the matter, that this authority had been vested in a least-known clan of Quraysh?"<sup>1364</sup> By God, if you wish, I will fill [the whole space] with men and horses." 'Alī replied, "O Abū Sufyān, for a long time you have been at war with Islam and the Muslims, but you have been unable to do any harm. We find Abū Bakr worthy of this authority."<sup>1365</sup>

Muhammad b. 'Uthmān al-Thaqafī—Umayyah b. Khālid<sup>1366</sup>—Ḥammād b. Salamah<sup>1367</sup>—Thābit.<sup>1368</sup> When Abū Bakr succeeded [the Prophet], Abū Sufyān said, "What has Abū Faṣīl<sup>1369</sup> to do with us? Indeed, the authority belongs to the Banū 'Abd Manāf."<sup>1370</sup> [When his son Yazīd became the governor], it was said to

<sup>1360.</sup> Cf. Balādhurī, *Ansāb*, I, 586. This report is on the authority of 'A'ishah.

<sup>1361.</sup> Died ca. 252/866. Ibn Hajar, *Tahdhīb*, IX, 337–38.

<sup>1362.</sup> Died ca. 200/815–16. *Ibid.*, IV, 133–34.

<sup>1363.</sup> Some reports state that, being appointed by the Prophet as his agent over Najrān, he was not present in Medina when the Prophet died. Wāqidi, on the other hand, affirms that he was in Medina. Cf. Balādhurī, *Ansāb*, I, 529, 589.

<sup>1364.</sup> Abū Bakr came from the inconspicuous clan of Taym, which was never a major factor in the power struggle among the rival clans of Quraysh. Watt, *Muhammad at Medina*, 4–8, 16–20.

<sup>1365.</sup> 'Alī probably declined Abū Sufyān's offer of support because it would have destroyed the nascent Islamic polity. Balādhurī, *Ansāb*, I, 588; Ya'qūbī, *Ta'rīkh*, II, 116; *Nahj al-balāghah*, II, 44–45; Momen, *Shi'i Islam*, 19–20.

<sup>1366.</sup> Died ca. 200/815–16. Ibn Hajar, *Tahdhīb*, I, 370–71.

<sup>1367.</sup> Died in 167/783–84. *Ibid.*, XI, 11–16.

<sup>1368.</sup> Thābit b. Aslam al-Banāni died ca. 127/744–45. *Ibid.*, II, 2–4.

<sup>1369.</sup> Literally, it means a young camel when weaned from her mother. Here it implies that the clan to which Abū Bakr belonged was not a distinguished clan of Quraysh.

<sup>1370.</sup> Quṣayy, the great ancestor of Muhammad, is regarded as the founder of the city of Mecca as distinct from a mere encampment around the sanctuary of the Ka'bah. He was the effective ruler of Mecca during his lifetime and also became the master of the Ka'bah holding all the important offices, such as *sidānah* (guardianship), *rifāḍah* (feeding), and *siqāyah* (providing water). His descendants 'Abd al-Dār inherited much of his power, but in the course of time the family was split and challenged by 'Abd Manāf. It nearly led to fighting, but a compromise was reached whereby 'Abd al-Dār retained nominal privileges and 'Abd Manāf was

him, "Your son has been entrusted with the authority," and he replied, "He made close his ties of kinship by behaving with kindness."<sup>1371</sup>

Hishām—'Awānah: When people gathered to give their oath of allegiance to Abū Bakr, Abū Sufyān came while at the same time saying, "By God, I see a cloud of smoke ('ajājah),<sup>1372</sup> which nothing but blood will clear. O family of 'Abd Manāf, where is Abū Bakr that he should be the master of your affairs! Where are 'Alī and al-'Abbās, the two weak (*mustad'afān*)<sup>1373</sup> and lowly ones (*adhillān*)?" He [then] said [to 'Alī], "O Abū Hasan, stretch out your hand so that I may give you the oath of allegiance," but 'Alī declined, so he began to cite appositely the proverbial verses of al-Mutalammis:

No one remains in a state of ignominy that is intended  
for him, except the two despicable things: a domestic ass  
and a wooden peg [of a tent].<sup>1374</sup>

The former is turned back to his state of ignominy by a  
piece of worn-out rope, while the latter's head is broken  
and no one mourns.

'Alī rebuked him, saying, "By God, you do not intend anything but [to stir up] dissension (*fītnah*). For long you have desired evil for Islam. We do not need your advice." [1828]

given the substance of power. Both the Hāshimites and the Umayyads were branches of 'Abd Manāf. Ibn Hishām, *Sīrah* I, 130ff.; Guillaume, *Life*, 52ff.; Balādhurī, *Ansāb*, I, 48ff.; Azraqī, *Akhbār Makkah*, I, 103ff.; Watt, *Muhammad at Mecca*, 5, 7, 30; Rodinson, *Mahomet*, 62–64; Hamidullāh, "al-Ilāl"; Cook, *Muhammad*, 12–13.

1371. Abū Sufyān is said to have made the same remark when 'Umar appointed Mu'awiyah as the governor of Syria after the death of Yazid. Ibn Shabbah, *Ta'rīkh*, III, 837.

1372. It also means low, ignoble people. Lane, *Lexicon*, s.v. 'a-j-j.

1373. Both the terms (the weak and lowly) are used here sarcastically. *Mustad'af* means literally "one who is deemed weak." It occurs in the Qur'ān 4:75, 97–98, 127; 8:26, in the sense of "oppressed." Balādhurī, *Ansāb*, I, 156ff., 197, lists a group of early converts under the title *al-Mustad'afūn*, that is, those who were clanless and without protection. The term was thus used for poorly defended lower classes. Ibn Hishām, *Sīrah*, I, 339; Guillaume, *Life*, 143; Serjeant, "Translation," 11; Rodinson, *Mahomet*, 128–29; Cook, *Muhammad*, 51–52.

1374. The proverbs state: "More vile than a wooden peg in a plain," "More vile than the ass," "More vile than a chained donkey." Freytag, *Arabum Proverbia*, I, 511–12, 516; Lane, *Lexicon*, s.v. w-t-d, '-y-r.

Hishām b. Muḥammad—Abū Muḥammad al-Qurashī: When the oath of allegiance was rendered to Abū Bakr, Abū Sufyān said to ‘Ali and al-‘Abbās, “You are two despicable ones,” and began reciting the [following] proverbial verses:

A domestic ass knows the disgrace,  
but a free man and a well-built camel, soft in the  
joints, detest it.

No one bears an unjust state that is intended for him,  
except the two despicable things: a domestic ass and a  
wooden peg.

The former is turned back to his state of ignominy by a  
piece of worn-out rope, while the latter's head is broken  
and no one mourns.

Ibn Ḥumayd—Salamah—Muḥammad b. Ishāq—al-Zuhri—Anas b. Mālik: The following day after Abū Bakr was given the oath of allegiance in the *Saqīfah*, he sat in the pulpit. ‘Umar stood up and spoke before him. After praising God and extolling Him with what is due to Him, he said, “O people, yesterday I said something to you that<sup>1375</sup> was based on my own opinion. I neither found it in God's book<sup>1376</sup> nor was it something by which the Messenger of God had enjoined me,<sup>1377</sup> but I thought<sup>1378</sup> that the Messenger of God would conduct our affairs until he was the last of us [alive]. God has left His book, by which He guided His Messenger, with you. If you hold fast to it God will guide [you] as He guided him. God has vested your affairs in the hands of the best one among you, the companion of the Messenger of God, 'the second of the two when both of them were in the cave,'<sup>1379</sup> so arise and give [him]<sup>1380</sup> the oath of allegiance.” The people gave

<sup>1375.</sup> That . . . opinion: Omitted from Ibn Ishāq. Ibn Sa'd (*Tabaqāt*, II/2, 56): That was not [correct] as I said.

<sup>1376.</sup> Ibn Sa'd: The Book revealed by God.

<sup>1377.</sup> C: Us.

<sup>1378.</sup> Ibn Sa'd: But I had hoped that the Messenger of God would live [as] he had said, and that he would be the last of us [alive]. God chose for His messenger that which was with Him rather than that which was with you. Hold fast to this book, by which God guided your messenger, and you will be guided as the Messenger of God was guided.

<sup>1379.</sup> Qur'ān 9:40.

<sup>1380.</sup> Addition from Hisch.

Abū Bakr their oath of allegiance in public after the one rendered in the *Saqifah*. [1829]

Then Abū Bakr spoke. After praising God and extolling Him with what is due to Him, he said, "Now then: O people, I have been put in charge of you although I am not the best of you. Help me if I do well; rectify me if I do wrong. Truthfulness is loyalty and falsehood is disloyalty. The weak among you shall be strong in my eyes until I ensure his right, God willing; and the strong among you shall be weak in my eyes until I wrest the right from him, God willing. No one from you should refrain from fighting in the cause of God, because if it is forsaken by a people, God will smite them with disgrace.<sup>1381</sup> Foul things never become widespread in a people but God brings calamity upon them. Obey me as long as I obey God and His Messenger; if I disobey them, you are not bound to obey me. Perform your prayers. May God have mercy on you!"

Ibn Ḥumayd—Salamah—Muhammad b. Ishāq—Husayn b. 'Abdallāh<sup>1382</sup>—'Ikrimah—Ibn 'Abdallāh: I was walking with 'Umar during his caliphate while he set about some business of his. He had a whip in his hand, and we were alone. As he was talking to himself he swished the outer side of his leg with his whip. Turning to me he said, "Do you know, O Ibn 'Abbās, what prompted me to speak<sup>1383</sup> as I did when the Messenger of God died?" "No, I do not know, O Commander of the Faithful," I replied. "You know it better." He said, "By God, nothing prompted<sup>1384</sup> me [to utter those words] but that I used to read the following verse: 'We have set you up as a moderate nation so that you may act as witness for mankind, as the Messenger is a witness for you.'<sup>1385</sup> By God, I thought that the Messenger of God would remain among his people until he could witness for them to their last deeds. That was what prompted me to say what I said."<sup>1386</sup>

[1830]

<sup>1381.</sup> Hisch., C, and Ibn Ishāq: If a people refrain from fighting in the cause of God, God will smite them with disgrace. See also Balādhurī, *Ansāb*, I, 590–91.

<sup>1382.</sup> Husayn b. 'Abdallāh b. 'Ubaydallāh b. 'Abbās died ca. 140/757–58. Ibn Hajar, *Tahdhīb*, II, 341–42.

<sup>1383.</sup> As in Hisch., Ibn Ishāq, and Balādhurī (*Ansāb*, I, 568). Text: Speak this.

<sup>1384.</sup> Hisch., Ibn Ishāq: What prompted me was that.

<sup>1385.</sup> Qur'ān 2:143.

<sup>1386.</sup> During one of the conversations between 'Umar and Ibn 'Abbās, the former said, "What prevented 'Ali from coming out with us?" Ibn 'Abbās replied, "I

**Abū Ja'far [al-Tabarī]:** After the oath of allegiance was rendered to Abū Bakr, people came to prepare the Messenger of God's burial. Some [of the authorities] state that the burial took place on Tuesday, that is, the following day of the Messenger of God's death, while the others state that he was buried three days after his death. The report of some of those authorities has already preceded.

Ibn Humayd—Salamah—Muhammad b. Ishāq—'Abdallāh b. Abī Bakr, Kathīr b. 'Abdallāh,<sup>1387</sup> and others who relate from 'Abdallāh b. 'Abbās: 'Ali b. Abī Ṭalib, al-'Abbās b. 'Abd al-Muṭṭalib, al-Fadl b. al-'Abbās, Qutham b. al-'Abbās, Usāmah b. Zayd, and Shuqrān, freedman of the Messenger of God, were the ones who took charge of the washing of the Prophet. Aws b. Khawlī, one<sup>1388</sup> of the Banū 'Awf b. al-Khazraj, said to 'Ali, "I adjure you by God, O 'Ali, [where is] our share in regard to the Messenger of God?" Aws was one [of the companions of the Messenger of God]<sup>1389</sup> who had participated in Badr. 'Ali allowed him to enter, so he came in<sup>1390</sup> and was present at the Messenger of God's washing. 'Ali made the Prophet's body to rest upon his breast and 'Abbās, al-Fadl, and Qutham turned him over along with 'Ali. Usāmah and Shuqrān were the ones who poured water [over him],<sup>1391</sup> while 'Ali washed him, having rested him against his breast. The shirt was still on the Prophet's body; 'Ali rubbed him from the outside without touching the Messenger of God's

[1831]

do not know." 'Umar said, "O son of 'Abbās, your father is an uncle of the Messenger of God and you are [the Prophet's] cousin, so what prevented the Quraysh [from supporting] you?" Ibn 'Abbās answered, "I do not know." Then 'Umar said, "But, I know, they dislike your authority." Ibn 'Abbās replied, "[But] why? We are [always] good to them." 'Umar added, "O God, pardon me! They did not like having both the prophethood and the caliphate combined in your family, which would have made you proud and arrogant." This conversation not only reveals 'Umar's attitude toward 'Ali but also clearly indicates that he was aware of the importance of the idea of inherited sanctity. On another occasion, the same subject is discussed between the two, but the second dialogue is more intense and lively. When Ibn 'Abbās answers back, 'Umar loses his temper. See Ṭabarī, I, 2769–71.

1387. Ibn Ḥajar, *Tahdhīb*, VIII, 421–23.

1388. C: Brother.

1389. Addition from Hisch. and Ibn Ishāq.

1390. And sat down: Addition in Hisch., Ibn Ishāq, and Balādhuri (*Ansāb*, I, 569).

1391. Addition from Hisch. and Ibn Ishāq.

[body directly] with his hands while he was saying, "With my father may you be ransomed, and with my mother! How excellent you are in life and in death!"<sup>1392</sup> The Messenger of God's body did not look like what an ordinary corpse would look like.

Ibn Ḥumayd—Salamah—Ibn Ishāq—Yaḥyā b. ‘Abbād—his father ‘Abbād [b. ‘Abdallāh b. al-Zubayr]—‘Ā’ishah: When they wanted to wash the Prophet, they disagreed about it, saying that they did not know whether they should remove his clothes as they do with their dead, or wash him with his clothes on. When they disagreed, slumber overtook them<sup>1393</sup> so that everyone's chin was sunk on his chest. Then a speaker—it is not known<sup>1394</sup> who he was—spoke from a corner of the house: "Wash the Prophet with his clothes on." They got up and washed the Messenger of God with his shirt on, pouring water on the shirt, and rubbing him with the shirt. ‘Ā’ishah used to say, "Had I known regarding my duty at the beginning what I knew at the end, none but his wives would have washed him."<sup>1395</sup>

Ibn Ḥumayd—Salamah—Ibn Ishāq—Ja’far b. Muḥammad b. ‘Alī b. Ḥusayn—his father [Muhammad al-Bāqir]—his [father] ‘Alī b. Ḥusayn. Ibn Ishāq states that he has [also] received this account on the authority of al-Zuhri—‘Alī b. Ḥusayn: After the Messenger of God was washed, he was shrouded in three garments: two of Shūhār<sup>1396</sup> make and [the other] a striped cloak (*burdīn hi-baratīn*),<sup>1397</sup> one wrapped over the other.<sup>1398</sup>

Ibn Ḥumayd—Salamah—Muhammad b. Ishāq—Husayn b. ‘Abdallāh—Ikrimah, freedman of Ibn ‘Abbās—‘Abdallāh b. ‘Abbās: Abū ‘Ubaydah b. al-Jarrāḥ and Abū Ṭalḥah Zayd b. Sahl

[1832]

1392. See Ibn Sa’d, *Tabaqāt*, II/2, 60–63; Lings, *Muhammad*, 344.

1393. Ibn Ishāq: God cast a [deep] sleep upon them.

1394. Ibn Ishāq: None knowing.

1395. See Ibn Sa’d, *Tabaqāt*, II/2, 59–60; Balādhuri, *Ansāb*, I, 569–70. This sentence is omitted from Ibn Ishāq.

1396. A seaport on the coast of ‘Umān known for its textile industry. *EI*<sup>1</sup>, s.v. Shūhār. Lane (*Lexicon*, s.v. s-h-r), states that it is a kind of garment made in Shūhār, a town in Yemen. Wāqidī, *Maghāzī*, III, 1090, states that on the Farewell Pilgrimage the Prophet made his *iḥrām* in two Shūhār garments. Other texts, such as Balādhuri, *Ansāb*, I, 571, state that he was dressed in three Sahūlī garments instead of Shūhār ones. Sahūl is a town in Yemen, still known for its clothes. See Bakrī, *Mu’jam*, III, 727; Serjeant, "Translation," 10.

1397. A kind of garment made in Yemen. Lane, *Lexicon*, s.v. h-b-r.

1398. See Ibn Sa’d, *Tabaqāt*, II/2, 63–67; Balādhuri, *Ansāb*, I, 572.

were the two men [in Medina]<sup>1399</sup> [who used to dig graves]. The former used to dig [graves] as the Meccans dig them, while the latter, who used to dig for the Medinans, used to make a niche in them. When they decided to dig [a grave] for the Messenger of God, al-'Abbās called two men, told one of them to go to Abū 'Ubaydah and the other to go to Abū Talhah, [saying], "O God, choose for your<sup>1400</sup> messenger." The one who had been sent for Abū Talhah found him and brought him, so he dug the grave with the niche for the Messenger of God.

After the preparations for the Messenger of God's burial had been completed on Tuesday, he was laid upon his bed in his house. The Muslims had disagreed about the place of his burial. Some said that they should bury him in his mosque while the others said that [they should bury him]<sup>1401</sup> with his companions.<sup>1402</sup> Abū Bakr said, "I have heard the Messenger of God saying that no prophet died but he was buried where he died," so the bed on which he died was removed, and a grave was dug beneath it.<sup>1403</sup> [Then] the people passed by the Messenger of God praying over him in groups, first the men, then the women, then the children, and<sup>1404</sup> [finally] the slaves. No one led the people in prayers over him. The Messenger of God was buried in the middle of the night of Wednesday.<sup>1405</sup>

Ibn Ḥumayd—Salamah—Muhammad b. Ishāq—Fātimah bt. Muḥammad b. 'Umārah, wife of 'Abdallāh (that is, the son of Abū Bakr)—'Amrah bt. 'Abd al-Rahmān b. Sa'd b. Zurārah—'Ā'ishah, Mother of the Faithful: We did not know of the Messenger of God's burial until we heard the sound of the pickaxes (or mattocks) in the middle of the night of Wednesday.<sup>1406</sup>

<sup>1399.</sup> Addition from Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, II/2, 74.

<sup>1400.</sup> Hisch., Ibn Ishāq: The Messenger of God.

<sup>1401.</sup> As in Hisch., Ibn Ishāq and Ibn Sa'd (*Tabaqāt*, II/2, 71). Text: He should be buried.

<sup>1402.</sup> Ibn Sa'd adds: In al-Baqī' [cemetery]. For further details, see idem, *Tabaqāt*, II/2, 70–72.

<sup>1403.</sup> Balādhuri, *Ansāb*, I, 573.

<sup>1404.</sup> It is omitted from Hisch., Ibn Ishāq, and Ibn Sa'd (*Tabaqāt*, II/2, 68–70).

<sup>1405.</sup> Some traditions state that he was buried on Tuesday. *Ibid.*, 78–79.

<sup>1406.</sup> Probably because of this report, Rodinson, *Mahomet*, 328–29, thinks that the Prophet was buried by his family the same night in the house of 'Ā'ishah. The reason for their hurried action was to avoid any ceremony in which Abū Bakr, leading the funeral rites, might appear as the Messenger of God's appointed successor.

Ibn Ishāq states: Those who descended into the Messenger of God's grave were 'Alī b. Abī Tālib, al-Faḍl b. al-'Abbās, Qutham b. al-'Abbās, and Shuqrān, freedman of the Messenger of God. Aws b. Khawli implored 'Alī in the name of God, asking for his share regarding the Messenger of God. 'Alī permitted him to descend [into the grave] with the others.<sup>1407</sup> After the Messenger of God was laid in his grave and the earth was laid over him, Shuqrān, the Messenger of God's freedman, took a garment which the Messenger of God used to wear and spread out [for sitting], and tossed it<sup>1408</sup> in the grave saying, 'By God, no one shall ever wear it after you,' so it was buried with the Messenger of God.

Ibn Ishāq states: Al-Mughirah b. Shu'bāh used to claim that he was the last man to be with the Messenger of God. He used to say, 'I took my ring, threw it in the grave and said, my ring has fallen. I threw it intentionally so that I might touch the Messenger of God and be the last person to be with him.'<sup>1409</sup>

Ibn Ḥumayd—Salamah—Muhammad b. Ishāq—his father Ishāq b. Yasār—Miqsam, Abū al-Qāsim, freedman of 'Abdallāh b. al-Ḥārith b. Nawfal—his master 'Abdallāh b. al-Ḥārith:<sup>1410</sup> I made a lesser pilgrimage with 'Alī b. Abī Tālib during the [caliphate] of 'Umar or 'Uthmān. 'Alī stayed with his sister Umm Hāni' bt. Abī Tālib. After he had finished his lesser pilgrimage, 'Alī returned and I poured [water]<sup>1411</sup> for him [to perform] the major ritual purification, which he did. After he had finished the purification, some Iraqis came to him and said, 'O Abū al-Hasan, we have come to ask you about a matter on which we would like you to give us information.' He said, 'I suppose that al-Mughirah tells you that he was the last person to be with the Messenger of God.' They said that, indeed, that was the reason they had come to ask him. 'Alī said that al-Mughirah lied. The last man to be with the Messenger of God was Qutham b. al-'Abbās.<sup>1412</sup>

Ibn Ḥumayd—Salamah—Ibn Ishāq—Ṣāliḥ b. Kaysān<sup>1413</sup>—al-

[1834]

<sup>1407.</sup> Balādhuri, *Ansāb*, I, 577. Some traditions add the names of Usāmah b. Zayd and Ṣāliḥ, the Messenger of God's freedman, to the list of those who descended into the grave. See Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, II/2, 76–77.

<sup>1408.</sup> Hisch., Kos, and Ibn Ishāq: And buried it.

<sup>1409.</sup> Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, II/2, 77–78; Balādhuri, *Ansāb*, I, 578.

<sup>1410.</sup> Died between 79/698–99 and 84/703. Ibn Hajar, *Tahdhīb*, V, 180–81.

<sup>1411.</sup> Hisch. and Ibn Ishāq: [Water] was poured for him.

<sup>1412.</sup> Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, II/2, 78.

<sup>1413.</sup> Ibn Hajar, *Tahdhīb*, IV, 399–401.

Zuhri—‘Ubaydallāh b. ‘Abdallāh—‘Ā’ishah: The Messenger of God was wearing a black cloak (*khamīṣah*)<sup>1414</sup> when his pain became severe. Sometimes he would put it over his face, at times he would put it off, saying, “May God fight the people who took the graves of their prophets as places of worship (*masājid!*)!”, warning his community against such a practice.

Ibn Ḥumayd—Salamah—Ibn Ishāq—Ṣāliḥ b. Kaysān—al-Zuhri—‘Ubaydallāh b. ‘Abdallāh b. Utbah—‘Ā’ishah: The last injunction enjoined by the Messenger of God was that no two religions be left in the Arabian Peninsula. The Messenger of God died on the twelfth of Rabi’ I/June 7, 632, the very day on which he came to Medina as an emigrant,<sup>1415</sup> so he completed a full ten years of his migration.

### *The Disagreements about His Age When He Died*

Some [authorities] state that he was sixty-three years old. Those who state that [are as follows].

Ibn al-Muthannā—Ḥajjāj b. al-Minhāl<sup>1416</sup>—Ḥammād (that is, Ibn Salamah)—Abū Jamrah<sup>1417</sup>—Ibn ‘Abbās: The Messenger of God stayed in Mecca for thirteen years while the revelation came to him and ten years in Medina. He died while he was sixty-three years old.

Ibn al-Muthannā—Ḥajjāj b. al-Minhāl—Ḥammād—Abū Jamrah—his father:<sup>1418</sup> The Messenger of God lived for sixty-three years.

Ibn al-Muthannā—‘Abd al-Wahhāb<sup>1419</sup>—Yaḥyā b. Sa‘īd:<sup>1420</sup> I heard Sa‘īd b. al-Musayyib say, “The revelation came to the Messenger of God while he was forty-three years old. He stayed ten

<sup>1414.</sup> A garment made of cloth woven from wool and silk with two ornamental or colored borders, or a black cloak; worn by older people. Lane, *Lexicon*, s.v. *kh-m-s*.

<sup>1415.</sup> His arrival in Medina was on Monday, the twelfth of Rabi’ I. Balādhuri, *Ansāb*, I, 263.

<sup>1416.</sup> Died ca. 217/832. Ibn Hajar, *Tahdhīb*, II, 206–7.

<sup>1417.</sup> Died ca. 128/745–46. *Ibid.*, X, 431–32.

<sup>1418.</sup> ʻImrān b. ʻIsām died ca. 83/702. *Ibid.*, VIII, 134–35.

<sup>1419.</sup> ‘Abd al-Wahhāb b. ‘Abd al-Hakam died ca. 250/864. *Ibid.*, VI, 447.

<sup>1420.</sup> *Ibid.*, XI, 215–16. For a similar report see Ibn Ishāq, *Kitāb al-Mubtada'*, 114.

years in Mecca, ten years in Medina, and died while he was sixty-three."

Muhammad b. Khalaf al-'Asqalānī<sup>1421</sup>—Ādām<sup>1422</sup>—Hammād b. Salamah—Abū Jamrah al-Dubaghī—Ibn 'Abbās: The Messenger of God was called to his mission when he was forty. He stayed in Mecca for thirteen years while he was receiving revelation and [stayed] in Medina for ten years. He died when he was sixty-three years old.

Āhmad b. 'Abd al-Rahmān b. Wahb<sup>1423</sup>—his uncle 'Abdal-lāh<sup>1424</sup>—Yūnus<sup>1425</sup>—al-Zuhrī—'Urwah—Ā'ishah: The Messenger of God died while he was sixty-three.<sup>1426</sup>

The others state that he was sixty-five. Those who state that [are as follows].

Ziyād b. Ayyūb<sup>1427</sup>—Hushaym<sup>1428</sup>—'Alī b. Zayd<sup>1429</sup>—Yūsuf b. Mihrān<sup>1430</sup>—Ibn 'Abbās: The Prophet died while he was sixty-five.<sup>1431</sup>

Ibn al-Muthannā—Mu'ādh b. Hishām<sup>1432</sup>—his father<sup>1433</sup>—Qatādah<sup>1434</sup>—al-Hasan [al-Baṣrī]—Daghfal (that is, Ibn Han-zalah):<sup>1435</sup> The Prophet died while he was sixty-five.

Yet others state that he was sixty years old. Those who state that [are as follows].

Ibn al-Muthannā — Hajjāj<sup>1436</sup> — Hammād<sup>1437</sup> — 'Amr b. Di-

<sup>1421</sup>. Died in 260/873–74. Ibn Hajar, *Tahdhīb*, IX, 149.

<sup>1422</sup>. Ādām b. Abi Iyās died ca. 220/835. *Ibid.*, I, 196. For a similar report see Ibn Ishqāq, *Kitāb al-Mubtada'*, 114.

<sup>1423</sup>. Died in 264/877–78. Ibn Hajar, *Tahdhīb*, I, 54–56.

<sup>1424</sup>. 'Abdal-lāh b. Wahb. Muslim died in 197/812–13. *Ibid.*, VI, 71–74.

<sup>1425</sup>. Yūnus b. Yazid died in 159/775–76. *Ibid.*, XI, 450–52.

<sup>1426</sup>. See Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, II/2, 82; he considers this report to be the most authentic; Balādhurī, *Ansāb*, I, 579.

<sup>1427</sup>. Died in 252/866. Ibn Hajar, *Tahdhīb*, III, 355; his death date given in the text as A.H. 152 seems to be incorrect because he was born in A.H. 166.

<sup>1428</sup>. Died in 183/799. *Ibid.*, XI, 59–64.

<sup>1429</sup>. Died ca. 129/746–47. *Ibid.*, VIII, 322–24.

<sup>1430</sup>. *Ibid.*, XI, 424–25.

<sup>1431</sup>. See Ibn Sa'd, *Tabaqāt*, II/2, 82.

<sup>1432</sup>. Died in 200/815–16. Ibn Hajar, *Tahdhīb*, X, 196–97.

<sup>1433</sup>. Hishām b. Abi 'Abdal-lāh died ca. 152/769. *Ibid.*, XI, 43–45.

<sup>1434</sup>. Qatādah b. Di'amah died ca. 117/735. *Ibid.*, VIII, 351–56.

<sup>1435</sup>. *Ibid.*, III, 210–11.

<sup>1436</sup>. Hajjāj b. Ibrāhīm died after 213/828. *Ibid.*, II, 195–96.

<sup>1437</sup>. Hammād b. Zayd died in 179/795–96. *Ibid.*, III, 9–11.

nār<sup>1438</sup>—‘Urwah b. al-Zubayr: The Messenger of God was called to his mission while he was forty and died while he was sixty.<sup>1439</sup>

Al-Husayn b. Naṣr—‘Ubaydallāh—Shaybān—Yaḥyā b. Abī Kāthīr<sup>1440</sup>—Abū Salamah:<sup>1441</sup> I have received an account on the authority of [both] ‘Ā’ishah and Ibn ‘Abbās that the Messenger of God remained in Mecca for ten years while the Qur’ān was revealed to him and [remained] in Medina for ten years.

### *The Day and the Month in Which the Messenger of God Died*

Abū Ja’far [al-Ṭabarī]—‘Abd al-Rahmān b. al-Walīd al-Jurjānī—Ahmad b. Abī Ṭaybah—‘Ubaydallāh—Nāfi’—Ibn ‘Umar: The Prophet put Abū Bakr in command of the pilgrimage in the year 9/631 and explained to him its rites. The following year, that is the year 10/632, the Messenger of God made the Farewell Pilgrimage, returned to Medina and died in Rabi’ I.

Ibrāhīm b. Sa’id al-Jawharī<sup>1442</sup>—Mūsā b. Dāwūd<sup>1443</sup>—Ibn Lahī’ah<sup>1444</sup>—Khālid b. Abī ‘Imrān<sup>1445</sup>—Hanash al-Ṣan’ānī<sup>1446</sup>—Ibn ‘Abbās: The Prophet was born on Monday and he received the revelation on Monday. The boycott by Quraysh [of the Banū Hāshim] was lifted on Monday and [the Messenger of God] left Mecca, emigrating to Medina, on Monday. He arrived there on Monday and died on Monday.

[1837] Ahmad b. ‘Uthmān b. Ḥakīm<sup>1447</sup>—‘Abd al-Rahmān b. Sharīk<sup>1448</sup>—his father<sup>1449</sup>—Ibn Ishāq—‘Abdallāh b. Abī Bakr b. Muḥammad b. ‘Amr b. Ḥazm<sup>1450</sup>—his father:<sup>1451</sup> The Messenger

1438. Died ca. 125/742–43. *Ibid.*, VIII, 28–30.

1439. See Ibn Sa’d, *Tabaqāt*, II/2, 81.

1440. Died ca. 129/746–47. Ibn Hajar, *Tahdhīb*, XI, 268.

1441. Died ca. 94/712–13. *Ibid.*, XII, 115–18.

1442. Died ca. 249/863. *Ibid.*, I, 123–25.

1443. Died ca. 216/831. *Ibid.*, X, 342–43.

1444. Died ca. 174/790–91. *Ibid.*, V, 373–79.

1445. Died ca. 129/746–47. *Ibid.*, III, 110–11.

1446. Died in 100/718–19. *Ibid.*, III, 57–58.

1447. Died in 261/874–75. *Ibid.*, I, 61.

1448. Died in 227/841–42. *Ibid.*, VI, 194.

1449. Sharīk b. ‘Abdallāh died ca. 177/793–94. *Ibid.*, IV, 333–37.

1450. Died ca. 135/752–53. *Ibid.*, V, 164–85.

1451. Died ca. 110/728–29. *Ibid.*, XII, 38–40.

of God died on the twelfth of Rabi' I/June 7, 632,<sup>1452</sup> on Monday, and was buried on the night of Wednesday.

Aḥmad b. 'Uthmān [b. Ḥakīm]—'Abd al-Rahmān [b. Sharīk]—his father—Muhammad b. Ishāq—'Abdallāh b. Abī Bakr: Muhammad b. Ishāq went to 'Abdallāh b. Abī Bakr, who asked his wife Fāṭimah to narrate to him what she had heard from 'Amrah bt. 'Abd al-Rahmān. She said, "I heard 'Amrah saying that she had heard 'Ā'ishah saying that the Prophet of God was buried on the night of Wednesday, and that they did not know about it until they heard the sound of the pickaxes."<sup>1453</sup>

1452. Balādhurī, *Ansāb*, I, 568. Gaudefroy-Demombynes, *Mahomet*, 205, on the other hand, states that it must be Monday, the twenty-third of Rabi' I, which corresponds to June 8, 632. According to Haig's *Comparative tables*, the corresponding date given above in the text is correct.

1453. Balādhurī, *Ansāb*, I, 568.



## Bibliography of Cited Works

---

*Book titles are abbreviated by the first word; other abbreviations are indicated in parentheses.*

- 'Abd al-Maqṣūd, 'Abd al-Fattāḥ. *al-Saqīfah wa'l-khilāfah*. Cairo, n.d.
- Abū al-Naṣr, 'Umar. *'Alī wa 'A'ishah*. Cairo: Īsā al-Bābī al-Halabī, 1947.
- al-Afghānī, Sa'īd. *'A'ishah wa'l-siyāsah*. Cairo: Lajnat al-ta'lif wa'l-tarjumah, 1957.
- Andrae, Tor. *Mohammed: The Man and His Faith*. Translated by Theophil Menzel. New York: Harper Torchbooks, 1960.
- Arafat, Walid. "A controversial incident and the related poem in the life of Hassān b. Thābit," *BSOAS* 18 (1955): 197–205.
- . "An interpretation of the different accounts of the visit of the Tamim delegation to the Prophet in A.H. 9," *BSOAS* 18 (1955): 416–25.
- al-Azraqī, Abū al-Walid Muḥammad b. 'Abdallāh. *Akhbār Makkah*. 2 vols. Edited by Rushdī Ṣāliḥ. Mecca: Dār al-thaqāfah, 1385/1965.
- al-Bakrī, Abū 'Ubayd 'Abdallāh. *Mu'jam mā ista'jam*. 4 vols. Edited by Muṣṭafā al-Saqqā. Cairo: Lajnat al-ta'lif wa'l-tarjumah, 1945–51.
- al-Balādhurī, Ahmad b. Yaḥyā. *Ansāb al-ashrāf*. Vol. I. Edited by Muḥammad Ḥamidullāh. Cairo: Dār al-ma'ārif, 1959.
- . *Ansāb al-ashrāf*. Vol. V. Edited by S. D. F. Goitein. Jerusalem: The University Press, 1936.
- Beeston, A. F. *Warfare in Ancient South Arabia, (2nd–3rd Centuries A.D.)*. London: Luzac & Co., 1976.
- Bell, Richard. *The Qur'ān: Translated with a Critical Re-arrangement of the Surahs*. Edinburgh: T. & T. Clark, 1960.
- Bellamy, James. "The mysterious letters of the Koran: Old abbreviations of the *basmalah*," *JAO* 93 (1973): 267–85.

- Blachère, Régis. "L'allocution de Mahomet lors du pèlerinage d'adieu," in *Mélanges Louis Massignon*, I, 223–49. 3 vols. Damascus: Institut Français de Damas, 1956.
- . *Le Coran, traduit de l'arabe*. Paris: Maisonneuve et Larose, 1966.
- . *Introduction au Coran*. 2d ed. Paris: Maisonneuve et Larose, 1977.
- Brockelmann, Carl. *Geschichte der arabischen Litteratur*. 2d ed. and Supplement. Leiden: E. J. Brill, 1943–49. (GAL)
- Buhl, Frants. *Das Leben Muhammeds*. Translated by Hans Schaeder. 2d ed. Heidelberg: Verlag von Quelle, 1955.
- al-Bukhārī, Muḥammad b. Ismā'īl. *Ṣaḥīḥ al-Bukhārī*. 4 vols. Beirut: Dār al-ma'rifah, 1978.
- Burton, John. *The Collection of the Qur'ān*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1977.
- Caetani, Leone. *Annali dell'Islam*. 10 vols. Milan, 1905–26.
- Cambridge History of Arabic Literature*: Vol. I. *Arabic Literature to the End of the Umayyad Period*. Edited by A. F. L. Beeston, T. M. Johnstone, R. B. Serjeant, and G. R. Smith. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1983.
- Cambridge History of Islam*. 2 vols. Edited by P. M. Holt, A. Lambton, and B. Lewis, Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1970.
- Cohen, D. "Un manuscrit en caractères sudarabiques d'une lettre de Muḥammad," in *Comptes rendus des séances du groupe linguistique d'études chamito-sémitiques*, 1970–71. Paris. (Manuscrit)
- Cook, Michael. *Muhammad*. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1983.
- al-Dhahabī, Shams al-Din Muḥammad b. Aḥmad. *al-'Ibar fī khabar man għabar*. Vol. I. Edited by Ḡalāḥ al-Din al-Munajjid. Kuwait: Dā'irat al-maṭbū'āt wa'l-nashr, 1960.
- . *Mizān al-i'tidāl*. Edited by 'Ali M. al-Bijādī. Cairo: Īsā al-Bābī al-Halabī, 1963.
- . *Tadhkirat al-huffāz*. 4 vols. Hyderabad: Dā'irat al-ma'ārif al-'uthmāniyyah, 1955–58.
- Doughty, Charles. *Travels in Arabia Deserta*. London: Jonathan Cape Ltd., 1926.
- Duri, A. A. *Baḥth fī nash'at 'ilm al-ta'rikh 'ind al-'Arab*. Beirut, 1960.
- . *The Rise of Historical Writing Among the Arabs*. Edited and translated by L. Conrad. Princeton: Princeton University Press, 1983. References are to this edition.
- Encyclopaedia Iranica*. Edited by Ehsan Yarshater. London: Routledge & Kegan Paul, 1982–, (EIr)
- Encyclopaedia of Islām*. 1st ed. Leiden: E. J. Brill, 1913–38. (EI<sup>1</sup>)
- . 2d ed. Leiden: E. J. Brill, 1960–, (EI<sup>2</sup>)
- . *Supplement*. Leiden: E. J. Brill, 1938. (EISup)

- Fahd, Toufic. *La divination arabe: Études religieuses, sociologiques et folkloriques sur le milieu natif de l'islam*. Leiden: E. J. Brill, 1966.
- . *Le panthéon de l'Arabie centrale à la veille de l'hégire*. Paris: Librairie Orientaliste Paul Guethner, 1968.
- al-Firuzābādi, Majd al-Din Muhammad b. Ya'qūb. *al-Qāmūs al-muhibīt*. 4 vols. Cairo: al-Maktabah al-tijāriyyah, n.d.
- Freytag, G. *Arabum Proverbia*. 3 vols. Bonn: A. Marcum, 1838–43.
- Gaudefroy-Demombynes, M. *Mahomet*. Paris: Editions Albin Michel, 1969.
- Gibb, H. A. R., and J. Kramers, eds. *Shorter Encyclopaedia of Islam*. Leiden: E. J. Brill, 1953. (*ShEI*)
- Goldziher, Ignaz. *Muslim Studies*. 2 vols. Translated by C. Barber and S. Stern. London: George Allen & Unwin, 1967–71.
- Haig, Sir W. *Comparative Tables of Muhammadan and Christian Dates*. Reprint. Lahore: Muhammad Ashraf, n.d.
- Halm, Heinz. *Die Schia*. Darmstadt: Wissenschaftliche Buchgesellschaft, 1988.
- al-Hamdāni, Abū Muḥammad al-Ḥasan b. ʿAhmad. *Sīfat jazīrat al-‘Arab (Al-Hamdāni's Geographie der Arabischen halbinsel)*. 2 vols. Edited by H. Müller. Leiden: E. J. Brill, 1884–91.
- Ḩamidullāh, Muḥammad. *The Battlefields of the Prophet Muhammad, with maps, illustrations and sketches*. Hyderabad-Deccan, 1392/1973.
- . "al-Īlāf, ou les rapports économico-diplomatiques de la Mecque pré-Islamique," in *Mélanges Louis Massignon*, II, 293–311. 3 vols. Damascus: Institut Français de Damas, 1957.
- . *Majmū'at al-wathā'iq al-siyāsiyyah*. 3d ed. Beirut: Dār al-irshād, 1969.
- al-Ḥarbī. *Kitāb al-manāsik*. Edited by Ḥamad al-Jāsir. Riyad: Dār al-Yamāmah, 1389/1969.
- Hārūn, 'Abd al-Salām, ed. *Nawādir al-makhtūṭāt*. 2d ed. Cairo: Muṣṭafā al-Bābī al-Halabī, 1972–73.
- Hassān b. Thābit. *Dīwān*. 2 vols. Edited by W. Arafat. London: Luzac & Co., 1971.
- Hinz, Walther. *Islamische Masse und Gewichte: Umgerechnet ins metrische System*. Leiden: E. J. Brill, 1970.
- Hisch. Ibn Hishām, *Das Leben Muhammads nach Muhammad b. Ishāq, bearb. v. 'Abd al-Malek b. Hischam*. Edited by F. Wüstenfeld, Göttingen, 1858–60.
- Hitti, Philip. *History of the Arabs: From the Earliest Times to the Present*. 8th ed. London: Macmillan & Co., 1963.
- Ibn 'Abd al-Barr. *al-Iṣṭī'āb fi ma'rīfat al-ashāb*. 4 vols. Edited by 'Alī M. al-Bijādī. Cairo: Nahḍat Miṣr, n.d. [1960].

- Ibn Abī al-Ḥadīd. *Sharḥ nahīj al-balāghah*. 20 vols. Edited by Muḥammad Abū al-Faḍl Ibrāhīm. Cairo: Ḫsā al-Bābī al-Ḥalabī, 1965–67. (*Nahīj al-balāghah*)
- Ibn al-Aṭīr, ‘Izz al-Dīn. *Al-Kāmil fī al-ta’rīkh*. 14 vols. Edited by C. Tornberg. Reprint. Beirut: Dār Ṣādir, 1965–67.
- Ibn Ḥajar al-‘Asqalānī. *al-Īṣābah fī tamyīz al-ṣahābah*. 8 vols. Edited by ‘Alī M. al-Bijādī. Cairo: Nahḍat Miṣr, 1970–72.
- . *Lisān al-mīzān*. 6 vols. Hyderabad: Dā’irat al-ma’ārif al-nizāmiyyah, 1329–31/1911–13.
- . *Tahdhīb al-tahdhīb*. Reprint of Hyderabad edition. 12 vols. Beirut: Dār Ṣādir, 1968.
- Ibn Ḥazm, ‘Alī b. Aḥmad. *Jamharat ansāb al-‘Arab*. Edited by ‘Abd al-Salām Ḥārūn. Cairo: Dār al-ma’ārif, 1982.
- Ibn Isḥāq. *al-Sīrah al-nabawiyah*. 4 vols. Edited by Muṣṭafā al-Saqqā, Ibrāhīm al-Ibyārī, and A. Shalabī. Cairo: Muṣṭafā al-Bābī al-Ḥalabī, 1936. (Ibn Isḥāq or his editor Ibn Hishām, *Sīrah*)
- . *The Life of Muhammad: A translation of [Ibn] Isḥāq’s Sīrat Rasūl Allāh*, with introduction and notes by A. Guillaume. London: Oxford University Press, 1955.
- . *Sīrat Ibn Isḥāq al-musammā bi-kitāb al-mubtada’ wa’l-mab’ath wa’l-maghāzī*. Edited by Muḥammad Ḥamidullāh. Rabat: Ma’had al-dirāsāt wa’l-abhāth, 1976. (*Kitāb al-mubtada’*) It is also edited by Suhayl Zakkār and entitled *Kitāb al-siyar wa’l-maghāzī*. Damascus: Dār al-fikr, 1978.
- Ibn Kathīr, Abū al-Fidā’ Ismā’īl. *al-Sīrah a-nabawiyah*. 4 vols. Edited by Muṣṭafā ‘Abd al-Wāhiḍ. Cairo: Ḫsā al-Bābī al-Ḥalabī, 1385/1966.
- Ibn Manzūr *Lisān al-‘Arab*. 15 vols. Beirut: Dār Ṣādir, 1955–56.
- Ibn al-Mujāwir. *Ṣifat bilād al-Yaman*. 2 vols. Edited by O. Löfgren. Leiden: E. J. Brill, 1951–54.
- (Pseudo-) Ibn Qutaybah, ‘Abdallāh b. Muslim. *al-Imāmah wa’l-siyāsah*. 2 vols. Edited by Ṭāhā al-Zaynī. Cairo: al-Ḥalabī, 1967.
- Ibn Sa’d, Muḥammad. *al-Ṭabaqāt al-kabīr*. 9 vols. Edited by E. Sachau and others. Leiden: E. J. Brill, 1917–40.
- Ibn Shabbah, Abū Zayd ‘Umar. *Ta’rīkh al-Madīnah al-munawwarah*. 4 vols. Edited by Fahīm M. Shaltūt. Jiddah: Dār al-Isfahānī, 1393/1973.
- Irving, T. B. *The Qur’ān: The First American Version*. Translation and commentary. Brattleboro, Vermont: Amana Books, 1985.
- Jafri, S. H. M. *The Origins and Early Development of Shi'a Islam*. London: Longman, 1979.
- al-Jāsir, Ḥamad. *Fī sarāt Ghāmid wa-Zahrān*. Riyad: Dār al-Yamāmah, 1391/1971. (*Sarāt*)

- \_\_\_\_\_. *Fi shimāl gharb al-Jazīrah*. Riyad: Dār al-Yamāmah, 1390/1970. (*Shimāl*)
- al-Kalbī, Hishām b. Muḥammad. *Ǧamharat an-Nasab: Das Genealogische Werk des Hišām al-Kalbī*, von Werner Caskel. Leiden: E. J. Brill, 1966.
- al-Khaṭīb al-Baghdādī. *Ta’rīkh Baghdađ*. 14 vols. Cairo: Maktabat al-Khanjī, 1931.
- al-Kulaynī, Abū Ja’far Muḥammad b. Ya’qūb. *al-Uṣūl min al-kāfi*. 2 vols. Edited by ‘Alī Akbar al-Ghifārī. Tehran: Dār al-kutub al-islāmiyyah, 1388/1968.
- Lammens, Henri. “Le triumvirat Aboü Bakr, ‘Omar et Aboü ‘Obaida,” *MFOB* 4 (1910): 113–44.
- Lane, Edward. *Arabic-English Lexicon*. Reprint, London: The Islamic Texts Society, 1984.
- Lewis, Bernard. *The Muslim Discovery of Europe*. London: Weidenfeld & Nicolson, 1982.
- \_\_\_\_\_, and P. M. Holt, eds. *Historians of the Middle East*. London: Oxford University Press, 1964.
- Lings, Martin. *Muhammad, His Life Based on the Earliest Sources*. London: The Islamic Texts Society & George Allen & Unwin, 1984.
- Loth, O. “Tabarī’s Korancommentar,” *ZDMG* 35 (1881): 588–628.
- Maghniyyah, Muḥammad Jawād. *al-Fiqh ‘alā al-madhāhib al-khamṣah*. 3d ed. Beirut: Dār al-‘ilm, 1967.
- al-Mas’ūdī, Abū al-Ḥasan ‘Alī b. al-Husayn. *Murūj al-dhahab*. 4 vols. Edited by Muḥammad Muhyī al-Dīn. Cairo: al-Maktabah al-tijāriyyah, 1964–67.
- \_\_\_\_\_. *al-Tanbīh wa'l-ishrāf*. Beirut: Dār al-turāth, 1968.
- al-Maydānī, Aḥmad b. Muḥammad. *Majma’ al-amthāl*. 2d ed. 2 vols. Edited by Muḥammad Muhyī al-Dīn. Cairo: al-Maktabah al-tijāriyyah, 1959.
- Mirzā, Āghā Muḥammad Sultān. *al-Balāgh al-mubīn* (in Urdu). 2 vols. Delhi, 1947.
- Momen, Moojan. *An Introduction to Shi'i Islam: The History and Doctrines of Twelver Shi'ism*. New Haven: Yale University Press, 1985. (*Shi'i Islam*)
- Monroe, James. “The poetry of the *sīrah* literature,” in *Cambridge History of Arabic Literature*, I, 368–73.
- Musil, Alois. *Arabia Deserta: A Topographical Itinerary*. New York: American Geographical Society, 1927.
- \_\_\_\_\_. *The Northern Hegāz: A Topographical Itinerary*. New York: American Geographical Society, 1926.

- . *Northern Negd: A Topographical Itinerary*. New York: American Geographical Society, 1928.
- Muslim b. al-Hajjāj. *Šaḥīḥ Muslim*. 8 parts in 4 vols. Cairo: Maṭba'at Muḥammad 'Alī, n.d.
- Nöldeke, T. *Geschichte des Qorâns*. Göttingen: Verlag der Dieterich, 1860.
- , and F. Schwally. *Geschichte des Qorâns*. 3 vols. Leipzig, 1909–38.
- Paret, Rudi. *Der Koran, Übersetzung*. Stuttgart: W. Kohlhammer Verlag, 1966.
- Philby, John. *Arabian Highlands*. Ithaca, New York: Cornell University Press, 1952.
- . *The Heart of Arabia: A Record of Travel and Exploration*. 2 vols. London: Constable & Co., 1922–23.
- . *The Land of Midian*. London: Ernest Benn Ltd., 1957.
- . *A Pilgrim in Arabia*. London: Robert Hale Ltd., 1946.
- al-Qādī al-Nu'mān, Abū Ḥanifah b. Muḥammad b. Ḥayyūn al-Tamīmī. *al-Urjūzah al-mukhtārah*. Edited with comments by Ismail K. Poonawala. Montreal: Institute of Islamic Studies, McGill University, and Beirut: al-Maktab al-tijārī, 1970.
- al-Qurṭubī, Abū 'Abdallāh Muḥammad b. Aḥmad. *al-Jāmi' li-aḥkām al-Qur'ān*. 20 vols. Cairo: Dār al-kātib, 1967.
- Rodinson, Maxime. *Mahomet*. 2d ed. Paris: Éditions du Seuil, 1968. References are to this edition.
- . *Mohammed*. Translated by Anne Carter. New York: Random House, 1974.
- Ryckmans, G. *Les religions arabes préislamiques*. 2d ed. Louvain: Publications Universitaires, 1951.
- al-Sam'ānī, 'Abd al-Karīm b. Muḥammad. *al-Ansāb*. 13 vols. Edited by 'Abd al-Rahmān al-Yamānī. Hyderabad: Dā'irat al-ma'ārif al-'uthmāniyyah, 1962–82.
- Serjeant, R. B. "Early Arabic Prose," in *Cambridge History of Arabic Literature*, I, 114–53.
- . "Professor A. Guillaume's translation of the *Sīrah*," *BSOAS* 21 (1958): 1–14. (Translation.)
- Sezgin, Fuat. *Geschichte des arabischen Schrifttums*. Leiden: E. J. Brill, 1967–. (GAS)
- Shahid, Irfan. *Byzantium and the Arabs in the Fourth Century*. Washington, D.C.: Dumbarton Oaks Research Library, 1984.
- . "Pre-Islamic Arabia," in *Cambridge History of Islam*, I, 3–29.
- . *Rome and the Arabs: A Prolegomenon to the Study of Byzantium*.

- tium and the Arabs.* Washington, D.C.: Dumbarton Oaks Research Library, 1984.
- al-Shahrastānī, Muḥammad 'Abd al-Karīm. *al-Milal wa'l-nihāl*. Edited by 'Abd al-'Azīz al-Wakīl. Cairo: al-Ḥalābi, 1968.
- Shoufani, Elias. *al-Riddah and the Muslim Conquest of Arabia*. Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 1973.
- al-Ṭabarī, Abū Ja'far Muḥammad. *Tafsīr al-Ṭabarī*. 2d ed. 16 vols. published to date. Edited by Maḥmūd M. Shākir. Cairo: Dār al-ma'ārif, 1969.
- . *Ta'rīkh al-rusul wa'l-mulūk*. 15 vols. Edited by M. J. de Goeje, et al. Leiden: E. J. Brill, 1879–1901. (References to variant manuscript readings are to this edition.)
- . *Ta'rīkh al-Ṭabarī: Ta'rīkh al-rusul wa'l-mulūk*. 10 vols. Edited by Muḥammad Abū al-Faḍl Ibrāhīm. Cairo: Dār al-ma'ārif, 1960–69. (Cairo)
- . *al-Muntakhab min kitāb dhayl*. Edited by Muḥammad Abū al-Faḍl Ibrāhīm in *Dhuyūl ta'rīkh al-Ṭabarī: Ṣilat ta'rīkh al-Ṭabarī*, by 'Arib b. Sa'd al-Qurṭubī; *Takmilat ta'rīkh al-Ṭabarī*, by Muḥammad b. 'Abd al-Malik al-Hamadānī; *al-Muntakhab min kitāb dhayl*, by Muḥammad b. Jarir al-Ṭabarī. Cairo: Dār al-ma'ārif, n.d. (*Dhuyūl*).
- al-Ṭabārsī, Aḥmad b. 'Alī. *al-Iḥtijāj*. 2 vols. Edited by Muḥammad al-Khwānsārī. Najaf: Maṭābī' al-Nu'mān, 1966.
- . *Majma' al-bayān fī tafsīr al-Qur'ān*. 5 vols. Edited by H. al-Rasūlī and F. al-Ṭabāṭabā'ī. Tehran: Sharikat al-ma'ārif al-islāmiyyah, 1379/1959.
- al-Ṭabarī, Muḥammad b. 'Abdallāh. *Mishkāt al-maṣābiḥ*. Edited by Muḥammad al-Albānī. 3 vols. Damascus: al-Maktab al-islāmī, 1961–62.
- . *Mishkat al-Masabih*. Translated by James Robson. 2 vols. Lahore: Muhammad Ashraf, 1975.
- al-Ṭūsī, Abū Ja'far Muḥammad. *al-Tibyān fī tafsīr al-Qur'ān*. 10 vols. Najaf: al-Maṭba'ah al-'ilmīyyah, 1957–63.
- al-Wāḥidī, Abū al-Ḥasan 'Alī. *Aṣbāb al-nuzūl*. Beirut: Dār al-hilāl, 1983.
- al-Wāqīdī, Muḥammad b. 'Umar. *Kitāb al-maghāzī*. 3 vols. Edited by J. Marsden Jones. London: Oxford University Press, 1966.
- Watt, M. Montgomery. *Bell's Introduction to the Qur'ān*. Completely revised and enlarged. Edinburgh: Edinburgh University Press, 1970.
- . "The materials used by Ibn Ishāq," in *Historians of the Middle East*, 23–34.
- . *Muhammad at Mecca*. Oxford: Clarendon Press, 1953.
- . *Muhammad at Medina*. Oxford: Clarendon Press, 1956.

- Wellhausen, Julius. *Skizzen und Vorarbeiten*. 6 vols. Berlin: Verlag von Georg Reimer, 1884–99.
- al-Wohaibi, Abdullah. *The Northern Hijaz in the Writings of the Arab Geographers*, 800–1150. Beirut: al-Risālah, 1973.
- al-Ya'qūbī, Ahmād b. Abī Ya'qūb. *Ta'rīkh al-Ya'qūbī*. 3 vols. Edited by Muhammād Ṣādiq Bahr al-'Ulūm. Najaf: al-Maktabah al-Haydarīyyah, 1384/1964.
- Yāqūt b. 'Abdallāh al-Hamawī. *Mu'jam al-buldān*. 5 vols. Beirut: Dār Ṣādir, 1984.

# Index

All proper names (except *Messenger of God, Prophet*), Arabic words (*italics*), places [*P*], transmitters [\*], and tribes [*T*] are included. The Arabic article al and the abbreviations b. (for ibn, son) and bt. (for bint, daughter) have been ignored for purposes of alphabetization.

## A

- Aaron, see Hārūn  
Abān al-‘Aṭṭār b. Yazīd al-Baṣrī [\*] 2,  
20, 131  
Abān b. Sa‘īd 147  
Abān b. Yazīd al-‘Aṭṭār al-Baṣrī [\*], see  
Abān al-‘Aṭṭār  
‘Abbād b. ‘Abbād [\*] 189  
‘Abbād b. ‘Abdallāh b. al-Zubayr [\*]  
183, 203  
‘Abbād b. Ḥubaysh al-Kūfi [\*] 63, 64  
‘Abbād b. Ḥunayf 61  
‘Abbād b. Mansūr [\*] 153  
‘Abbād b. Rāshid [\*] 189  
‘Abbād b. Tamīm [\*] 181  
al-‘Abbās b. ‘Abd al-Muṭṭalib 9, 11, 97,  
112, 135, 140, 143, 175, 176, 196,  
199, 202, 204; [\*] 11  
‘Abbās b. Mirdās al-Sulamī 28, 33, 72  
al-‘Abbās b. Sa‘d al-Anṣārī al-Khaṣrajī  
[\*] 149  
al-‘Abbās b. Sahl b. Sa‘d al-Sā‘īdī al-  
Anṣārī [\*] 53  
‘Abbāsid 146  
'abd al-'aṣā (slave of the club) 175  
‘Abd al-‘Azīz b. Abān al-Umawī al-  
Kūfi [\*] 78  
‘Abd al-‘Azīz b. Siyāh [\*] 195  
‘Abd al-Dār b. Quṣayy (Banū) [T] 10,  
32, 198  
‘Abd al-Ḥamīd b. Bayān [\*] 125  
‘Abd al-Majīd b. Sahl b. ‘Abd al-  
Rahmān b. ‘Awf [\*] 181  
‘Abd al-Majīd b. Suhayl [\*] 181  
‘Abd al-Malīk b. al-İsbahānī [\*] 173  
‘Abd al-Malīk b. Marwān (Umayyad  
caliph) 131, 144  
‘Abd Manāf b. Quṣayy (Banū) [T] 198  
‘Abd al-Masīḥ al-Kindī, see al-‘Aqīb  
‘Abd al-Muṭṭalib 12, 46, 176  
‘Abd al-Muṭṭalib (Banū) [T] 28  
‘Abd al-Qays [T] 94, 98; deputation of,  
94  
‘Abd al-Rahmān, see Makhshī  
‘Abd al-Rahmān b. ‘Abdallāh [\*], see  
al-Mas’ūdī  
‘Abd al-Rahmān b. Abī Bakr 110, 183  
‘Abd al-Rahmān b. ‘Awf 25, 77, 107,  
123, 143, 189, 190, 193  
‘Abd al-Rahmān b. al-Hārith b.  
‘Ayyāsh b. Abī Rabī‘ah [\*] 163

- 'Abd al-Rahmān b. Ḥassān 147  
 'Abd al-Rahmān b. Jābir [\*] 8, 12  
 'Abd al-Rahmān b. Mahdi [\*] 159, 161  
 'Abd al-Rahmān b. Qārib 24  
 'Abd al-Rahmān b. Qāsim [\*] 109  
 'Abd al-Rahmān b. Sharīk [\*] 208  
 'Abd al-Rahmān b. 'Uthmān b. Āmir,  
     Abū Qubāfah 'Uthmān 131  
 'Abd al-Rahmān b. al-Walid al-Jurjāni  
     [\*] 208  
 'Abd al-Rahmān b. Yazid b. Jābir [\*]  
     155  
 'Abd al-Razzāq b. Hammām [\*] 196  
 'Abd al-Salām b. Jubayr [\*] 152  
 'Abd al-Şamad b. 'Abd al-Wārith b.  
     Sa'īd al-'Anbarī al-Baṣṭri 1–2, 20,  
     131  
 'Abd al-Wahhāb b. 'Abd al-Ḥakam [\*]  
     206  
 'Abd al-Wārith b. 'Abd al-Şamad b.  
     'Abd al-Wārith [\*] 1, 20, 131  
 'Abd Yālil b. 'Amr 42–43  
 'Abd b. Zam'ah 130  
 'Abdallāh, see Makhshī  
 'Abdallāh (Prophet's son) 127  
 'Abdallāh b. 'Abbās [\*], see Ibn 'Abbās  
 'Abdallāh b. 'Abd al-Madān 84  
 'Abdallāh b. 'Abd al-Rahmān b.  
     Ma'mar b. Ḥazm [\*] 111  
 'Abdallāh b. Abī Bakr b. Muḥammad  
     b. 'Amr b. Ḥazm al-Anṣārī 204,  
     [\*] 8, 13, 35, 47, 53, 67, 74, 82,  
     85, 88, 90, 92, 106, 108, 116, 118,  
     122, 124, 189, 202, 208  
 'Abdallāh b. Abī Ḥadrād al-Aslāmī,  
     see Ibn Abī Ḥadrād  
 'Abdallāh b. Abī Najīh [\*], see Ibn Abī  
     Najīh  
 'Abdallāh b. Abī Ṭalḥah 13  
 'Abdallāh b. 'Amr b. al-'Āṣ 34; [\*] 26,  
     168  
 'Abdallāh b. 'Atik [\*] 120  
 'Abdallāh b. Busr 160  
 'Abdallāh b. Dārim (Banū) [T] 67  
 'Abdallah b. Dāwūd al-Khuraybī [\*]  
     143  
 'Abdallāh b. al-Ḥārith b. Nawfal b. al-  
     Ḥārith b. 'Abd al-Muṭṭalib 34,  
     205; [\*] 205  
 'Abdallāh b. Ḥunayn [\*] 107  
 'Abdallāh b. Imrān [\*] 157  
 'Abdallāh b. Jadd b. Qays 48  
 'Abdallāh b. Ja'far 124  
 'Abdallāh b. Jaḥsh 119  
 'Abdallāh b. Ka'b b. Mālik [\*] 175, 176  
 'Abdallāh b. Mas'ūd 56; [\*] 173  
 'Abdallāh b. Mawhib [\*] 161  
 'Abdallāh b. al-Mubārak [\*] 155  
 'Abdallāh b. Muḡaffal 49  
 'Abdallāh b. Nabtal 50  
 'Abdallāh b. Qunay' b. Uhbañ b.  
     Tha'labah b. Rabi'ah 17  
 'Abdallāh b. Qurayz (or Qurād) al-  
     Ziyādī 84  
 'Abdallāh b. Qusayt [\*] 170  
 'Abdallāh b. Rawāḥah 120, 122, 125  
 'Abdallāh b. Sa'd (Banū) [T] 119  
 'Abdallāh b. Sa'd b. Abī Sarḥ 148  
 'Abdallāh b. Sa'īd b. Thābit b. Jidh al-  
     Anṣārī [\*] 107, 164  
 'Abdallāh b. Suhayl b. 'Amr 32  
 'Abdallāh b. Ubayy b. Salūl 36, 50, 73  
 'Abdallāh b. 'Umar b. 'Ali [\*] 168  
 'Abdallāh b. 'Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb [\*],  
     see Ibn 'Umar  
 'Abdallāh b. Unays 120–21; [\*] 121  
 'Abdallāh b. Wahb [\*] 172, 175, 207  
 'Abdallāh b. Wahb (of Banū al-'Anbar)  
     122  
 'Abdallāh b. Yazid al-Anṣārī 124  
 'Abdallāh b. Zayd al-Khaṣraji 76  
 'Abdallāh b. Ziyād [\*] 125  
 'Abdallāh b. al-Zubayr 9, 143  
 Abhā [P] 20  
 'Abhalah, see al-Aswad Dhū al-  
     Khimār  
 Abi Bakr b. Kilāb (Banū) [T] 136, 138  
 Ābil al-Zayt [P] 164  
 al-'Ablā [P] 123  
 al-abnā' (descendants of the Persian  
     soldiers in Yemen) 167  
 'Abs [T], deputation of 98

- 'Abs b. Rifā'ah (of Sulaym) [T] 28  
 Abū 'Abd al-Rāhmān, see Ibn 'Umar  
 Abū 'Abdallāh, see Salmān al-Fārisī  
 Abū 'Aḥmad Muḥammad b. 'Abdallāh  
 (b. al-Zubayr) al-Zubayrī [\*] 157  
 Abū Amāmah al-Bāhili 79  
 Abū 'Āmir (an opponent of the  
 Prophet) 61  
 Abū 'Āmir al-Ash'arī 17, 19  
 Abū 'Āmir al-Rāhib 98  
 Abū 'Aqil Bashir b. 'Uqbah al-Najī al-  
 Dawraqī [\*] 159  
 Abū al-'Āṣ b. al-Rabi'ah 128  
 Abū 'Awānah [\*] 187  
 Abū Ayyūb [\*] 185  
 Abū Bakr b. 'Abdallāh b. Abī Sabrah  
 [\*] 150, 153, 154, 180, 181  
 Abū Bakr 'Atiq b. Abī Quhāfah al-  
 Ṣiddiq 3, 9, 21, 24, 25, 36, 43–45,  
 77, 78, 89, 119, 128–30, 145, 150,  
 160, 163, 172–73, 176, 177, 179,  
 180, 181–88, 189, 192–201, 202,  
 208  
 Abū Bakr b. Muḥammad b. 'Amr b.  
 Hazm [\*] 208  
 Abū Bakr b. 'Ubaydallāh (or 'Abdallāh)  
 b. Abī Mulaykah [\*] 182  
 Abū Bakrah Nufay' b. Masrūh 147  
 Abū Burdah 'Āmir b. Abī Mūsā al-  
 Ash'arī [\*] 17  
 Abū Burdah b. Niyār 148  
 Abū Dāmrāh, see Abū Dumayrah  
 Abū Dāwūd Sulaymān b. Dāwūd al-  
 Tayālī [\*] 156, 160  
 Abū Dharr al-Gifārī 55–56  
 Abū Dujānah al-Sā'idi al-Anṣarī 12,  
 109  
 Abū Dumayrah (Abū Dāmrāh) Wāḥ b.  
 Shirāz 146  
 Abū Faṣil 197  
 Abū Ḥabibah b. al-Az'ar 61  
 Abū Ḥālah b. Zurārah 127  
 Abū Ḥamzah [\*] 126  
 Abū al-Ḥasan, see 'Ali b. Abī Ṭalib  
 Abū Hishām al-Rifā'i [\*] 180  
 Abū Hurayrah [\*] 24, 184  
 Abū Ḥusayn b. 'Abdallāh b.  
 Dumayrah 145  
 Abū Ishaq, 'Amr b. 'Abdallāh al-Sābi'i  
 al-Kūfi [\*] 12, 90, 124, 125, 126,  
 153, 179  
 Abū Ishaq al-Hamdāni [\*] 124  
 Abū Ja'far, see al-Ṭabarī  
 Abū Ja'far Muḥammad b. 'Ali b.  
 Husayn al-Bāqir (fifth Shi'i imām)  
 [\*] 7, 35, 124, 203  
 Abū Jamrah [\*] 206  
 Abū Jī'āl 103  
 Abū Juhayfah Wahb b. 'Abdallāh al-  
 Suwā'i [\*] 160  
 Abū Kabshah Sulaym 145  
 Abū Khaythamah 50, 52  
 Abū Kurayb Muḥammad b. al-'Alā' b.  
 Kurayb al-Hamdāni al-Kūfi [\*] 89,  
 94, 124, 175, 179  
 Abū Lahab 128  
 Abū Laylā 'Abd al-Rāhmān b. Ka'b 49  
 Abū Lubābah b. 'Abd al-Mundhir [T]  
 61  
 Abū Mājid al-Asadī [\*] 166  
 Abū Malīk b. 'Urwah b. Mas'ūd 46  
 Abū Mālik Sa'd b. Ṭāriq al-Kūfi al-  
 Ashja'i [\*] 106  
 Abū Ma'shar, Ziyād b. Kulayb al-  
 Tamīmī al-Kūfi [\*] 78, 185  
 Abū Masrūh, see Anasah  
 Abū Miḥjan b. Ḥabib (or Ḥubayb) b.  
 'Amr b. 'Umayr al-Thaqafī 30  
 Abū Mikhnaf 189; [\*] 168, 184  
 Abū Mu'awiyah [\*] 180  
 Abū Muḥammad al-Qurashī [\*] 200  
 Abū Mūsā al-Ash'arī 17; [\*] 17, 18,  
 156, 160  
 Abū Musarrah, see Anasah  
 Abū Muwayhibah [\*] 107, 145, 163,  
 168, 169  
 Abū al-Nadr, Sālim b. Umayyah [\*]  
 172  
 Abū Naḍrah al-Mundhir b. Mālik al-  
 Baṣrī [\*] 159  
 Abū Quhāfah 'Uthmān, see 'Abd al-  
 Rāhmān b. 'Uthmān

- Abū Qutaybah [\*] 198  
 Abū Rāfi' 121  
 Abū Rāfi' (Prophet's freedman), see  
     Ruwayfī  
 Abū Rāfi' (Salmā's husband) 39  
 Abū Rimthah [\*] 158, 161  
 Abū Ruhm b. 'Abd al-'Uzzā 135  
 Abū Ruhm al-Ghifārī 35  
 Abū Sabrah b. Abī Ruhm 135  
 Abū Sa'id al-Khudrī 111, 159; [\*] 35,  
     36, 111, 172  
 Abū Sa'id b. al-Mu'allā, someone from  
     the family of [\*] 172  
 Abū Salamah [\*] 208  
 Abū Salamah b. 'Abd al-Asad 119, 132  
 Abū Ṣalīḥ al-Dirārī [\*] 196  
 Abū Ṣalīḥ Mizān al-Baṣrī [\*] 139  
 Abū Shammās b. 'Amr 102  
 Abū Sufyān [\*] 161  
 Abū Sufyān b. Ḥarb 10, 20, 23, 32,  
     45–46, 116, 198–200  
 Abū Sufyān b. al-Ḥārith b. 'Abd al-  
     Muṭṭalib 9, 12  
 Abū Ṣurad, see Zuhayr b. Ṣurad  
 Abū Ṭalḥah (husband of Umm  
     Sulaym) 13, 15, 159  
 Abū Ṭalḥah, Zayd b. Sahl 203–4  
 Abū al-Tufayl [\*] 158  
 Abū 'Ubaydah b. Ḥudhayfah b. al-  
     Yamān [\*] 155–56  
 Abū 'Ubaydah b. al-Jarrāḥ 119, 123,  
     163, 186, 193, 204  
 Abū 'Ubaydah b. Muḥammad b.  
     'Ammār b. Yāsir [\*] 34  
 Abū Ūhayḥah Sa'id b. al-'Āṣ al-Akbar  
     143  
 Abū 'Umayr 92  
 Abū Umayyah b. 'Amr 23  
 Abū Usāmah Ḥammād b. Usāmah b.  
     Zayd al-Qurashi al-Kūfī 17, 94  
 Abū Usayd al-Anṣārī al-Sā'idi 136  
 Abū Wabr b. 'Adī b. Umayyah b. al-  
     Dubayb 101  
 Abū Wahb, see Jadd  
 Abū Wajzah Yazid b. 'Ubayd al-Sa'dī  
     [\*] 19, 29, 31, 39  
 Abū Zayd b. 'Amr 101–3  
 Abū Zayd 'Amr b. Akhṭab al-Anṣārī  
     [\*] 158–59  
 Abū Zukayr [\*], see Yaḥyā b.  
     Muhammad  
     al-Abwā' [P] 116  
 Abyssinia (al-Habashah) [P] 17, 32,  
     128, 132, 143, 178  
 Abyssinian 145  
 Ādām b. Abī Iyās [\*] 181, 207  
 Ādām b. Rabi'ah, see Ibn Rabi'ah  
     al-'Aḍb (Prophet's sword) 154  
     al-'Aḍbā' (Prophet's camel) 151  
     adhān (call to prayer) 76  
     adhillān (two lowly ones) 199  
     'Adhiyyah bt. Jābir, Umm Sharīk, see  
         Ghaziyyah  
 Adhrūḥ [P] 58  
     'Adī b. Ḥātim al-Ṭā'i 63–67, 98, 108  
     'Adī b. Qays al-Sahmī 33  
     'Adnān 3, 70  
 ahl al-dhimmah (non-Muslims having  
     a written scripture) 39  
 ahl al-fiqh (people of knowledge) 190  
 ahl al-hadīth (people of tradition) 189  
 Ahlāf [T] 3, 15, 41, 43  
 Aḥmad (Prophet's name) 156  
 Aḥmad b. 'Abd al-Rahmān b. Wahb [\*]  
     172, 175, 206–7  
 Aḥmad b. Abī Ṭaybah [\*] 208  
 Aḥmad b. Ḥammād al-Dūlābī [\*] 174  
 Aḥmad b. al-Muṣaffaḍ al-Qurashi [\*]  
     77  
 Aḥmad b. 'Uthmān b. 'Uthmān b.  
     Hakīm [\*] 208, 209  
 al-Aḥmar b. al-Ḥārith, see Dhū al-  
     Khimār Subay'  
 al-Aḥnaf (Banū) [T] 101  
 al-Aḥsiyah [P] 165  
 Aḥwāz [P] 144  
 al-Aḥzāb [P], expedition of 125; battle  
     of 132  
 'Ā'ishah bt. Abī Bakr al-Ṣiddīq 109,  
     122, 125, 126, 127, 128–30, 131,  
     137, 147, 152, 166, 169–70, 173,  
     181, 182, 183, 184, 196, 208; [\*]

- 109, 129, 176, 177, 178, 179, 180,  
181, 182, 196, 203, 204, 206, 207  
'ajājah (cloud of smoke) 199  
al-'Ajājah (name of a horse) 101  
ajal (the time in which God has  
eternally decreed the end of life,  
death) 173  
al-Ajda' b. Mālik 92  
al-'Ajlān (Banū) [T] 61  
'Ajwah (Prophet's milch sheep) 153  
al-'Alā' (son of al-Hārith from the  
Banū Jusham) 17  
al-'Alā' b. al-Hādramī 95, 108, 147  
al-'Alā' b. Hārithah al-Thaqafī 32  
Aleppo [P] 142  
Alexandria [P] 137  
'Ali b. Abī Tālib, Abū al-Hasan 9, 12,  
17, 29, 35, 44, 51, 62, 63, 65, 77,  
78, 89, 90, 103, 108, 110, 111,  
119, 128, 143, 144, 147, 154, 157,  
170, 174, 175, 176, 178, 183, 186–  
89, 192, 194–99, 200, 202, 205,  
[\*] 157  
'Ali b. Ḥusayn b. 'Ali (fourth Shi'i  
imām) [\*] 203  
'Ali b. Muṣṭajid [\*] 106, 168, 169  
'Ali b. Muslim [\*] 189  
'Ali b. Naṣr b. 'Ali b. Ṣahbān b. Abī al-  
Jahdāmi al-Baṣrī [\*] 1, 20, 131  
'Ali b. Saḥb b. Qādim (Ibn Mūsā al-  
Harashī) [\*] 14  
'Ali b. Zayd [\*] 207  
al-'Āliyyah bt. Zābyān 136, 138  
'Alqamah b. 'Ulātħah 98  
Amamah bt. Abī al-'Āṣ b. al-Rabī'ah  
128  
Amāmah bt. Ḥamzah 141  
al-A'mash [\*] 180  
'āmil (agent) 87  
Āminah (Prophet's mother) 9  
Āminah bt. Abī Sufyān 24  
amīr (deputy, ruler) 95, 186  
'Āmir [\*] 94  
'Āmir (Banū) [T] 5, 76, 119, 152  
'Āmir b. Abī Mūsā al-Ash'arī [\*], see  
Abū Burdah 'Āmir  
'Āmir b. Lu'ayy (Banū) [T] 33  
'Āmir b. Rabī'ah, see Ibn Rabī'ah b.  
al-Hārith  
'Āmir b. Ṣa'sa'ah (Banū) [T] 138;  
deputation of 103–5  
'Āmir b. al-Tufayl 103–5  
'Āmir b. Wahb b. al-Aswad b. Mas'ūd  
[\*] 14  
al-'Āmiriyah 137  
'Ammār b. Yāsir 57, 189  
'Amr b. 'Abdallāh al-Ḍababī 84  
'Amr b. al-Aḥtam 68, 73  
'Amr b. Akhṭab b. Rīfā'ah [\*], see Abū  
Zayd 'Amr  
'Amr b. 'Ali [\*] 177  
'Amr b. 'Āmir of Banū 'Āmir [T] 5  
'Amr b. al-'Āṣ 17, 25, 39, 123  
'Amr b. 'Awf (Banū) [T] 50, 56, 61  
'Amr b. Dīnār [\*] 207  
'Amr b. Ḥazm (Banū) [T] 54  
'Amr b. Ḥazm al-Anṣārī 85, 87, 165  
'Amr b. Ḥurayth [\*] 195  
'Amr b. Khafājī 168  
'Amr b. Ma'dikarib 90–92  
'Amr b. al-Mahjūb al-'Āmirī 168  
'Amr b. Murrah b. 'Abdallāh al-Murādī  
al-Kūfi [\*] 155  
'Amr b. Sa'id 144  
'Amr b. Shu'ayb b. Muhammad b.  
'Abdallāh b. 'Amr b. al-'Āṣ [\*] 21,  
26, 31  
'Amr b. 'Ubayd b. Bāb (Ibn Kaysān al-  
Tamīmī) [\*] 51  
'Amr b. Umayyah al-Damrī 42, 59  
'Amr b. Umayyah b. Wahb b. Mu'attib  
b. Mālik 23  
'Amr of Julandā [T] 39  
'Amrah bt. 'Abd al-Rahmān b. Sa'd b.  
Zurārah [\*] 204, 209  
'Amrah bt. Maṭar 122  
'Amrah bt. Yazid al-Ğifāriyyah, see  
'Amrah bt. Yazid al-Kilābiyyah  
'Amrah bt. Yazid al-Kilābiyyah (or  
al-Ğifāriyyah) 136, 137,  
139  
'Amwās [P], plague of 21

- Anas b. Mālik [\*] 13, 14, 59, 158, 159, 181, 200  
 Anasah, Abū Masrūḥ (or Abū Musarrāḥ) 145  
 'Anazah (Banū) [T] 16  
 al-'Anbar (Banū) [T] 122  
 al-'Anbarī 140  
 Anṣār (Helpers) 9, 11, 12, 15, 19, 26, 28, 31, 36–37, 49, 62, 95, 105, 123, 130, 177, 186, 188, 192–95  
 Anṣārī 12, 13, 53, 79  
 Anṣāris 15  
 al-'Ansī 167  
 al-'Aqabah [P] 54, 77, 78; first pledge of 8, 54; second pledge of 36, 54, 148  
 al-'Aqabah (seaport) [P], gulf of 58  
 al-'Āqib ('Abd al-Masīḥ al-Kindī), deputation of 98  
 al-'Āqib (Prophet's name) 156  
 'Aqil b. Abī Ṭālib 9, 31  
 al-Aqra' b. 'Abdallāh al-Ḥimyari 167  
 al-Aqra' b. Ḥabis al-Tamīmī 28, 30, 32, 33, 35, 67–68, 72, 122  
 Arab 11, 18, 27, 47, 64, 66, 74, 163, 194  
 'Arabah bt. Jābir, see Ghaziyyah  
 Arabia [P] 8, 38, 40, 46, 47, 52, 58, 96, 99, 106, 144; central 58, 108; eastern 95; Petraea 152; southern 76, 115  
 Arabian [P] 44; north 1, 40; Peninsula 90, 175, 206; plateau 145; southern 19, 58, 65, 66, 82, 94, 98; southwestern 73  
 Arabs 15, 38, 39, 42, 43, 48, 104, 113, 140, 145–46, 152, 164, 167, 193, 194; Northern 3, 70  
 'Arafah ('Arafāt) [P] 2, 79, 114, 115; day of 79  
 'Arafāt, see 'Arafah  
 arāk (tree from which siwāk is made) 126  
 Arbad b. Qays (or Rabī'ah) b. Mālik b. Ja'far 103–5  
 'arḍūhu (lit. "width," thus "compensation," "substitute") 87  
 'Ārid b. al-Hunayd, see 'Uṣ  
 al-'Aris (Prophet's milch camel) 151  
 al-'Arj [P] 77  
 al-Arqam b. Shurahbil [\*] 179  
 'arrāfah (sorceress) 167  
 al-'Āṣ b. Munabbih 154  
 Asad b. 'Abd al-'Uzzā b. Quṣayy (Banū) [T] 19, 108, 119; deputation of 40  
 Asbat b. Naṣr al-Hamdānī [\*] 77  
 Aṣfar, see Ṣefō  
 Aṣfar (Banū) [T], see Byzantines  
 al-Asghar [P] 38  
 al-Asħ'ar, Nabit b. Udad b. Zayd b. Yashjub 19  
 Ash'ariyyūn [T] 19  
 al-Ash'ath b. Qays al-Kindī 97, 138  
 Ashja' [T] 56; shaykh of [\*] 106  
 'Āsim b. 'Adī 61  
 'Āsim b. 'Umar b. Qatādah al-Anṣārī [\*] 8, 12, 36, 47, 53, 59, 67, 103, 122  
 'Asir [P] 39  
 Aslam, see Ruwayfi  
 Asmā' bt. Abī Bakr al-Ṣiddiq 2  
 Asmā' bt. Mālik 122  
 Asmā' bt. al-Nu'mān al-Kindī 136, 137  
 Asmā' bt. 'Umays 79, 177, 178  
 al-Aswad [\*] 180  
 al-Aswad Dhū al-Khimār 'Abhalah b. Ka'b al-'Ansī 90, 108, 164–67  
 al-Aswad b. Maś'ūd 46  
 'Atā' [\*] 170  
 'Atā' b. Markabūd 123  
 'Atiq b. Abī Quhāfah, see Abū Bakr 'Atiq  
 'Atiq (or Utayyiq) b. 'Ābid (or 'Ā'idh) b. 'Abdallāh b. 'Umar 127  
 Atlāl (or Iṭlāl, Prophet's milch sheep), 153  
 Aṭrāf (or Iṭrāf, Prophet's milch sheep), 153  
 'Attāb b. Asid b. Abī al-Īṣ b. Umayyah b. 'Abd Shams 8, 21, 38  
 'Attāb b. Mālik (Banū) [T] 41  
 'Attāb b. Ziyād [\*] 155  
 'awāñu (helpless like domestic animals) 113

- 'Awānah [\*] 199  
*awāq* (pl. of *ūqiyah*, measure of weight) 148  
'Awf b. 'Āmir of Banū 'Āmir [T] 5  
'Awf b. al-Khazraj (Banū) [T] 50, 202  
'Awf al-Zirqānī 168  
Awfā 17  
al-Awlāj [P] 100  
al-Aws [T] 11  
Aws b. 'Awf 41, 43  
Aws b. Khawlī 202, 205  
Aws b. Qayzī 54  
Awtās [P] 4, 16, 17  
Aylah [P] 58  
Ayman b. 'Ubayd b. Zayd, see Ayman b. 'Umm Ayman  
Ayman b. 'Umm Ayman (or b. 'Ubayd) 9, 12, 19, 153  
*Ayyām al-tashrīq* (three days following the Day of Immolation, i.e., the tenth day of Dhū al-Hijjah) 110  
Ayyūb b. 'Abd al-Rahmān b. Abī Sa'ṣāh [\*] 181  
Ayyūb b. Bashir [\*] 171  
al-Azd [T] 89; clans of 30, 39; deputation of 88  
Azd Sarāt [T] 123, 145  
'Azrah b. Thābit [\*] 158  
Azraqī 199
- B**
- Bābil, see Babylon  
Babylon (Bābil) [P] 67  
Bādiyah bt. Ghaylān b. Salamah 25  
Badr [P] 9, 10, 13, 14, 33, 48, 54, 76, 116, 117, 125, 128, 132, 145, 148, 154, 192, 202; battle of, 14, 116, 121  
Badrī 132  
Baghdād [P] 3, 24  
al-Baghūm (Prophet's milch camel) 151  
al-Bahī (or Rāfi') b. Abi Rāfi' 143–44  
Bahrā' (Banū) [T], deputation of 76  
Bahrān [P] 116  
Bahrāni 76  
Bahrat al-Rughā' [P] 21  
al-Bahrayn [P] 95, 108  
Baḥzaj 61  
Ba'jah b. Zayd 102  
Bajila [T] 123  
al-Bakkā' (Banū) [T], deputation of, 76  
Bakr (Banū) [T] 119  
Bakrī, Abū 'Ubayd 'Abdallāh 2, 4, 16, 20, 21, 22, 26, 43, 46, 50, 51, 56, 60, 70, 72, 77, 99, 100, 102, 106, 109, 110, 116, 118, 119, 120, 121, 152, 203  
Balādhurī, Ahmad b. Yahyā 2, 3, 9, 17, 18, 23, 31, 36, 47, 49, 51, 54, 56, 61, 62, 75, 78, 105, 110, 111, 115, 116, 118, 128, 132, 133, 134, 135, 136, 137, 138, 139, 140, 142, 143, 144, 145, 146, 147, 148, 149, 150, 151, 152, 153, 154, 155, 156, 157, 161, 163, 166, 168, 169, 172, 174, 176, 178, 179, 180, 181, 183, 184, 185, 189, 192, 193, 194, 198, 199, 201, 203, 204, 205, 206, 207  
Balhārīth [T], see al-Hārīth (Banū)  
Balhārīth [T], see al-Hārīth b. Ka'b  
Balhārīth of Khazraj [T], see al-Hārīth b. al-Khazraj  
Bali [T] 65, 100; deputation of 40  
al-Balqā' [P] 163  
al-Baqī' (cemetery) [P] 168, 169, 204  
al-Bāqir, Muḥammad [\*], see Abū Ja'far Muḥammad  
*baqīyyah* (remainder, survival) 66  
al-Barā' b. Aws b. Khālid 39  
al-Barā' b. 'Āzib b. al-Hārīth al-Awsī al-Ansārī [\*] 12, 90  
al-Barā'ah, see *Sūrat al-Barā'ah*  
Barakah (Prophet's milch sheep) 153  
Bardha' b. Zayd 102  
Barrah bt. 'Abd al-Muṭṭalib 132  
Barrah bt. al-Hārīth, see Juwayriyyah  
Bashir b. Sa'd 119  
Bashir b. 'Uqbah al-Nāji [\*], see Abū 'Aqīl  
**basmalah** (the invocation 'In the

- basmalah* (*continued*)  
 name of God, the Compassionate,  
 the Merciful") 15
- al-Baṣrah [P] 13, 51, 119, 143  
*battār* (Prophet's sword) 153  
 Battle of the Camel 12, 107  
 Bayāḍah al-Anṣārī (Banū) [T] 108  
*al-baydā'* (Prophet's bow) 154  
*bayḍah* (egg, metaphorically, a  
 woman) 27  
*al-baydah* (Prophet's coat of mail) 155  
 Bāzān 124  
 Bedouin 2, 3, 28, 36, 149  
 Bedouins 31, 40, 49, 151, 152  
 Beirut [P] 74  
 biblical 58  
 Bijād (from the Banū Sa'd b. Bakr) 18  
 Bijād b. 'Uthmān 61  
*bi'l-ma'rūf* (in accordance with  
 custom) 113  
 Bint Jundub 141  
 Bint Khārijah 182  
 Bi'r Ma'ünah [P] 103  
 Bishah [P] 72  
 Bishr b. al-Waddāh, Abū al-Haytham  
 [\*] 159  
 Budayl b. Waraqā' al-Khuza'ī 20  
 Bukhārī, Muḥammad b. Ismā'il 37, 51,  
 59, 75, 86, 172, 174, 177, 197  
 Burayd b. 'Abdallāh b. Abi Burdah b.  
 Abī Mūsā al-Ash'arī [\*] 17  
 Buraydah b. Sufyān al-Aslāmi [\*] 56  
*burd<sup>n</sup> ḥibarat<sup>n</sup>* (striped cloak) 203  
 al-Burdah (Prophet's milch camel) 152  
 Buṣrā [P] 58  
 Bustān of Ibn Āmir [P] 119  
 Buwāt [P] 116  
 Byzantine 64, 74, 99; [P] 46, 73  
 Byzantines (Banū Asfar, Rhomaeans)  
 47, 48, 50, 57, 73  
 Byzantium [P] 27
- C  
 Caesar (Qayṣar) 64, 67, 99  
 Cairo [P] 46
- Christian 64, 66, 75, 87, 94, 128, 133  
 Christian slave (of 'Uthmān b.  
 'Abdallāh) 15  
 Christianity 66, 75, 87, 133  
 Christians 5, 64; of John the Baptist 5  
 Coptic 39
- D  
 al-Dabbā' (Prophet's milch camel) 151,  
 152  
*al-dabbāb* (testudo) 20  
 Dādhawayhi al-İştakhri 167  
 Daghfal [\*], see Ibn Ḥanżalah  
*dahāqīn* (landowners) 143  
 al-Dahhāk b. 'Abd al-Rahmān al-  
 Ash'arī 17  
 al-Dahhāk b. Fayrūz b. al-Daylāmī [\*]  
 165  
 al-Dahhāk b. Humurah [\*] 161  
 al-Dahhāk b. Makhlad b. al-Dahhāk  
 al-Shaybānī [\*] 158  
*dāhiyyah* (one who gets himself out  
 of the most hopeless difficulty;  
 clever fellow) 15  
 Dahnā [P] 26, 30  
 Damascus [P] 46, 58, 70, 142  
 Damrah (Banū) [T] 118  
 Dār al-hijrah [P], see Medina  
*daraba 'alā yadihi* (to strike a bargain)  
 188  
 al-Daris (a horse) 148  
 Dāriyyūn [T], delegation of 41  
 al-Dārūm [P] 163  
*dawāt* (inkpot) 175  
 Daws [T] 123; land of 145  
 Dāwūd b. 'Abdallāh al-Awdī [\*] 187  
 Dāwūd b. 'Urwah b. Mas'ūd 24  
 al-Dayqah [P] 22  
 Dhahabī, Shams al-Dīn Muḥammad  
 2, 9, 12, 27, 79  
 Dhāt Aṭlāḥ [P] 122  
*dhāt al-fuḍūl*; (Prophet's coat of mail)  
 155  
*dhāt al-janb* (pleurisy) 178  
 Dhāt al-Riqā' of Nakhl [P] 116

- Dhāt al-Salāsil [P] 123  
 Dhāt al-'Usayr [P] 124  
 Dhibāb [P], see Dhubāb  
 Dhū Amarr [P] 116  
 Dhū Awān [P] 60  
*Dhū al-faqār* (Prophet's sword) 154  
 Dhū al-Harm [P] 46  
 Dhū al-Jadr [P] 152  
*Dhū al-Kalā' Sumayfi'* 167  
 Dhū al-Khalāṣah (an idol) 123  
 Dhū al-Khimār 'Abhalah b. Ka'b, see  
     al-Aswad  
 Dhū al-Khimār Subay' (al-Āḥmar) b.  
     al-Ḥārith b. Mālik 4  
 Dhū al-Khuwayṣirah al-Tamīmī 34,  
     35  
 Dhū al-Majāz [P] 2  
 Dhū Murrān [P] 168  
 Dhū al-Nūn (a spirit, angel) 167  
 Dhū Qarad [P] 117  
 Dhū al-Qaṣṣāh [P] 119  
 Dhū Ru'ayn [T] and [P] 74  
 Dhū Ṣan'ā' [P], day of 91  
 Dhū Zūd 168  
 Dhū Zulaym, Ḥawshab 167  
 Dhubāb (or Dhibāb) [P] 50  
 Dihyah b. Khalifah al-Kalbī 99–100,  
     138  
 Dimām b. Tha'labah 80–81  
 Dirār b. al-Azwar al-Asādī 168  
 Dubā'ah bt. 'Āmir b. Qurṭ 140  
 Dubay'ah b. Zayd (Banū) [T] 61  
 Dubayb (Banū) [T] 100–102  
*al-qubūr* (part of a testudo) 20  
*al-Dulay'* [T] 100  
 Duldul (Prophet's mule) 14, 150  
 Dūmah, see Dūmat al-Jandal  
 Dūmat al-Jandal (Dūmah) [P] 58, 116  
 Durayd b. al-Ṣimmaḥ 3, 4, 5, 6, 16, 17  
 Durrah (or Ruqayyah) bt. Abī Salānah  
     b. 'Abd al-Asad 132
- F**
- Elath [P] 58  
 Emigrants, see Muḥājirūn  
 Esau 48  
 Euphrates [P] 40  
 Ezion-geber [P] 58
- F**
- al-Faḍāfiḍ [P] 100  
 Faḍak (al-Ḥā'it) [P] 119, 196  
 Faḍālah 146  
 al-Faḍl b. al-'Abbās b. 'Abd al-Muṭṭalib  
     9, 169, 170, 180, 202, 205; [\*] 170  
*fāhiṣah* (indecency, immoral act) 113  
 Fahm [T] 30  
 Fals (or Fulus, or Fils, or al-Fils, an  
     idol) 62, 153  
*faltah* (unexpected event without  
     deliberation) 189, 192  
*faqīh* (jurisprudent) 11, 15  
 Fardah [P] 106  
 Farewell Pilgrimage, see *ḥajjat al-*  
     *wadā'*  
 al-Fāri'ah bt. 'Uqayl (or 'Aqil) 25  
*farīdah* (obligatory act) 191  
 Fārs [P] 145  
 Farwah b. 'Amr al-Judhāmī 146, 149,  
     150  
 Farwah b. Muṣayk al-Murādī 92–94,  
     165; [\*] 92, 94  
*fasād* (disorder) 194  
 Fātimah (Prophet's daughter) 64, 110,  
     119, 128, 187, 189, 192, 196, 197  
 Fātimah (wife of 'Abdallāh b. Abī  
     Bakr) [\*] 209  
 Fātimah bt. al-Ḍaḥḥāk, see al-  
     Kilābiyyah  
 Fātimah bt. Muḥammad b. 'Umrāh  
     [\*] 204  
 Fātimah bt. Sara', see Fātimah bt.  
     Shurayḥ  
 Fātimah bt. Shurayḥ (or Sara') 139  
 Fātimah bt. Zā'idah b. al-Āṣamm 127  
 Fayd [P] 106  
 Fayfā' al-Fahlatayn [P] 103  
 Fayrūz al-Daylāmī 123, 167
- E**
- Egypt 58; conquest of 38  
 Egyptian 115

Fazārah [Banū] [T] 28, 108, 120, 148;  
deputation of 77  
*fiddah* [Prophet's coat of mail] 155  
*Fiḍḍah* [Prophet's mule] 150  
Fīhr [T] 71  
Fils, see Fals  
al-Fils (shrine), see Fals  
Firās b. Hābis 122  
al-Firāsiyyah bt. Suwayd b. 'Amr b.  
Tha'labah 24  
Firūzābādī, Majd al-Din Muhammad  
5, 16, 18, 26, 149, 150, 153, 155,  
160  
*fitan* (pl. of *fitnah*, dissensions) 168,  
182  
*fitnah* (dissension) 199  
Fulus, see Fals  
al-Fuqaymiyyah Umayyah 24  
Furāt b. Ḥayyān al-'Ijli 168  
al-Furu' [P] 116

## G

Gabriel (Jibrīl) 11, 134  
*ghābah* (thicket) 151  
al-Ghābah [P], expedition of 117; day  
of 118  
Ghālib b. 'Abdallāh al-Kalbī 119, 122  
Ghāmid [T], deputation of 88  
Ghāmidi of Yemen [T] 16  
al-Ghamrah [P] 119  
al-Gharūr [b.] al-Mundhir b. al-  
Nu'mān b. al-Mundhir 95  
Ghassān [T] 27; deputation of 88  
Ghassānid 27  
Ghassānids 27  
Ghaṭafān [T] 56, 98, 100, 119  
Ghaylān b. Jāmi' [\*] 161  
Ghaylān b. Salamah 20  
*ghazawāt* (pl. of *ghazwah*) 62, 115  
Ghaziyah (or 'Adhiyyah or 'Arabah)  
bt. Jābir, Umm Sharik 135, 136,  
139  
*ghazwah* (a military expedition in  
which the Prophet himself  
participated) 62

Ghifār [Banū] [T] 50, 51  
Ghiyarah b. 'Awf b. Thaqīf [Banū] [T]  
15  
*ghusl* (washing the whole body before  
prayer) 87

## H

*Hā Mim* (*sūrah 46*) 14  
al-Habashah, see Abyssinia  
al-Habbāb b. Yazīd, see al-Ḥutāt  
Ḥabib b. Abī Thābit [\*] 195  
Ḥabib al-Salāmāni 87  
Hābis 33  
*hadd* (punishment of acts forbidden or  
sanctioned by punishments in the  
*Qur'ān*) 191  
*hadīth* (Tradition, an account of what  
the Prophet said or did, or his  
tacit approval) 191  
Hadramawt [P] 108, 139; [T] 98  
al-Ḥadramī b. 'Āmir al-Asādī [\*] 166  
Hafṣah bt. 'Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb 127,  
131, 170, 179  
al-Hā'iṭ [P], see Fadak  
Hajar (al-Ḥasā) [P] 95  
*hajj* (pilgrimage) 79, 86, 109  
*al-hajj al-akbar* (the greater  
pilgrimage) 86  
*al-hajj al-asghar* (the lesser  
pilgrimage) 86  
Hajjāj b. Ibrāhim [\*] 207  
Hajjāj b. al-Minhāl [\*] 206  
*hajjat al-balāgh* (Pilgrimage for  
Conveying the Message), see  
*hajjat al-wadā'*  
*hajjat al-Islām*, see *hajjat al-wadā'*  
*hajjat al-tamām* (Pilgrimage of  
Completion or Perfection of  
Religion), see *hajjat al-wadā'*  
*hajjat al-wadā'* (Farewell Pilgrimage,  
or *hajjat al-balāgh* or *hajjat al-  
Islām* or *hajjat al-tamām*) 108,  
115, 124, 125, 162, 164  
al-Ḥakam b. Abī al-'Āṣ 168  
al-Ḥakam b. 'Amr b. Wahb b. Mu'attib

- Hakim b. Hizām 32  
 Halab [P] 142  
 Halyah [P] 72  
 Hamdān [T] 74, 90, 92, 94  
 Hamdāni, Abū Muḥammad al-Ḥasan  
 2, 16, 20, 21, 38, 74  
*ḥamīya al-waṭīṣ* (proverb for fierce  
 fighting) 11  
 Hammād b. Salamah b. Dīnār al-Baṣrī  
 (Ibn Salamah) [\*] 13, 161, 198,  
 206, 207  
 Hammād b. Usāmah b. Zayd al-  
 Qurashī al-Kūfi [\*], see Abū  
 Usāmah  
 Hammād b. Wāqid [\*] 159  
 Hammād b. Zayd [\*] 159, 207  
 Hamra' al-Asad [P] 116  
 Hamzah b. 'Abd al-Muṭalib 118, 132  
 Hanash al-Šan'āni [\*] 208  
 Hanifah (Banū) [T] 58, 95–97;  
 deputation of 95–97  
 al-Hannā' (or al-Hasnā'), Prophet's  
 milch camel) 151  
 Hanżalah (Banū) [T] 108  
 Hanżalah b. Dārim 122  
 Hanżalah al-Usayyidi 148  
 Harām (Banū) [T] 136  
*haram* (sacred territory) 95  
 Harbī 38, 109, 110, 116, 154  
 al-Harīs (Banū) [T], see al-Harīsh  
 al-Harīsh or al-Harīs (Banū) [T] 150  
 al-Hārith (Banū) 43, 119, 167  
 al-Hārith b. 'Abd Kulāl 74  
 al-Hārith b. 'Abd al-Malik b. 'Abdallāh  
 al-Ashja'i [\*] 170  
 al-Hārith b. Abī Shīmr al-Ghassānī  
 27, 63, 153  
 al-Hārith b. Aws, see Ibn Hunaydah  
 al-Hārith b. Hishām b. al-Mughirah  
 32  
 al-Hārith b. Ka'b or Balhārith b. Ka'b  
 (Banū) [T] 82–83, 84; deputation  
 of 84–85  
 al-Hārith b. al-Khazraj or Balhārith of  
 Khazraj (Banū) [T] 9, 69, 130, 182  
 al-Hārith b. Muḥammad b. Abī  
 Usāmah al-Tamīmī [\*] 78, 117,  
 123, 124, 126, 148, 149, 150, 151,  
 152, 153, 154, 155  
 Ḥarīz b. 'Uthmān [\*] 160  
 al-Ḥarrāh, see Ḥarrāh of al-Rajlā'  
 Ḥarrāh of al-Rajlā' (al-Ḥarrāh) [P] 99  
 Ḥarrān [P], Sabaeans of 5  
 Ḥarrat Laylā [P] 102  
 Ḥārūn (Aaron) 51  
 Ḥārūn b. Ishaq b. Muḥammad al-  
 Hamdāni al-Kūfi [\*] 12  
 Ḥārūn b. Muḥammad [\*] 151–152  
 al-Ḥasā [P], see Ḥajar  
 Hasan b. 'Ali b. Abī Tālib 65, 110  
 al-Ḥasan al-Baṣrī [\*] 51, 94, 207  
 al-Ḥasan b. Dīnār Abū Sa'īd al-Baṣrī  
 [\*] 94  
*ḥaṣbah*, night of (the fourteenth night  
 of Dhū al-Ḥijjah) 110  
 ḥāshim, see ḥāshim b. 'Abd Manāf  
 ḥāshim (Banū) [T] 19, 196  
 ḥāshim b. 'Abd Manāf 19, 33  
 ḥāshimites 199  
 al-Ḥāshir (Prophet's name) 156  
 al-Hasnā' (Prophet's milch camel), see  
 al-Hannā'  
 Hassān b. 'Abd al-Malik 59  
 Hassān b. Mallah al-Ḏubaybī 100–102  
 Hassān b. Thābit al-Anṣārī 37, 67, 70–  
 72, 147  
*al-hatf* (or *al-khif*, Prophet's sword)  
 153  
 Hātīm al-Tā'i 63–65  
 Hawāzīn [T] 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10,  
 12, 14, 29, 119; captives of 21, 26,  
 29; clans of 1, 103; delegations of  
 21, 27, 30; deputations of 27  
 Hawrān [P] 36, 58  
 Hawshab Dhū Zulaym 167  
 Helpers, see Anṣār  
 Heraclius, 98  
 Hibāl 166–67  
 al-Hijāz [P] 20, 48, 56, 90, 115, 118,  
 119; jurists of [\*] 168, 178, 184  
 al-Hijr [P] 52, 53  
*hijrah* (emigration of the Prophet  
 from Mecca to Medina in A.D.  
 622), 13, 37, 42, 95, 193

- Hilāl (Banū) [T] 3, 4  
 Hilāl b. Umayyah 50, 62  
*himān* (sanctuary) 89  
 Himṣ (Homs) 142  
 Himyar [T] 76; kings of 73–74  
 Himyārī 74  
 Himyārite 74  
 Hind, see Umm Hāni' bt. Abī Ṭālib  
 Hind bt. Abī Ḥālah 127  
 Hind bt. Abī Umayyah, see Umm Salamah  
 Hind bt. 'Atiq b. 'Ābid 127  
 al-Ḥirah [P] 67  
 Hishām [\*] 199  
 Hishām b. Abī 'Abdallāh [\*] 207  
 Hishām b. 'Amr 33  
 Hishām b. Muḥammad b. al-Sā'ib al-Kalbi [\*], see al-Kalbī  
 Hishām b. 'Urwah b. al-Zubayr [\*] 2, 20, 164–65  
 Hismā [P] 100, 120  
 ḥiṣn 33  
 Holy Mosque [P] 78  
 Homs, see Hims  
 House [P], see Ka'bāh  
 al-Ḥubāb b. al-Mundhir al-Anṣārī 22, 188, 194  
 al-Ḥudaybiyah [P] 11; expedition of 117; treaty of 32; truce of 98, 117  
 Hudhayl (Banū) [T] 2, 22, 117, 119  
*ḥullah Yamāniyyah* (Yemeni dress) 173  
 Humayd b. 'Abd al-Rahmān al-Himyārī 187  
 Humayd b. Abī Humayd al-Ṭawil [\*] 160  
 Humayd b. al-Rabi' al-Kharrāz [\*] 170  
 Humayr [P] 89  
*ḥums* (people observing religious taboos, especially the Quraysh) 140  
 al-Hunayd b. 'Uṣ (or 'Ārid) 100  
 Hunayn [P] 2, 3, 10, 17, 21; battle of 1, 2, 4, 19, 20, 35, 68, 117; booty of 26, 72; captives of 20, 21, 29, 31; day of 12, 13, 14, 34, 154; expedition of 117; valley of 8  
 al-Huraqah [T] 123  
 Ḥurayth b. al-Mu'allā [\*] 167  
 Ḥusayn b. 'Abdallāh b. Ḍumayrah 146  
 Ḥusayn b. 'Abdallāh b. 'Ubaydallāh b. 'Abbās [\*] 201  
 al-Ḥusayn b. 'Alī b. Abī Ṭālib 7, 65, 110  
 al-Ḥusayn b. Naṣr [\*] 208  
 Hushaym [\*] 207  
 al-Ḥušiyyah [P] 65  
 al-Ḥutāt (or al-Ḥabhab or al-Ḥuthāt) b. Yazid 68  
 al-Ḥuthāt b. Yazid, see al-Ḥutāt  
 Huwayṭib b. 'Abd al-'Uzzā b. Abī Qays 32
- I
- Ibn 'Abbās, 'Abdallāh 80, 81, 170, 175, 201, 202; [\*] 80, 139, 153, 165, 170, 174, 175, 179, 189, 201–2, 207, 208  
 Ibn 'Abd al-Barr 76, 90, 194  
 Ibn 'Abdallāh b. 'Abd al-Ḥakam [\*] 138  
 Ibn Abī 'Adi, Muḥammad b. Ibrāhīm [\*] 155, 157, 160  
 Ibn Abī al-'Awjā' al-Sulamī 119  
 Ibn Abī Dhī'b, Muḥammad b. 'Abd al-Rahmān [\*] 151  
 Ibn Abī al-Hadid 189  
 Ibn Abī Ḥadrād, 'Abdallāh 6, 7, 123  
 Ibn Abī Najīḥ, 'Abdallāh [\*] 110, 112, 114, 161  
 Ibn Abī Sabrah [\*], see Abū Bakr b. 'Abdallāh  
 Ibn Al-Aswad b. Mas'ūd 24  
 Ibn al-Aṭhir, Izz al-Dīn 2, 3, 10, 27, 40, 41, 43, 87, 88, 90, 92, 93, 94, 95, 97, 98, 104, 105, 107, 108, 111, 118, 127, 130, 132, 134, 136, 138, 139, 140, 148, 149, 153, 154, 159  
 Ibn Dhi al-Lihyah 168  
 Ibn Durayd b. al-Ṣimmaḥ 17  
 Ibn al-Ḥād, Yazid [\*] 181  
 Ibn Ḥajar al-'Asqalānī 1, 2, 3, 8, 9, 12, 13, 14, 15, 17, 19, 21, 24, 26, 27,

- 34, 35, 36, 47, 51, 53, 56, 59, 63, 77, 78, 79, 89, 94, 98, 106, 107, 109, 110, 111, 114, 117, 121, 124, 125, 129, 132, 134, 138, 139, 148, 149, 150, 151, 152, 153, 155, 156, 157, 158, 159, 160, 161, 163, 164, 165, 168, 169, 170, 171, 174, 175, 176, 177, 178, 179, 180, 181, 182, 183, 184, 185, 187, 189, 195, 196, 198, 201, 202, 205, 206, 207, 208
- Ibn Hanzalah, Daghfāl [\*] 207
- Ibn Hazm 3, 5, 10, 15, 16, 19, 22, 23, 28, 29, 30, 32, 33, 38, 40, 41, 48, 50, 53, 56, 61, 65, 67, 70, 71, 73, 76, 77, 79, 82, 85, 88, 90, 92, 94, 95, 98, 105, 119
- Ibn Hishām 9, 11, 14, 17, 22, 23, 24, 26, 27, 31, 32, 33, 34, 37, 38, 41, 45, 46, 49, 51, 52, 53, 58, 59, 62, 65, 68, 69, 70, 72, 89, 91, 98, 101, 103, 105, 109, 116, 118, 127, 132, 133, 135, 136, 137, 138, 140, 144, 151, 167, 170, 172, 199
- Ibn Humayd, Muḥammad [\*] 3, 6, 7, 8, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 18, 19, 20, 21, 24, 26, 29, 31, 34, 35, 36, 37, 41, 42, 45, 47, 51, 53, 56, 59, 64, 67, 73, 79, 82, 85, 88, 90, 92, 94, 95, 96, 97, 98, 103, 105, 109, 110, 111, 112, 114, 116, 118, 121, 122, 126, 163, 168, 169, 171, 172, 176, 177, 178, 179, 181, 182, 183, 184, 185, 186, 194, 200, 201, 202, 203, 204, 205, 206
- Ibn Hunaydah (al-Hārith b. Aws) 16
- Ibn Iṣhāq, Muḥammad 3, 4, 5, 8, 9, 10, 15, 18, 19, 20, 23, 24, 25, 26, 28, 29, 30, 31, 32, 33, 34, 35, 36, 38, 41, 42, 43, 45, 46, 47, 48, 49, 51, 54, 55, 56, 57, 65, 66, 67, 68, 69, 70, 72, 73, 75, 78, 80, 82, 83, 84, 85, 86, 87, 88, 91, 92, 93, 94, 95, 96, 97, 99, 100, 101, 102, 103, 104, 105, 108, 110, 111, 114, 116, 118, 119, 120, 121, 122, 123, 127, 128, 131, 135, 138, 140, 144, 156, 168, 169, 170, 175, 178, 179, 181, 182, 183, 184, 185, 189, 190, 191, 192, 193, 194, 200, 201, 202, 203, 204, 205; [\*] 3, 6, 7, 8, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 18, 19, 20, 21, 24, 26, 29, 31, 34, 35, 36, 37, 41, 42, 45, 47, 49, 51, 53, 56, 59, 64, 67, 73, 79, 82, 85, 88, 90, 92, 94, 95, 96, 97, 98, 99, 103, 105, 106, 108, 109, 110, 111, 112, 114, 116, 118, 121, 122, 123, 124, 163, 169, 171, 176, 177, 178, 179, 181, 182, 183, 184, 200, 201, 202, 203, 205, 206, 208, 209
- Ibn Jābir b. al-Kurdī al-Wāsiṭī [\*] 161
- Ibn al-Jarr [\*] 198
- Ibn al-Kalbī, see al-Kalbī
- Ibn Kathīr 125, 127, 136, 138, 139, 140, 142, 143, 145, 146, 147, 148, 154
- Ibn Kaysān al-Tamīmī [\*], see 'Amr b. 'Ubayd
- Ibn Ladh'ah, see Rabī'ah b. Rufay'
- Ibn Lahī'ah [\*] 208
- Ibn Manzūr 4, 63, 66, 75, 106, 113
- Ibn Mawhib [\*], see 'Abdallāh b. Mawhib
- Ibn Mighwal [\*], see Mālik b. Mighwal
- Ibn Mujāwir 113
- Ibn al-Muqaddamī, Muḥammad b. Abi Bakr [\*] 158
- Ibn Mūsā al-Harashi [\*], see Sa'id b. al-Sahl
- Ibn al-Musayyib [\*], see Sa'id b. al-Musayyib
- Ibn Mušaymašah al-Jubayri 168
- Ibn Al-Muthannā, Muḥammad [\*] 63, 124, 155, 156, 157, 158, 159, 160, 161, 206, 207
- Ibn Nāfi' [\*] 161
- Ibn Qutaybah 187
- Ibn Rabī'ah b. al-Hārith b. 'Abd al-Muṭṭalib, Ādām or 'Āmir or Iyās 112
- Ibn Sa'd, Ibrāhīm al-Zuhri [\*] 156, 164, 181
- Ibn Sa'd, Muḥammad 2, 3, 6, 7, 8, 9, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 17, 18, 19, 20, 21, 23, 24, 25, 26, 27, 28, 32, 33,

**Ibn Sa'd, Muhammad (continued)**

34, 35, 37, 38, 39, 40, 41, 42, 43,  
 45, 46, 48, 49, 50, 51, 52, 53, 54,  
 56, 59, 61, 62, 63, 68, 69, 74, 76,  
 79, 80, 82, 84, 85, 87, 88, 89, 90,  
 92, 94, 95, 97, 98, 99, 100, 103,  
 104, 105, 106, 108, 112, 114, 115,  
 116, 118, 119, 121, 127, 128, 131,  
 132, 133, 134, 135, 136, 137, 138,  
 139, 140, 141, 142, 143, 145, 146,  
 147, 148, 149, 150, 151, 152, 153,  
 154, 155, 157, 158, 159, 160, 161,  
 163, 168, 169, 170, 171, 172, 173,  
 174, 175, 176, 177, 178, 179, 180,  
 181, 182, 183, 184, 185, 188, 196,  
 200, 203, 204, 205, 207, 208; [\*]  
 117, 123, 124, 125, 126, 148, 149,  
 150, 151, 152, 153, 154, 155

**Ibn Sa'id**, see 'Amr b. Sa'id

**Ibn Sa'id** [\*], see 'Ubaydallâh b. Sa'id

**Ibn Salamah** [\*], see Hammâd b.

Salamah

**Ibn Shabbâh** 35, 41, 42, 44, 45, 50, 68,  
 69, 72, 73, 80, 97, 104, 106, 107,  
 156, 158, 159, 161, 168, 169, 190,  
 196, 199

**Ibn Shihâb al-Zuhri** [\*], see al-Zuhri

**Ibn 'Umar** [\*], see al-Wâqîdi

**Ibn 'Umar, Abû 'Abd al-Rahmân**

'Abdallâh 29, 125, 126; [\*] 28, 125

**Ibn Umm Ayman**, see Ayman

**Ibn Umm Hakam** bt. Abî Sufyân 14

**Ibn 'Uyaynah**, Sufyân [\*] 175

**Ibn Wâki'** [\*] 180

**Ibrâhîm** [\*], see Ibn Nâfi'

**Ibrâhîm**, see Ruwayfî

**Ibrâhîm** (Prophet's son) 39, 137

**Ibrâhîm** b. 'Abdallâh [\*] 153

**Ibrâhîm** b. Sa'd b. Ibrâhîm al-Zuhri [\*],  
 see Ibn Sa'd

**Ibrâhîm** b. Sa'id al-Jawhari [\*] 208

**Ibrâhîm** b. Wathîmah b. Mâlik [\*] 39

**Ibrâhîm** b. Yûsuf [\*] 89

**Idâm** [P], valley of 123

**ifrâd** (performance of *hajj* alone) 109

**ihrâm** (assuming the state of holiness  
 for the pilgrimage) 110, 203

**al-'Ijlân** (Banû) [T] 195

**Ikrimah** (freedman of Ibn 'Abbâs) [\*]

203

**Ikrimah** b. Khâlid b. al-'Âs [\*] 153,

181, 201

**Ilâj** (Banû) [T] 42

**Ilbâ' b.** Abîmar al-Yashkûrî al-Bâsrî [\*]

158

**imâm** (Shî'i) 7, 9, 125

**imâms** 154

**'Imrân** b. 'Isâm [\*] 206

**Indians** 84

**Iraq** [P] 106, 124

**Iraqi** 20, 164

**al-'Is** [P] 118

**'Isâ b. Uthmân b. 'Isâ** [\*] 180

**'Isâb** b. Ishâq b. Ibrâhîm 48

**Ishbâhân** [P], see Ishfâhân

**Ishfâhân** (Ishbâhân) [P] 144

**Ishâq** b. 'Abdallâh b. Abî Talhâh al-

Anṣârî [\*] 13

**Ishâq** b. Yasâr [\*] 13, 205

**Ishâq** b. Yûsuf [\*] 125

**Islam** 123, 124, 148, 192, 193, 198

**Islamic** 186, 191, 198

**Ismâ'il**, son of Ibrâhîm 122

**isnâd** (chain of transmitters,

authorities) 114, 126

**Isrâfil** 174

**Isrâ'il** b. Yûnus b. Abî Ishâq al-Sâbi'i

al-Kûfi [\*] 12, 124

**Itlâl** (Prophet's milch sheep), see Atlâl

**Îtrâf** (Prophet's milch sheep), see Atrâf

**Iyâd** b. Laqît [\*] 161

**Iyâs** b. Rabî'ah, see Ibn Rabî'ah b. al-

Hârith

**izâr** (loincloth, part of a Yemenî

garment) 173

## J

**jabal al-rahmâh** [P] 79

**Jabâr** [P] 120

**Jabbâr** b. Sulmâ b. Mâlik b. Ja'far 103

**Jâbir** b. 'Abdallâh al-Anṣârî [\*] 8, 12,

125, 176

**Jâbir** b. Samûrah [\*] 161

**Jâbiyat al-Jawlân** [P] 70

- al-Jad'ā' {Prophet's camel} 151  
 Jadd b. Qays, Abū Wahb 48  
 Ja'far b. Abī Tālib 122  
 Ja'far b. Māhmūd [\*] 155  
 Ja'far b. Muḥammad b. 'Ali {sixth Shi'i imām} [\*] 125, 203  
*al-jāhiliyyah* {pre-Islamic times} 84  
 al-Jāhīz 189  
 Jahm b. 'Amr b. al-Hārith 138  
*jamā'ah* {community} 195  
 al-Jammā' [P] 152  
 Jamrah bt. al-Hārith b. Abī Hārithah 140  
 al-Jamūm [P] 120  
 al-Janāh {name of a horse} 19  
 Jarbā' [P] 58  
 Jarir b. 'Abd al-Ḥamīd al-Ḍabbī [\*] 126, 185, 186  
 Jarir b. 'Abdallāh al-Bajali 56, 123, 167  
 Jāriyah b. 'Amīr 61  
 al-Jārūd b. 'Amr b. Ḥanash b. al-Mu'allā 94, 95  
 al-Jawf [P] 58  
 al-Jawlān [P] 70  
 al-Jawwāniyya [P] 152  
 Jayfar [T] 38  
 Jayy [P] 144  
 Jaz' b. Khālid b. Ja'far 103  
 Jerusalem [P] 142  
 Jesus 191  
 Jew 75, 87, 120  
 Jewish 54, 119, 120, 144, 191  
 Jews 5, 58, 120, 144  
 Jibril, see Gabriel  
 Jiddah [P] 8  
 Jināb [P] 119  
 al-Ji'rānah [P] 20, 21, 27, 30, 32, 35, 37, 38, 95  
*jizyah* {a poll tax levied on non-Muslims} 39, 58  
 John the Baptist 5  
 Jordan {al-Urdunn} [P] 164  
 Joseph 180  
 Ju'ayl b. Surāqah al-Damri 34  
 Jubayr b. Mu'tim b. 'Adi b. Nawfal b. 'Abd Manāf [\*] 13, 156  
 al-Jubbānah [P] 50  
 Judeo-Christian 5  
 Judaism 75, 87  
 Judhām [T] 58, 99–101, 102, 120, 123  
 Juhaynah [T] 123  
 al-Julāh 16  
 al-Julandā [T] 39  
 al-Julās b. Suwayd 57  
 Jumah {Banū} [T] 29  
 Jumah {Taym} b. 'Amr b. Huṣayṣ b. Ka'b b. 'Adī 29  
 Jumay'ah bt. Qays 122  
 Jumaymah 130  
 Jurash [P] 20, 88, 89  
 al-Jurayñi, Sa'id [\*] 158  
 al-Jurf [P] 51, 166  
 Jusham {Banū} [T] 3, 6, 17  
 Jushaysh al-Daylamī 167  
 al-Jūshiyyah [P] 65  
 Juwayriyyah {or Barrah} bt. al-Hārith 133
- K
- Ka'b [T] 3, 5  
 Ka'b b. al-Ashraf 121  
 Ka'b b. Mālik b. Abi Ka'b 50, 62  
 Ka'b b. 'Umayr al-Chifārī 122  
 Ka'bāh {House} [P] 15, 29, 34, 67, 75, 78–79, 109–10, 115, 158, 198  
*al-Ka'bāh al-Shāmiyyah* {the Meccan sanctuary} 123  
*al-Ka'bāh al-Yamāniyyah* {the sanctuary of Dhū al-Khalāṣah} 123  
 al-Kādir [P] 119  
*kāhin* {soothsayer} 97, 167  
 Kahlān b. Sabā' 99  
 Kaladah b. al-Hanbal 10  
 Kalb [T] 119, 122, 144  
 al-Kalbi, Hishām b. Muḥammad b. al-Sā'ib 1, 2, 3, 10, 19, 28, 30, 40, 50, 53, 65, 73, 90, 92, 94, 95, 98, 100, 101, 103, 143, 144, 146, 149; [\*] 126, 131, 138, 139, 144, 168, 178, 184, 199, 200  
 Kalbite 143  
 Karbalā' [P] 132  
 Kardaway b. Asharnidah 145

- Ka's bt. Aři 122  
 Kashar [P] 88  
*katam* (hair dye) 160, 161  
 Kathir b. al-'Abbās b. 'Abd al-Muṭṭalib [\*] 11  
 Kathir b. 'Abdallāh [\*] 202  
 Kathir b. Zayd al-Aslāmī [\*] 24  
*katif* (plank of shoulder blade) 175  
 al-Khabat [P] 123  
 Khadijah bt. Khuwaylid b. Asad b. 'Abd al-'Uzzā, Umm Hind 32, 110, 127–28, 129, 131, 135, 138, 142  
 Khālid b. Abī 'Imrān [\*] 208  
 Khālid b. al-Hārith [\*] 160  
 Khālid b. Sa'īd b. al-'Āṣ 44, 94, 133, 143, 147, 165  
 Khālid b. Sufyān b. Nubayh al-Hudhalī 121  
 Khālid b. al-Walid 20, 37, 58–59, 82–84, 90  
*khālīfah* (Prophet's successor) 188  
 Khallād al-Asadi [\*] 173  
*khamiṣah* (black cloak) 206  
 al-Khandaq [P] 117; expedition of 117  
 Khārijah b. Ḥiṣn 77  
 al-Kharrār [P] 118  
 Khaṣīb (Banū) [T] 101–2  
 Khaṣībī 102  
 Khath'am [T] 88–89, 123  
 Khaṭīb al-Baghdādī 3, 117  
 Khawlah (or Khuwaylah) bt. Ḥakim 24, 129, 130, 141  
 Khawlah bt. al-Hudhayl b. Ḥubayrah 139  
 Khawlan [T] 98; deputation of 98  
 Khaybar [P] 99, 119, 120, 196; conquest of 17, 99; day of 135, 155; expedition of 115, 116, 117, 120  
*al-khayl* (cavalry) 105  
*al-khayr* (good) 85  
 Khazraj [T] 11, 36, 48, 50, 53, 85, 90, 95  
 Khazraji 70  
 Khidām (or Khidhām) b. Khālid 61  
*al-khif* (Prophet's sword), see *al-ḥatf*  
 Khubbān [P] 165  
 Khufāf b. Imā' b. Rāḥdah 50  
*khums* (fifth share of the booty) 30, 32, 75, 196  
 Khunays b. Hudhāfah b. Qays 131  
 Khusraw (Kisrā) 64, 68, 95  
 Khuwaylah bt. Ḥakim b. Umayyah, see Khawlah bt. Ḥakim  
 Khuzā'ah [T] 68, 117  
 Khuzā'ites 68  
 Khuzaymah b. Thābit 149  
 Khūzistān [P] 144  
 Kilābī (Banū) [T] 3, 5, 135, 149  
 Kilābī, woman 139  
 al-Kilābiyyah, Fātimah bt. al-Dāḥhāk 39, 136  
 Kinānah (Banū) [T] 22, 23, 50  
 Kinānah b. 'Abd Yālīl 98  
 Kinānah b. Khuzaymah b. Mudrikah 23  
 Kinānah b. al-Rabi' b. Abī al-Huqqayq 135  
 Kināniyyah 136  
 Kindah [T] 58, 97, 136, 137; deputation of 97; kings of 92, 93, 97  
 Kisrā, see Khusraw  
 Kubbah (Banū) [T] 16  
 al-Kudr [P] 116  
 al-Kūfah [P] 9, 12, 17, 56, 67, 119; mosque of 157  
 Kūfan 56  
 Kulaynī 154  
 Kunnah (Banū) [T] 16  
 Kurā' Rabbah [P] 100, 102  
 Kurayb b. Abī Muslim al-Ḥashimī [\*] 80  
 Kurz b. Jābir 116  
 Kushtāsib, king 146  
*kuttāb al-wāḥy* (Messenger of God's scribes) 147, 148
- L
- Labid b. Rabī'ah 105  
 al-Lajlāj 16  
 Lakhm [T] 27, 41

- Lakhmids 27  
 al-Lāt (an idol, old Arabian goddess) 44, 46, 81  
*lawḥ* (tablet) 175  
 Laylā bt. al-Khaṭīm b. 'Adī 139  
 Leyth b. Bakr (Banū) [T] 22, 26, 112  
 Leyth b. Sa'd b. 'Abd al-Rahmān al-Fahmi [\*] 181  
 Lihyān (Banū) [T], expedition of 117  
 Liyyah [P] 21  
 Lizāz (Prophet's horse) 149  
 Lubnā 100  
 Lufāt [P] 93  
 al-Luhayf (or Lukhayf, Prophet's horse) 149  
 Lukhayf (Prophet's horse), see al-Luhayf
- M**
- Ma'add [T] 70  
 Ma'addī 70  
 Ma'afir [P, T] 74  
*al-ma'afir* (or *al-ma'afirī*, cloth made in Ma'afir) 75  
 al-Ma'afir b. Ya'fur 74  
*al-ma'afirī*, see *al-ma'afir*  
*ma'ālim al-islām* (lit. distinguishing marks, thus requirement of Islam) 82  
 Ma'ān [P] 58  
 Mābih b. Būdhakhshān, see Salmān al-Fārisī  
 Mābūr 147  
 Madā'in Shālī [P] 52  
 Madān [P], plain of 101; valley of 100  
 Madhhij [T] 92, 94, 98, 108, 165  
*magħażi* (pl. of *ghawwah*) 62  
 al-Mahdi ('Abbāsid caliph) 146  
 al-Māhi (Prophet's name) 156  
 Maḥmūd b. Labīd al-Awsī al-Anṣārī 53–54; [\*] 36  
*mahr* (dowry) 133  
*al-majāniq* (catapult) 20  
 Majannah [P] 38  
 al-Majūs, see Zoroastrians
- Makhrabah (or Mukharribah) b. 'Adī 102  
 Makhrabah b. Nawfal b. Uhayb al-Zuhri 33  
 Makhshī (or Mukhashshim) b. Ḥumayyir, 'Abdallāh or 'Abd al-Rahmān 56–57  
 Makhlū 19, 155  
 Malik (Banū) [T] 4, 14, 42, 43  
 Mālik b. 'Amr 122  
 Mālik b. Anas [\*] 172  
 Mālik al-Ashtar 56  
 Mālik b. 'Awf al-Naṣrī 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 16, 18, 22, 30, 32  
 Mālik b. al-Dukhshum 60–61  
 Mālik b. Mighwal [\*] 175  
 Mālik b. Murrah al-Rahāwī (or Ruhāwī) 74, 76  
 Mālik b. Nuwayrah 108  
 Mālik b. Ṣafwān Dhi al-Shafr 133  
 Mālik b. 'Ubādah 76  
 Mālikī 172  
 Ma'mar b. Rāshid al-Azdi [\*] 150, 196, 197  
 Ma'n b. 'Adī 61, 194–95  
 Ma'n b. 'Isā [\*] 170  
*manā'iḥ* (pl. of *manīḥah*, milch sheep or goat) 153  
*manākir* (pl. of *munkar*, possessing intelligence with cunning, clever) 26  
 Manāt (old Arabian goddess) 81  
 Mandaeans 5  
*manīḥah* (milch sheep or goat) 153  
 al-Manṣūr ('Abbāsid caliph) 24  
 Mansūr b. al-Mu'tamir al-Kūfi [\*] 126  
*manzil* (station) 189  
 Maqām Ibrāhīm [P] 109  
 al-Maqiṣ [P] 100  
*marāħil* (pl. of *marħalah*, leg of journey, way station) 116  
 Māriyah bt. Sham'un, the Copt 39, 131, 137, 141, 147  
 Markabūd 123  
 Marr al-Zahrān [P] 38  
 Marthad b. Abi Marthad al-Ghanawī 119

- Marwah [P] 109  
 Marwān b. Abī Sa'īd b. al-Mu'allā [\*] 153, 154  
 Mary 191  
*masājid* (mosques) 206  
 Mashārif al-Shām (highlands of Syria) [P] 163  
*masjid al-dirār* (Mosque of Dissent) 60–61  
 Mas'ūd b. 'Amr al-Ghifārī, see Mas'ūd b. 'Amr al-Qārī  
 Mas'ūd b. 'Amr al-Qārī (or al-Ghifārī) 20  
 Mas'ūd b. 'Urwah 119  
 al-Mas'ūdī, 'Abd al-Rahmān b. 'Abdallāh [\*] 155, 157  
 Mas'ūdī, Abū al-Hasan 'Ali b. al-Husayn 51, 57, 78, 79, 197  
 Ma'ubā 143  
*mawlā* (client, master) 114  
 Maydāni, Ahmād b. Muḥammad 175  
 Maymūnah bt. Abī Sufyān 24, 127  
 Maymūnah bt. al-Hārit 135, 137  
 Mecca [P] 1, 2, 3, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 13, 16, 17, 20, 21, 22, 23, 24, 30, 37, 38, 42, 54, 58, 67, 72, 77, 79, 81, 88, 95, 98, 109, 110, 111, 115, 116, 117, 119, 123, 128, 129, 131, 142, 144, 145, 151, 154, 158, 198, 207, 208; conquest of 8, 24, 68, 117, 124, 148  
 Meccan 10, 32, 117, 123  
 Meccans 8, 32, 193, 204  
 Medina [Dar al-hijrah or Yathrib] [P] 2, 9, 10, 11, 15, 17, 21, 25, 32, 35, 36, 37, 38, 40, 41, 42–43, 45, 46, 47, 50, 51, 53, 54, 56, 58, 59, 60, 62, 66, 68, 74, 77, 80, 88, 93, 94, 95, 98, 102, 105, 106, 108, 111, 116, 117, 118, 119, 123, 124, 125, 128, 131, 138, 143, 144, 147, 148, 149, 151, 152, 154, 158, 159, 162, 164, 179, 187, 190, 198, 204, 206, 207, 208; siege of 117  
 Medinan 128; oasis 151  
 Medinans, 204  
 Medinese 54, 96  
 Mesopotamia [P] 5  
 Michael, see Mikā'il  
 Mid'am 118, 146  
*al-mighfar* (Prophet's coat of mail) 155  
 Mihjwār b. Yūmāst (Banū) [T] 145  
 Mihrān, see Safinah  
 Mikā'il (Michael) 174  
 al-Mikhlāl (name of a camel) 103  
*mikhḍab* (tub) 170  
*al-mikhdham* (Prophet's sword) 63  
 Minā [P] 54, 78, 110, 115, 189  
 al-Miqdād b. 'Amr Bahrānī 76  
 Miqsam, Abū al-Qāsim [\*] 34, 205  
*mirbā'* (pre-Islamic practice of setting one-quarter of the booty aside for the leader) 66  
 Mirdās (father of 'Abbās b. Mirdās) 33  
 Mirdās b. Nahik 122  
 Moses (Müsā b. ʿImrān) 51, 184  
 Mosque of Dissent, see *masjid al-dirār*  
 Mu'ādh b. Hishām [\*] 207  
 Mu'ādh b. Jabal al-Anṣārī 21, 38, 48, 76  
 Mu'ādh b. Mu'ādh al-'Anbarī al-Baṣrī [\*] 160, 161  
 Mu'ādh b. Muḥammad al-Anṣārī [\*] 117–118  
*al-mu'allafa qulūbuhum* (whose hearts were to be reconciled) 31  
 Mu'ammil b. Ismā'il al-'Adawi [\*] 14  
 Mu'attib (Banū) [T] 46  
 Mu'attib b. Qushayr 61  
 Mu'awiyah b. 'Abdallāh b. 'Ubaydallāh b. Abī Rāfi' [\*] 151  
 Mu'awiyah b. Abī Sufyān 32, 117, 142, 148, 199  
*mubārakūn* (blessed, fortunate) 26  
 Muḍar [T] 3, 113  
 Muḍari 23  
 Mughirah b. Miqsam al-Dabbī [\*] 185  
 al-Mughirah b. Shu'bāh 15, 20, 23, 43–46, 205  
 Muḥājir (Emigrant) 34  
 al-Muḥājir b. Abī Umayyah b. al-Mughirah 108

- Muhājirūn (Emigrants) 9, 11, 28, 34, 36, 62, 164, 186, 190, 192, 193, 194, 195
- Muhammad b. 'Abd al-Rahmān b. Abī Dhi'b [\*], see Ibn Abī Dhi'b
- Muhammad b. 'Abdallāh b. 'Abd al-Hakam [\*] 138, 181
- Muhammad (the Prophet) b. 'Abdallāh b. 'Abd al-Muṭṭalib (Son of 'Abd al-Muṭṭalib) 3, 5, 7, 8, 9, 10, 12, 25, 31, 33, 34, 36, 37, 38, 39, 40, 45, 47, 50, 54, 60, 64, 68, 69, 70, 74, 75, 76, 80, 81, 83, 84, 85, 90, 93, 94, 95, 96, 98, 99, 102, 105, 106, 121, 126, 129, 141, 154, 155, 184, 185, 186, 187, 190, 194, 196, 197, 198
- Muhammad b. 'Abdallāh b. al-Zubayr [\*], see Abū Aḥmad
- Muhammad b. Abī Bakr al-Muqaddami [\*], see Ibn al-Muqaddami
- Muhammad b. 'Alī b. al-Ḥasan b. Shariq [\*] 126
- Muhammad b. 'Amr [\*] 129
- Muhammad b. 'Amr b. Hayyāj al-Hamdāni al-Kūfi [\*] 89
- Muhammad b. Bakkār b. Bilāl al-'Āmili [\*] 152
- Muhammad al-Bāqir [\*], see Abū Ja'far Muḥammad b. 'Alī
- Muhammad b. Ḥumayd b. Ḥayyān al-Rāzī al-Tamīmī [\*], see Ibn Ḥumayd
- Muhammad b. al-Ḥusayn b. Ibrāhīm al-'Āmīrī al-Baghdādī [\*] 77
- Muhammad b. Ibrāhīm b. Abī 'Adī [\*], see Ibn Abī 'Adī
- Muhammad b. Ibrāhīm b. al-Ḥārith [\*] 34
- Muhammad b. Isḥāq b. Yasār [\*], see Ibn Isḥāq
- Muhammad b. Ja'far al-Hudhalī al-Baṣrī [\*] 63, 124, 177
- Muhammad b. Ja'far b. al-Zubayr [\*] 121, 178
- Muhammad b. Jubayr b. Muṭ'im [\*] 156
- Muhammad b. Ka'b al-Quraṣī [\*] 56, 78
- Muhammad b. Khalaf al-'Asqalānī [\*] 181, 207
- Muhammad b. Maslamah al-Anṣārī 51, 119, 121, 135; [\*] 155
- Muhammad b. Muslim b. Shihāb al-Zuhri [\*], see al-Zuhri
- Muhammad b. al-Muthannā al-Baṣrī [\*], see Ibn al-Muthannā
- Muhammad b. Sa'd al-'Awfi [\*], see Ibn Sa'd
- Muhammad b. Sahl b. Abī Hathmāh 149; [\*] 117, 148, 149
- Muhammad b. Sulaymān b. Abī Hathmāh [\*] 117
- Muhammad b. Thābit al-Anṣārī [\*] 118
- Muhammad b. 'Umar [\*], see al-Waqīdi
- Muhammad b. 'Umar b. al-Ṣabāḥ al-Hamdāni [\*] 173
- Muhammad b. Usāmah b. Zayd [\*] 178
- Muhammad b. Uthmān b. Ṣafwān al-Thaqafī [\*] 198
- Muhammad b. al-Walid b. Nuwayfi' al-Asadī [\*] 80
- Muhammad b. Yahyā b. Sahl b. Abī Hathmāh [\*] 117, 148, 149
- Muḥārib [T], deputation of 98
- Muhrab (Prophet's milk camel) 152
- muhrim* (a pilgrim who enters the state of ritual consecration) 109
- Muhriz b. Naqlah 118
- muhṣan* (an adult in possession of his faculties who is free and has had sexual intercourse in a legal marriage) 191
- Mujāhid b. Jabr al-Makkī [\*] 125, 161
- Mujālid b. Sa'id al-Hamdāni al-Kūfi [\*] 94
- Mujamma' b. Yahyā [\*] 157
- Mujammi' b. Jāriyah b. 'Āmir 61
- Mukharribah b. 'Adī, see Makhrabah
- Mukhashshin b. Ḥumayyir, see Makhshī

- Mulāwīh (name of a horse) 148  
 al-Mulawwah (Banū) [T] 119  
 al-Mulayḥ [P] 21  
 Mulaykah bt. Ka'b al-Laythī 141  
 Munabbih b. al-Hajjāj 154  
 al-Mundhir b. 'Amr 119  
 Mundhir b. al-Arqam 193  
 al-Mundhir b. Mālik [\*], see Abū Nadrah  
 al-Mundhir b. Sāwā al-'Abdi 95  
 al-Muqaffī (Prophet's name) 156  
 al-Muqwāqis 39, 137, 147, 149  
 Murād [T] 92–93  
 Murārah b. al-Rabi' 50, 62  
 al-Muraysī' [P], day of 133; expedition of 117, 124; year of 133  
 Murrah (Banū) [T] 119, 122, 149  
*murtadd* (apostate) 195  
 al-Murtajiz (Prophet's horse) 149  
 Mūsā b. 'Abd al-Rahmān al-Kindī [\*] 17  
 Mūsā b. Abī 'Ā'ishah [\*] 177  
 Mūsā b. Dāwūd [\*] 208  
 Mūsā b. 'Imrān, see Moses  
 Mūsā b. Muḥammad b. Ibrāhīm al-Taymī [\*] 150  
 Mūsā b. Sarjis [\*] 181  
 Mūsā b. 'Umar [\*] 155  
 Muṣ'ab b. al-Miqdām al-Khath'ami al-Kūfi [\*] 12  
 Muṣ'ab al-Zubayrī [\*] 143  
 Musaylimah b. Ḥabib 58, 96–97, 106–8, 164, 195  
*muṣḥaf* (book) 181  
 al-Muṣhaqqaq [P] 60  
 Muslim 7, 12, 17, 18, 27, 30, 41, 50, 76, 78, 81, 88, 94, 95, 99, 103, 113, 128, 144, 186, 196  
 Muslim b. al-Hajjāj 37, 51, 59, 86, 156, 158, 160, 172, 174, 197  
 Muslim b. Ja'far al-Bajalī [\*] 173  
 Muslims 1, 3, 9, 10, 11, 12, 14, 18, 20, 22, 23, 25, 26, 28, 33, 37, 38, 44, 48, 49, 50, 51, 58, 59, 62, 73, 76, 88, 90, 101, 104, 105, 113, 115, 117, 128, 144, 148, 177, 181, 192, 193, 198, 204  
*mustaḍ'af* (weak, oppressed) 199  
*mustaḍ'afān* (dual form of *mustaḍ'af*) 199  
*mustaḍ'afūn* (pl. of *mustaḍ'af*, a group of early converts who were classless and without protection) 199  
 al-Muṣṭaliq (Banū) [T], expedition of 117, 133  
 al-Muṣṭaliq b. Sa'd b. 'Amr 133  
 al-Muṣtanir b. Yazid al-Nakha'i [\*] 165  
 Mu'tah [P], expedition 9, 124, 142  
*al-mutakhaṣṣirūn* (people carrying sticks tied to their waists) 122  
 al-Mutalammis, 199  
 Muṭarrif b. Tarif al-Hārithī [\*] 126  
 al-Muṭ'im b. 'Adi 130  
 Muzaynah [T] 146  
 al-Muzdalifah [P] 114
- N
- nab'* (a kind of wood) 154  
 Nabatean (al-Nabt) 52  
 Nabateans 152  
 Nabhān [\*] 152  
*Nabī al-rahmāh wa-nabī al-malḥamah* (Prophet's name) 156  
*Naṿī al-tawbah wa'l-rahmāh* (Prophet's name) 156  
 al-Nabt, see Nabatean  
 Nabt b. Udad b. Zayd b. Yashjub, see al-Ash'ar  
 Nabtal b. al-Hārith 61  
 Naḍir (Banū) [T] 141; expedition of 116  
 al-Naḍir b. Kinānah 97  
 Nāfi' b. Jubayr b. Muṭ'im b. 'Adi [\*] 157, 208  
 Nahrawān [P], battle of 12  
 al-Najāshi, see Negus  
 Najd [P] 21, 62, 65, 106, 116, 119  
 Najjār (Banū) [T] 85, 95  
 Najrān [P] 82, 87, 98, 108, 110, 165, 198  
 Najwah bt. Nahd 122  
 Nakhab, see Nakhb  
 Nakhb (or Nakhab, or Nakhib) [P] 22

- Nakhib, see Nakhb  
 Nakhlah [P] 16, 26, 119, 121; valley of 11, 81  
 Nakhlat al-Yamāniyyah [P] 21  
 al-Nashāt bt. Rifa'ah 135  
*naskh* (withdrawal, suppression) 191  
*naskh al-tilāwah dūna al-hukm*  
 (suppression of a Qur'anic verse  
 reading but not its legal ruling) 191  
 Naṣr (Banū) [T] 2, 3  
 Nawfal b. Mu'āwiya al-Dili 24  
 Negus (al-Najashi) 77, 133  
 Nihāwad [P] 90  
 Nu'aym b. 'Abd Kulāl 74  
 Nu'aym b. Mas'ud al-Ashja'i 168; [\*] 107  
 Nu'aym b. Zayd 68  
 Nubian 146  
 al-Nuḍayr (or al-Nuṣayr) b. al-Hārith  
 b. Kaladah 32  
 Nufay' b. Masrūḥ, see Abū Bakrah  
 al-Nu'mān, prince of Dhū Ru'ayn 74  
 al-Nu'mān b. Abī Jī'āl 100  
 al-Nu'mān b. al-Aswad b. Sharāhil al-  
 Kindī 137  
 al-Nu'mān b. Buzurj (Buzurg) 123  
 al-Nu'mān b. al-Mundhir [\*] 125  
 al-Nu'mān b. al-Mundhir (the last  
 Lakhmid king) 27  
 Numayr b. Kharashah b. Rabī'ah 43  
 al-Nuṣayr b. al-Hārith b. Kaladah, see  
 al-Nuḍayr b. al-Hārith
- P
- Palestine [P] 142, 163  
 Persia [P] 143, 144  
 Persian 123, 143, 144, 145  
 Persians 27  
 Petra [P] 52, 58
- Q
- qādi* (judge) 17, 111  
 al-Qādi al-Nu'mān 180  
 al-Qādisiyah [P] 67, 90  
 Qahtānī 73  
 al-Qala'ah [P] 153  
*qalā'ī* (Prophet's sword) 153  
 Qanāt [P] 43  
 al-Qa'qā' b. Ma'bād 122  
 Qarārat al-Kudr [P], expedition of 146  
 al-Qardāh [P], see al-Qardah  
 al-Qardah (or al-Qardāh) [P] 119  
 Qārib b. al-Aswad b. Mas'ud b.  
 Mu'attib 3, 15, 46  
 Qarn [P], see Qarn al-Thā'lib  
 Qarn al-Manāzil [P] 26  
 Qarn al-Thā'lib (or Qarn) [P] 21  
 al-Qarqarah [P], see Qarqarat al-Kudr  
 Qarqarat al-Kudr (al-Qarqarah) [P] 116,  
 120  
 al-Qāsim (Prophet's son) 127  
 Qāsim b. Muḥammad b. Abī Bakr al-  
 Siddiq [\*] 109, 181  
 al-Qāsim b. Yazid [\*] 170  
 al-Qaṣwā' (Prophet's camel) 54, 150–  
 51  
 Qatādah b. Di'āmah [\*] 207  
 Qaṭān [P] 119  
 al-Qaṭīf [P], oases of 95  
 Qaynuqā' (Banū) [T] 54, 153, 154  
 Qays [T] 28  
 Qays b. 'Abd Yaghūth 165  
 Qays b. 'Āsim 68, 73, 108, 122, 168  
 Qays 'Aylān [T] 3, 98  
 Qays b. al-Hārith 68  
 Qays b. al-Ḥuṣayn b. Yazid Dhū al-  
 Ghūṣah 84, 85  
 Qays b. Makshūḥ al-Murādī 90, 91  
 Qayṣar, see Caesar  
 Qaysi [T] 2  
*qirān* (performance of 'umrah and ḥajj  
 together) 109  
 Qudā'ah [T] 40, 65  
 Qudā'i b. 'Amr 167  
 Qudā'i al-Daylāmī 168  
 Qur'ān 3, 5, 9, 15, 31, 38, 40, 42, 44,  
 45, 49, 51, 53, 56, 57, 61, 62, 73,  
 74, 77, 78, 79, 85, 96, 100, 112,  
 113, 134, 135, 148, 170, 173, 180,  
 182, 185, 187, 189, 191, 195, 199,  
 200, 201, 208

- Qur'anic** 32, 56, 57, 105, 137, 139,  
 191, 196  
**Qurashi** 139  
**al-Qurātā'** [P] 119  
**Quraysh** [T] 1, 3, 5, 10, 14, 19, 22, 23,  
 26, 33, 34, 36, 37, 58, 71, 77, 78,  
 90, 104, 106, 116, 126, 186, 192,  
 193, 194, 202, 208  
**Qurayshite** 137  
**Qurayzah** (Banū) [T] 56, 136; expedition of 117, 125  
**Quraziyyah** 136  
**Qurrah** b. Ashqar al-Dīfārī 100  
**Qurtubī**, Abū 'Abdallāh Muḥammad  
 42  
**Quṣayy** 198  
**Qutaylah** bt. Qays b. Ma'dikarib 138  
**Qutham** b. al-'Abbās b. 'Abd al-Muṭṭalib 202, 205  
**Quzah** [P] 114
- R**
- al-Rabadhah** [P] 56  
**Rabāh**, see *Safinah*  
**Rabāh al-Aswad**, see *Safinah*  
**rabbah** (sovereign, an idol) 44  
**Rabi'ah** [T] 94  
**Rabi'ah** b. Abī 'Abd al-Rahmān [\*] 158  
**Rabi'ah** b. Abī al-Barā' 149  
**Rabi'ah** b. al-Hārith b. 'Abd al-Muṭṭalib 9, 97  
**Rabi'ah** b. Rufay' al-Sulamī (Ibn Ladh'ah) 16, 17  
**Rabi'ah** b. Umayyah b. Khalaf 114  
**Rādwa** [P] 116  
**Rāfi'**, see *al-Bahī* b. Abī Rāfi'  
**al-Rahāwiyyūn** [T], deputation of 98  
*al-rahmān* (a deity) 97  
*rajaż* (a meter in Arabic poetry) 12  
**al-Rai'** [P] 119  
**rak'ah** (a bending of the torso from an upright position, followed by two prostrations in Muslim prayer ritual) 109, 124
- rakūsī** (a person who professes a religion that is a mixture of Christianity and the beliefs of the Sabeans) 66  
**Rām-Hormoz** [P], see *Rāmhurmuz*  
**Rāmhurmuz** (Rām-Hormoz) [P] 144  
**Ramlah**, see *Umm Ḥabibah* bt. Abī Sufyān  
**al-Ramlah** 142  
**Ramlah** bt. al-Hārith 65, 95  
*rasūb* (Prophet's sword) 63  
**Rawhā'** [P] 154  
*al-rāwhā'* (Prophet's bow) 154  
**Rayhānah** bt. Zayd al-Quraziyyah 137, 141  
**Raytah** bt. Hilāl b. Ḥayyān 29  
**al-Rayy** [P] 3, 143  
**al-Rayyā** (Prophet's milch camel) 151  
*al-razzm* (lit. "death," thus "battle"), day of 92, 93  
**Red Sea** [P] 58, 118  
**Rhomaeans**, see *Byzantines*  
*ribā* (usury) 45  
*ridā'* (one of the three garments of Yemeni dress) 173  
*al-riddah* (apostasy) 95, 108  
**al-Riḍwān** [P], pledge of 11  
**Rifā'ah** (Banū) [T] 136  
**Rifā'ah** b. Zayd al-Judhāmi al-Dubaybi 99, 100, 102–3, 146  
**Rifā'ah** b. Zayd b. al-Tābūt 50  
*rifādah* (feeding the pilgrims) 198  
**Righāl** (name of a horse) 101  
**Roman** 58, 64  
**Ru'ās** b. Kilāb (Banū) [T] 139  
**Rūm** [P] 48, 73  
**Rūmil** 48  
**Ruqaym** b. Thābit al-Anṣārī 19  
**Ruqayyah** (Prophet's daughter) 127, 128  
**Ruqayyah** bt. Abī Salāmah b. 'Abd al-Asad, see *Durrāh*  
**Ruwayfi'** (Abū Rāfi'), Aslam or Ibrāhim 143  
**Ruwayfi'** b. Thābit al-Balawī 40

## S

- Sā'ah bt. 'Umar 140  
 Sabā bt. Asmā' b. al-Ṣalt, see Sānā bt. Asmā'  
 Sabā bt. al-Ṣalt 141  
 Sabā bt. Sufyān 136  
 Sabaean (al-Ṣābi') 66  
 Sabaean (al-Ṣābi'ah) 5, 66  
 al-Ṣābi', see Sabaean  
*al-ṣābi'* (apostate) 5  
 al-Ṣābi'ah, see Sabaean  
 al-Ṣābi'ūn (pl. of al-Ṣābi'), see Sabaean  
 Sabih b. Mārqīh, see Safinah  
 Sabrah b. 'Amr 122  
 Sabrah al-'Anbarī 168  
 Sābūr [P], see Shāpūr  
 Sa'd b. Abī Waqqās 118  
 Sa'd b. Bakr (Banū) [T] 3, 18, 19, 27, 80  
 Sa'd Hudhaym [T] 100, 108; deputation of 79  
 Sa'd b. Mu'ādh 59  
 Sa'd b. Tāriq al-Kūfi [\*], see Abū Mālik  
 Sa'd b. 'Ubādah al-Khazraji 36, 131, 152, 155, 186, 192, 194  
*ṣadaqah* (voluntary alms giving) 38, 75  
*al-ṣadaqāt* (pl. of *ṣadaqah*) 79, 108  
 Sadīf [T], deputation of 98  
 al-Ṣādirah (a lote tree) 22  
 Sa'diyah [P] 155  
*al-sa'diyah* (Prophet's coat of mail) 155  
*al-Sa'diyah* (Prophet's milch camel) 151  
 Safā [P] 109  
 Safinah (or Mīhrān or Sabih b. Mārqīh or Rabāh or Rabāh al-Aswad) 145, 146, 147  
*safir* (intermediary) 134  
*safiyyy* (portion of the spoils a chief chooses for himself before the division) 75  
*safiyyah* (chosen one) 133, 135  
 Safiyyah bt. 'Abd al-Mu'talib 79

- Safiyyah bt. Bashshāmah 140  
 Safiyyah bt. Huyayy 127, 134–35  
*al-ṣafirā'* (Prophet's bow) 154  
 Safwān b. al-Mu'attal 147  
 Safwān b. Umayyah b. Khalaf 7, 10, 32  
 Sahl b. Abī Ḥathmah [\*] 117  
 Sahl b. Ḥunayf 61  
 Sahl b. Sa'd al-Anṣārī [\*] 149  
 Sahm (Banū) [T] 132  
 al-Sahmi, see 'Adi b. Qays  
 Sahūl [P] 203  
 Sahūlī 203  
 Sa'id b. Jubayr [\*] 174, 175  
 Sa'id al-Jurayr [\*] 158  
 Sa'id b. al-Musayyib [\*] 151, 184  
 Sa'id b. 'Ubayd Abū Ya'qūb [\*] 166  
 Sa'id b. 'Ubayd b. Asid al-Thaqafī 25  
 Sa'id b. 'Ubayd al-Sabbāq [\*] 178  
 Sa'id b. Yahya b. Sa'id al-Umawi [\*] 129, 176  
 Sa'id b. Yarbu' b. 'Ankathah 33  
 Sa'id b. Zayd b. 'Amr b. Nufayl 190, 195  
 Sā'idah (Banū) [T] 53, 186, 188, 192  
*saj'* (rhyming speech) 96  
*sakarāt al-mawt* (agonies of death) 181  
 al-Sakb (or al-Sakbā', Prophet's horse) 148  
 al-Sakbā', see al-Sakb  
 al-Sakrān b. 'Amr b. 'Abd Shams 128  
*sakrat al-mawt* (agony of death) 181  
 Salamah, son of Samādir, see Salamah b. Durayd  
 Salamah (Banū) [T] 120  
 Salamah b. Abī Salamah b. 'Abd al-Asad 132  
 Salamah b. Durayd 18  
 Salamah b. al-Fadl al-Anṣārī [\*] 3, 6, 7, 8, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 18, 19, 20, 21, 24, 26, 29, 31, 34, 35, 36, 37, 41, 42, 45, 47, 51, 53, 56, 59, 64, 67, 73, 74, 79, 82, 85, 88, 90, 92, 94, 95, 96, 97, 98, 99, 103, 105, 106, 108, 109, 110, 111, 112,

- Salamah b. al-Fadl al-Anṣārī (*continued*)  
 114, 116, 118, 121, 122, 163, 168,  
 169, 171, 172, 176, 177, 178, 179,  
 181, 182, 183, 184, 194, 200, 201,  
 202, 203, 204, 205, 206
- Salamah b. Hishām b. al-Mughirah  
 140
- Salamah b. Kuhayl al-Kūfi [\*] 79
- Salamah b. Nu'aym b. Maṣ'ūd al-  
 Ashja'i [\*] 107
- Salāmān [T] 100; deputation of 87
- Ṣāliḥ b. 'Adī, see Shuqrān
- Ṣāliḥ b. Ḥawl, see Shuqrān
- Ṣāliḥ b. Kaysān [\*] 205
- Ṣāliḥ b. Sammāl [\*] 175
- Sālim b. 'Awf (Banū) [T] 43, 50, 52, 61
- Sālim b. Mālik (Banū) [T] 41
- Salimah of Azd (Banū) [T] 30, 50
- Salimah of Khazraj (Banū) [T] 50
- Sallām b. Abi Mu'ti [\*] 161
- Sallām b. Mishkam b. al-Ḥakam 134
- Salmā 39
- Salmān al-Fārisī (Mābih b. Būdakh-  
 shān), Abū 'Abdallāh 144–45
- Ṣalṣal b. Shurahbil 168
- Salūl (Banū) [T] 105
- Salūlī 105
- Samādir (mother of Salamah b.  
 Durayd) 18
- Sāmah b. Lu'ayy (Banū) [T] 135
- Sam'āni, 'Abd al-Karīm b. Muḥammad  
 40
- Samīrā' [P] 166
- al-Samīrā' (Prophet's milch camel) 151
- al-samurah (acacia tree) 11
- Ṣan'ā' [P] 108, 123
- Sanā (or Sabā) bt. Asmā' b. al-Ṣalt al-  
 Sulamiyyah 136
- Sanā bt. al-Ṣalt b. Ḥabib al-Sulamī,  
 see Sanā bt. Asmā'
- al-Saq'ab b. Zuhayr [\*] 168, 178, 184
- Saqifah (roofed building) of the Banū  
 Sā'idah [P] 186, 187, 188, 189,  
 192, 194, 200
- Sarāt [P] 16, 74, 120, 145
- sarāyā (pl. of *sariyyah*) 124
- al-Sari b. Ismā'il al-Hamdānī al-Kūfi  
 [\*] 107
- al-Sari b. Yaḥyā [\*] 166
- Sarif [P] 109
- sariyyah* (military detachment sent by  
 the Prophet) 62
- Sāsānid 64
- Sāsānids 67
- Satan 178
- Sawād b. al-Ḥārith b. Zālim 149
- ṣawāhib (women companions) 180
- ṣawāhibāt (women companions) 180
- Sawdah bt. Zam'ah b. Qays 128–130,  
 137
- al-Sawiq [P], expedition of 116
- sa'y (fast walking seven times  
 between Ṣafā and Marwah during  
 the pilgrimage) 109
- al-Ṣaydā' (Banū) [T] 168
- Sayf b. 'Umar al-Tamimi al-Usayyidi  
 al-Kūfi [\*] 107, 164, 165, 166, 167,  
 195
- al-Sayyid, deputation of 98
- Ṣefō (Aṣfar) 48
- Shaddād b. 'Abdallāh b. al-Qanānī 84
- Shaddād b. Firās 122
- shadkhah (to break, crush) 23
- shahādah (testament of faith) 84, 95,  
 123, 192, 197
- Shahrastānī, Muḥammad 'Abd al-  
 Karīm 5
- al-Shajarah of Dhū al-Ḥulayfah [P] 77
- Shakar [P] 88
- Shamir (name of a camel) 103
- Shamir (name of a horse) 101
- Shanār [P] 100
- al-Shanbā' bt. 'Amr al-Ghifāriyyah 136
- Shāpūr (Sābūr) [P] 145
- Shāpūr Khūra [P] 145
- al-Shaqrā' (Prophet's milch camel) 152
- Sharāf bt. Khalifah 138
- al-Sharāt [P] 48
- Sharik (son of Umm Sharīk) 139
- Sharik b. 'Abdallāh al-Nakha'i al-Kūfi  
 [\*] 125, 208
- shawḥat (bow made of *shawḥat*  
 wood) 120, 154
- shawḥat* (kind of wood) 154
- shayṭān* (pl. of *shayṭān*, mischief-  
 makers) 103

- Shaybah b. 'Uthmān b. Abī Ṭalḥah 10  
 Shaybān b. Sa'īd al-Ṭā'i [\*] 64, 208  
*al-shaykh* (adult man) 191  
*al-shaykhah* (adult woman) 191  
 al-Shaymā' bt. al-Ḥārith b. 'Abdallāh  
     b. 'Abd al-'Uzzā 18–19  
*shayṭān* (spirit, demon) 167  
 Shī'ah 55, 57, 76  
 Shī'i 9, 111, 125, 180  
 Shī'is 77, 196  
*shijār* (howdah) 4  
 Shirīn (Sīrīn) 147  
 Shu'bah b. al-Hajjāj al-Baṣrī [\*] 63, 124  
 Shu'ayb b. Ibrāhīm al-Tamīmī [\*] 107,  
     166  
 Shu'ayb b. al-Layth [\*] 138, 181  
 Shu'ayb b. Muḥammad b. 'Abdallāh b.  
     'Amr b. al-'Āṣ [\*] 26  
 Shuqrān (Ṣāliḥ b. 'Adī or Ṣāliḥ b.  
     Ḩawl) 143, 202, 205  
*shūrā* (electoral conclave appointed by  
     'Umar) 77, 176  
 Shurabīl b. Ghaylān b. Salīmah b.  
     Mu'attib 43  
 Sibā' b. 'Urfūtāh al-Ghifārī 51, 109  
*sīdānah* (guardianship of the Ka'bāh)  
     198  
 Sīfīn [P] 57; battle of 12, 17, 58  
 Simāk b. Ḥarb al-Kūfi [\*] 63, 161  
 Sinān b. Abī Sinān 167  
 Sinān al-Asādi al-Ghanmī 168  
*siqāyah* (providing water to the  
     pilgrims) 198  
 Sīrīn, see Shirīn  
*siwāk* (teeth-cleaning stick) 126, 183  
 son of 'Abd al-Muṭṭalib, see  
     Muḥammad b. 'Abdallāh b. 'Abd  
         al-Muṭṭalib  
 son of Abū Quhāfah, see Abū Bakr  
     'Atīq  
 son of al-Khaṭṭāb, see 'Umar b. al-  
     Khaṭṭāb  
 Subay' b. al-Ḥārith b. Mālik, see Dhū  
     al-Khīmār Subay'  
 Subayh b. Mārqayh, see Safinah  
*al-ṣubbā'* (pl. of *al-ṣābi'*, apostates) 5  
 al-Suddī, Ismā'il b. 'Abd al-Rahmān [\*]  
     77
- Sufyān b. Ḫusayn [\*] 156  
 Sufyān b. Sa'īd al-Thawrī [\*] 125, 177  
 Sufyān b. 'Uyaynah [\*], see Ibn  
     'Uyaynah  
 Sufyān b. Waki' b. al-Jarrāḥ al-Kūfi [\*]  
     94  
 Ṣuhār [P] 203  
 Ṣuhārī 203  
 Suhayl b. 'Amr 32  
 Sulaym, see Abū Kabshah  
 Sulaym (Banū) [T] 16, 20, 37, 116,  
     119, 136  
 Sulaymān b. Abī Muslim [\*] 174  
 Sulaymān al-Ahwāl [\*] 175  
 Sulaymān b. Dāwūd al-Ṭayālī [\*],  
     see Abū Dāwūd  
 Sulaymān b. Muḥammad b. Ka'b b.  
     'Ujrah [\*] 111  
 al-Sunh [P] 130, 182, 184  
*sunnah* (deeds, utterances, and silent  
     approval of the Prophet) 82, 83,  
     85, 113, 115, 190  
 Sunnis 77, 180, 196  
 Suqyā (Prophet's milch sheep) 153  
 Ṣurad b. 'Abdallāh al-Azdi 88–89  
*sūrah* (chapter of the Qur'ān) 14, 57  
 Surāqah b. al-Ḥārith b. 'Abī b.  
     Bal'ajlān 19  
*sūrat al-baqarāh* (The Cow) 11  
*sūrat al-barā'ah* (or *al-barā'ah*,  
     Dispensation) 77–79, 151  
 Suwayd b. 'Abd al-'Azīz [\*] 125  
 Suwayd al-Azdi [\*], see Yazid b. Abi  
     Habib  
 Suwayd b. Zayd 101–2  
 Suwaylim (the Jew) 49  
 Syria [P] 21, 48, 51, 54, 58, 65, 106,  
     115, 122, 142, 146, 163, 199;  
     conquest of 27  
 Syrian 115, 146
- T
- Tabālah [P] 123  
 al-Ṭabarī, Abū Ja'far 5, 8, 9, 10, 14, 16,  
     20, 26, 27, 31, 35, 36, 39, 41, 42,  
     48, 49, 51, 54, 57, 59, 61, 62, 63,

- al-Ṭabārī, Abū Ja'far [continued]  
 66, 72, 75, 77, 79, 81, 82, 87, 88,  
 96, 98, 104, 107, 108, 110, 113,  
 115, 116, 117, 119, 124, 125, 127,  
 128, 135, 138, 142, 145, 153, 154,  
 162, 165, 166, 175, 176, 180, 181,  
 183, 184, 192, 194, 196, 202; [\*]  
 17, 35, 53, 63, 77, 78, 79, 82, 90,  
 97, 107, 108, 115, 124, 128, 138,  
 162, 163, 183, 184, 202, 208
- Ṭabarī, Āḥmad b. 'Alī 5, 51, 57, 61,  
 73, 187, 196
- tābi'i (spirit) 167
- tābi'ūn (followers) 53
- Ṭabarīzī 7, 31, 37, 51, 59, 74, 75, 78,  
 86, 87, 156, 157, 158, 159, 160,  
 161, 169, 172, 174, 196
- Tabūk [P] 47, 52, 58, 59, 61, 62, 74;  
 expedition of 46, 47, 56, 57, 59,  
 60, 117, 151
- al-tāghiyah (the idol al-Lāt) 44–46
- al-tāḡūt (idol) 44
- al-Tāhir (Prophet's son) 128
- al-Tā'if [P] 1, 2, 11, 16, 20, 21, 22, 23,  
 24, 26, 30, 35, 38, 41, 43, 45, 46,  
 47, 117; deputation of 42;  
 expedition of 117; siege of 20, 24,  
 25, 68, 147; wall of 22, 23
- takbīrah (the exclamation of *allāhu akbar* during the prayer) 132
- Talḥah 186, 189
- Talḥah b. al-Ā'lam [\*] 165
- Talḥah b. Muṣarrif [\*] 175
- Talid b. Kilāb al-Laythī 34
- tamattu'* (freedom of normal life  
 after the '*umrah* before resuming  
 the state of holiness for the *hajj*)  
 109
- Tamīm (Banū) [T] 28, 34, 70, 71, 73,  
 122, 146, 167; deputation of 67,  
 68, 122; nobility of 67
- Tamīm al-Dārī 149
- Tamīmī 34, 68
- Tamīmīs 68
- tamyīz* (grammatical specification of  
 number) 185
- al-Tan'im [P] 110
- taqwā (fear of God) 85
- tasbīh (glorification of God) 23
- ṭawāf (circumambulation of the  
 Ka'bah) 109
- Taym [T] 198
- Taym b. 'Amr, see Jumāh b. 'Amr
- Tayyi' [T] 53, 62, 64, 108; men of [\*]  
 105; delegation 35; deputation of  
 105; mountains 53
- al-Tayyib (Prophet's son) 128
- Tehrān [P] 143
- Thābit b. Aslām al-Banānī al-Baṣī [\*]  
 14, 159, 198
- Thābit b. Qays b. Shammās al-Anṣārī  
 69, 133
- Tha'lābah b. 'Amr (or Zayd) 102, 103
- Tha'lābah b. Ḥāfiẓ al-Anṣārī 61, 79
- Tha'lābah b. Munqidh [T], deputation  
 of 79
- Thaniyyat al-Marah [P] 118
- Thaniyyat al-Wadā' [P] 50
- Thaqafī 44, 46
- Thaqafis 43
- Thaqifī [T] 1, 2, 3, 6, 14, 15, 20, 22, 23,  
 24, 25, 30, 42, 43, 135;  
 delegations of 21, 41, 46;  
 deputation of 62; riders from 44;  
 vineyards of 23; women of 25, 46
- Thawbān b. Bujdud 142, 180
- Thumālah [T] 30
- Thumāmah b. Uthāl 168
- Thuwaybah 140
- Tihāmah [P] 8, 31, 106, 116; valley of  
 8, 118
- Transjordanian [P] 163
- Tubba' As'ad Kāmil 75
- al-Tufayl b. al-Hārith b. al-Muṭṭalib  
 138
- Tulaybah b. Khuwaylid 108, 166–67
- Turābah [P] 119
- Tüsī, Abū Ja'far Muḥammad 40, 48, 49
- U
- 'Ubayd b. Hunayn [\*] 164
- 'Ubayd b. Jubayr [\*] 168

- 'Ubayd b. Zayd (Banū) [T] 61  
 'Ubaydah b. al-Hārith b. al-Muṭṭalib 118, 138  
 'Ubaydallāh b. 'Abdallāh b. 'Utbah b. Mas'ūd [\*] 169, 177, 179, 189, 206  
 'Ubaydallāh b. Abī Rāfi' 143–44  
 'Ubaydallāh b. Jahsh 133  
 'Ubaydallāh b. Sa'īd (or Sa'd) al-Zuhri [\*] 107, 164, 165, 167, 195  
 Ubayy b. 'Abbas b. Sahl [\*] 149  
 Ubayy b. Ka'b 45  
 'Uṣayr (Prophet's donkey) 150  
 Uhud [P] 10, 13, 24, 58, 117, 132, 145; battle of 121, 132; day of 132, 155; expedition of 116; men of 171; martyrs of 177  
 Ukyadır b. 'Abd al-Malik 58–59  
 'Ukkāshah b. Miḥṣan 119  
 al-'Ulā [P] 115  
 'Umān [P] 39, 203  
 'Umar b. 'Abd al-'Azīz (Umayyad caliph) 111  
 'Umar b. Abī Salamah b. 'Abd al-Asad 132  
 'Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb (son of al-Khaṭṭāb) 7, 9, 25, 29, 35, 73, 119, 143, 145, 149, 160–61, 163, 164, 171, 174, 179, 184, 185, 186, 187, 188, 189, 190, 191, 193, 194, 197, 198, 200, 205  
*umarā'* (pl. of *amīr*, rulers) 186  
 'Umārah b. Ḥazm 54–55  
 'Umārah b. Zādān al-Šaydalānī al-Baṣri [\*] 14  
 'Umayr b. 'Amr (of Banū 'Uqdah) 135  
 'Umayr b. Wahb al-Jumāḥī 33, 52  
 Umayyad 32, 44, 51, 131, 144  
 Umayyads 143, 199  
 Umayyah [T], clan of 8  
 Umayyah [T], clan of Abū Lubābah (Banū) 61  
 Umayyah b. 'Abdallāh b. 'Amr b. 'Uthmān b. 'Affān [\*] 6  
 Umayyah b. Dafārah 102  
 Umayyah b. Khalaf 10  
 Umayyah b. Khālid [\*] 198  
 Umayyah b. Qal' 24  
 Umayyah b. Zayd (Banū) [T] 61  
 Umm 'Atīyyah 79  
 Umm Ayman 9  
 Umm Burdah bt. al-Mundhir 39  
 Umm al-Fadl 135  
 Umm al-Fazr 102  
 Umm Ḥabib (or Umm Ḥabibah) bt. al-'Abbās b. 'Abd al-Muṭṭalib 140  
 Umm Ḥabibah, see Umm Ḥabib  
 Umm Ḥabibah (al-Ramlah) bt. Abī Sufyān b. Ḥarb 127, 133  
 Umm Hāni' [\*] 161  
 Umm Hāni' (Hind) bt. Abī Tālib 140, 205  
 Umm Hind, see Khadijah  
*umm al-kitāb* (the first chapter of the Qur'an) 100, 101  
 Umm Kulthūm (Prophet's daughter) 79, 127, 128  
 Umm al-Masākin, see Zaynab bt. Khuzaymah  
*umm mildam* (a kind of fever) 106  
 Umm Rūmān 129–30  
 Umm Salamah (Hind) bt. Abī Umayyah 23, 127, 132, 145, 152, 161, 177  
 Umm Sharik, see Ghaziyyah  
 Umm Sulaym bt. Milḥān 13  
 'umrah (the lesser pilgrimage) 86, 109, 110, 125–26  
*'umrat al-qadā'* (Lesser Pilgrimage of Fulfillment) 117, 125, 135  
 Unayf b. Mallah 100–2  
 'Uqayl (Banū) [T] 152  
 'Uqayl b. Khālid b. 'Aqil al-Umawi [\*] 138  
 'Uqbah b. Namir 76  
 'Uqdah b. Ghayyarah (Banū) [T] 135  
*uqiyah* (measure of weight) 26, 32, 85, 87, 148  
 'Uranah [P] 121  
 al-'Uraniyyūn [T] 146  
 al-Urdunn [P], see Jordan  
 'Urwah b. Ghaziyyah al-Dathīnī [\*] 165  
 'Urwah b. Maṣ'ūd al-Thaqafī 20, 24, 41–43, 46

- 'Urwah b. al-Zubayr 125; [\*] 2, 177, 178, 194  
 'Uṣ (or 'Ārid) b. al-Hunayd 100  
 Usāmah b. Zayd b. Hārithah 9, 123, 142, 163, 164, 166, 205; [\*] 178  
 al-'Ushayr [P] 124  
 al-'Ushayrah [P] 116  
*uṣūl al-fiqh* (sources of jurisprudence) 191  
 'Uṭārid b. Hājib b. Zurārah b. 'Udās al-Tamīmī 67–68  
 Utayyiq b. 'Ābid, see 'Atiq b. 'Ābid  
 'Utbah b. Ghazwān 153  
 'Uthmān b. 'Abdallāh b. Hurmuz [\*] 157  
 'Uthmān b. 'Abdallāh b. Mawhib [\*] 161  
 'Uthmān b. 'Abdallāh b. Rabī'ah b. al-Hārith 14, 15  
 'Uthmān b. Abi al-'Āṣ b. Bishr b. 'Abd Duhmān 43, 45  
 'Uthmān b. Abi Tālḥah 10  
 'Uthmān b. 'Affān 7, 12, 29, 49, 56, 77, 89, 107, 128, 133, 147, 148, 205  
 'Uthmān b. Maz'ūn 25, 129  
 'Uwaym b. Sā'idah 194  
 'Uyaynah b. Hiṣn al-Fazārī 25, 28–30, 32, 33, 35, 68, 72, 122  
 al-'Uzzah (old Arabian goddess) 11, 81
- W**
- Wabar b. Yuhannas 123, 167  
 Waddān [P] 116  
 Wādi al-'Aqiq [P] 151  
 Wādi Fātimah [P] 38  
 Wādi al-Mūjib [P] 163  
 Wādi al-Qurā [P] 52, 115, 120, 122, 144  
 Wādi Sirhān [P] 58  
 Wādi al-Zarqā' [P] 163  
 Wadi'ah b. Thābit 56, 57, 61  
*wāfid* (ambassador to a king or to a great man) 63  
 Wāḥ b. Shiraz, see Abū Ḏumayrah  
 Wahb (from the Banū Ghiyarah) 15
- Wahb b. 'Abdallāh al-Suwā'i [\*], see Abū Juhayfah  
 Wahb b. Jābir 41  
 Wahb b. Munabbih 123  
 Wāḥidi, Abū al-Ḥasan 'Alī 40, 51, 57, 73, 79  
 Wā'il [T] 100  
 Waki' al-Dārimī 168  
 Waki' b. al-Jarrāḥ [\*] 180  
*wali* (bride's guardian in marriage) 134  
 al-Walid b. 'Abdallāh b. Abī Zaybah al-Bajali [\*] 195  
 al-Walid b. Jumay' al-Zuhri [\*] 195  
 al-Walid b. Rabāh al-Dawsī [\*] 24  
 al-Wāqidī, Muḥammad b. 'Umar 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 20, 21, 22, 23, 24, 25, 26, 27, 29, 30, 31, 32, 33, 34, 35, 36, 37, 38, 41, 42, 43, 44, 45, 46, 47, 48, 49, 50, 51, 52, 53, 54, 55, 56, 57, 58, 59, 60, 61, 62, 63, 65, 73, 77, 79, 89, 99, 110, 112, 113, 115, 117, 118, 123, 125, 133, 143, 145, 147, 148, 149, 151, 163, 164, 170, 179, 180, 181, 184, 191, 198; [\*] 24, 41, 73, 76, 79, 87, 98, 117, 118, 123, 124, 125, 148, 149, 150, 151, 152, 153, 154, 155, 180, 181, 184
- Wāqif (Banū) [T] 50  
 Warasah (Prophet's milch sheep), see Warisah  
 al-Ward (Prophet's horse) 149  
 Wardān b. Muhriz 122  
 Warisah (or Warasah, Prophet's milch camel) 153  
*wuzar'* (pl. of *wazīr*, viziers) 186
- Y**
- Yā Sin 42  
 Ya'fir (Prophet's donkey) 150  
 Yahyā b. 'Abbad b. 'Abdallāh b. al-Zubayr [\*] 114, 183, 203  
 Yahyā b. 'Abd al-Rahmān al-Azājī [\*] 89

- Yahyā b.** 'Abd al-Rahmān b. Ḥāfiṭh [\*] 129  
**Yahyā b.** 'Abdallāh b. 'Abd al-Rahmān b. Abī 'Amrah [\*] 111  
**Yahyā b.** Abī Kathīr [\*] 208  
**Yahyā b.** Ādām [\*] 124, 175  
**Yahyā b.** Muḥammad b. Qays, Abū Zukayr [\*] 157, 158  
**Yahyā b.** Saḥl b. Abī Ḥathmāh [\*] 117, 148  
**Yahyā b.** Sa'īd b. Abān b. al-'Āṣ al-Umawī [\*] 129, 176, 206  
**Yahyā b.** Sa'īd al-Qaṭṭān [\*] 177  
**Yahyā b.** Ya'lā [\*] 151  
**Yālīl** (old Arabian divinity) 42  
**Yām** [T] 90  
**al-Yamāmah** [P] 96, 108, 164, 166; battle of 54, 58, 195; day of 58; people of 96  
*al-yamāni* (a kind of sword) 63  
**Yāmīn** b. 'Umār b. Ka'b al-Naḍīr 49  
**Yamn** [P], see Yumn  
**Yanbu'** [P], valley of 116  
**Ya'qūb** b. Ibrāhīm al-Zuhri [\*] 107, 164, 165, 167, 195  
**Ya'qūb** b. 'Utbah b. al-Mughirah b. al-Akhnas al-Thaqafī [\*] 15, 42, 45, 169, 182  
**Ya'qūb** i. 192, 193, 196, 197, 198  
**Ya'qūt** b. 'Abdallāh al-Hamawī 2, 4, 15, 19, 20, 21, 22, 26, 38, 43, 46, 50, 51, 56, 58, 60, 62, 65, 70, 72, 77, 99, 100, 103, 106, 110, 116, 117, 119, 120, 122, 152, 164  
**Yasār** 146, 152  
**Yasār** [Banū] [T] 43  
**al-Yasirah** (Prophet's milch camel) 152  
*ya'sūb* (king of bees) 149  
**al-Ya'sūb** (Prophet's horse) 149  
**Yathrib** [P], see Medina  
*yawm al-nahr* (the day of sacrifice, i.e., the tenth of Dhū al-Hijjah) 78  
**Yazid-II** (Umayyad caliph) 107  
**Yazid** b. 'Abd al-Madān 84  
**Yazid** b. Abī Ḥabib, Suwayd al-Azdi [\*] 98  
**Yazid** b. Abī Sufyān b. Harb 32, 198  
**Yazid** b. al-Hād [\*], see Ibn al-Hād  
**Yazid** b. Hārūn [\*] 156, 158  
**Yazid** b. Mu'awiyah (Umayyad caliph) 144  
**Yazid** b. al-Muḥajjal 84  
**Yazid** b. Rūmān al-Asadi [\*] 47, 59, 73  
**Yazid** b. Ṭalḥah b. Yazid b. Rukānah [\*] 111  
**Yazid** b. Zama'ah b. al-Aswad 19  
**Yemen** [P] 16, 21, 35, 66, 72, 74, 82, 88, 90, 99, 106, 108, 111, 119, 123, 164, 165, 167, 203  
**Yemeni** 97, 173  
**Yemenite** 90  
**Yuḥannah** b. Ru'bah 58  
**Yumn** (or Yamn) [P] 119  
**Yūnus** b. 'Amr [\*] 175, 179  
**Yūnus** b. Buκayr [\*] 179  
**Yūnus** b. Yazid [\*] 207  
**Yusayr** b. Rizām 120  
**Yūsuf** b. Ishaq b. Abī Ishaq al-Sābi'i [\*] 90  
**Yūsuf** b. Mihrān [\*] 207
- Z
- Zakariyyā' b.** Yahyā al-Darīr [\*] 153, 187  
**zakāt** (obligatory alms) 38, 74, 80, 149  
**Zāmil** b. 'Amr [\*] 150  
**Zamzam** (Prophet's milch sheep) 153  
**al-Zarib** (Prophet's horse) 149  
**Zayd** b. Arqam 124, 125; [\*] 124  
**Zayd** b. al-Hārith [\*] 125  
**Zayd** b. al-Hārithah 9, 100–3, 119, 122, 134, 142, 163  
**Zayd** b. Jāriyah b. 'Āmir 61  
**Zayd al-Khayl** (or Zayd al-Khayr) b. Muhalhil 35, 105  
**Zayd al-Khayr**, see Zayd al-Khayl  
**Zayd** b. Luṣayb (or al-Luṣayt) al-Qaynuqā'i 54–55  
**Zayd** b. Thābit al-Anṣārī 148  
**Zaynab** (Prophet's daughter) 127, 128

- Zaynab bt. Abī Hālah 128  
 Zaynab bt. Abī Salamah b. 'Abd al-  
     Asad 132  
 Zaynab bt. Ḥayyān b. 'Amr b. Ḥayyān  
     29  
 Zaynab b. Jaḥsh b. Ri'āb 23, 127, 134,  
     137, 168  
 Zaynab bt. Ka'b b. 'Ujrah [\*] 111  
 Zaynab bt. Khuzaymah, Umm al-  
     Masākin 127, 137, 138  
 Zibriqān b. Badr al-Tamīmī 67, 69–  
     70, 108, 168  
 zinā' [adultery] 191  
 Ziyād b. Ayyūb [\*] 207  
 Ziyād b. Ḥanẓalah al-Tamīmī al-'Amri  
     168  
 Ziyād b. Kulayb [\*] 186  
 Ziyād b. Labid 108  
 Zoroastrians (al-Majūs) 39
- Zubayd (Banū) [T] 90, 92, 93;  
     deputation of 90  
 al-Zubayr 9, 186, 188, 189, 192  
 Zuhayr b. Mu'āwiyah [\*] 124  
 Zuhayr b. Muḥammad al-Tamīmī [\*]  
     160  
 Zuhayr b. Șurad, Abū Șurad 27, 29  
 zuhr (midday) 171  
 Zuhrah (Banū) [T] 32, 77  
 al-Zuhri, Muḥammad b. Muslim b.  
     'Ubaydallāh b. 'Abdallāh b. Shihāb  
     (Ibn Shihāb) [\*] 11, 47, 97, 138,  
     150, 156, 169, 171, 175, 176, 177,  
     179, 181, 182, 184, 189, 194, 196,  
     200, 203, 206, 207  
 Zullah (roofed building) of the Banū  
     Sā'idah [P] 188  
 Zur'ah Dhū Yazan 74, 76  
 Zurayq (Banū) [T] 164

## Index of Qur'ānic Verses\*

---

<i>Sūrah</i> 1		<i>100, 101</i>
2:62		<i>5</i>
2:143		<i>201</i>
2:279		<i>112</i>
2:283		<i>112</i>
3:144		<i>185, 187</i>
4:15		<i>113, 191</i>
4:25		<i>191</i>
4:58		<i>112</i>
4:75		<i>199</i>
4:97–98		<i>199</i>
4:127		<i>199</i>
5:1		<i>85</i>
5:3		<i>108</i>
5:69		<i>5</i>
7:128		<i>107</i>
8:26		<i>199</i>
8:41		<i>74</i>
<i>Sūrah</i> 9		<i>77</i>
9:1		<i>77</i>
9:4		<i>78</i>
9:5, 11		<i>77</i>
9:25–26		<i>3</i>
9:28		<i>78</i>

---

\*Page numbers for this volume appear in italics.

9:36	113
9:37	112
9:1-40	77
9:40	78, 200
9:48	51
9:49	48
9:58	38
9:60	31, 74
9:64	57
9:65	57
9:66	57
9:81-82	49
9:92	49
9:103	38, 77, 79
9:107	61
9:108	195
9:117-19	62
11:2	173
11:18	86
13:9-14	105
16:128	85
20:47	107
22:17	5
24:2	113, 191
24:10-20	170
28:83	173
<i>Sūrah</i> 33	191
33:37	134
33:50	135, 139
36:1	42
39:31-32	187
39:60	173
44:19	173
46:1	14
49:4	73
49:17	40
56:79	85